

**EVERYTHING YOU WANTED TO KNOW ABOUT**

**THE ANCIENT SCATTERING**

**AND**

**MODERN GATHERING**

**OF ISRAEL…**

**BUT WERE AFRAID TO ASK**

**Compiled by CJ Crawshaw**



***TABLE OF CONTENTS***

**Foreword**

* 1. **Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob**
  2. Prophets Before Abraham
  3. From the Life of Abraham
  4. From the Life of Isaac
  5. From the Life of Jacob
  6. From the Lives of Jacob and His Son, Joseph

**2 The Great Lawgiver, Moses, Leads Israel**

2.1 Israel in Bondage and Delivered From Captivity

2.2 The Israelites Reject the Lord, Provoke God’s Anger

2.3 The Israelites Receive Temple Ordinances and Commandments

2.4 The Israelites Wander in the Wilderness for 40 Years

2.5 Israel Attacks, Invades, and Possesses the Lands Promised Them

**3 Israel: After Moses**

3.1 Joshua

3.2 The Rule of Judges

3.3 The Reign of Kings: King Saul

3.4 The Reign of Kings: Saul vs David

3.5 The Reign of Kings: King David

3.6 The Reign of Kings: King Solomon

3.7 The Reign of Kings: the Kingdom Split In Two

**4 Israel Forsakes the Lord, Worships False Gods**

4.1 Old Testament and Book of Mormon Prophecies about the Scattering of

Israel by Babylon

4.2 Apostasy and Civil War Begin to Tear Israel Apart: The Prophecies of Many Prophets

4.3 Ripping at the Seams: The Apostasy and Israel & the Prophecies of Isaiah

4.4 Israel’s Tug of War between Righteous and Wicked Kings

**5 The Scattering of Israel**

5.1 The Beginning of Zedekiah’s Reign: Jeremiah Rejected, the First 9 Years, pt 1

5.2 Zedekiah Provokes God’s Anger against Israel, the First 9 Years, pt 2

5.3 Lehi and His Family Leave Jerusalem

-Understanding the Lamanite Curse of “Darkness”

5.4 The Scattering of Israel by Babylonian Invasion of Jerusalem

5.5 After the Scattering of Israel

5.6 Israel Gathered Once More

5.7 The Scattering of Israel: Like Vineyards and Olive Trees

5.8 The Gospel of Jesus Christ Among Lehi’s Descendants

**6 The Ministry of Jesus Christ**

6.1 Events from the Ministry of Jesus Christ

6.2 The Crucifixion of Jesus Christ

6.3 The Resurrection of Jesus Christ

**7 Israel in the New Testament & Book of Mormon**

7.1 From the Life of the Apostle Peter & Stephen, an Assistant to the Twelve

7.2 From the Life of the Apostle Paul

7.3 Prophecies about the Scattering of Israel after the Crucifixion and Resurrection of Jesus Christ

7.4 Jesus Christ Appears to the Nephites, is Later Rejected by Them

**8 The Role of the Gospel in Relation to the Gathering of Israel**

8.1 America and the Gathering of Israel

8.2 The Restoration of the Gospel in Connection to the Gathering of Israel

8.3 God Will Fulfill All Promises Spoken by His Prophets

8.4 Cursed for those Rejecting the Gospel

8.5 The Book of Mormon’s Connection to the Gathering of Israel

8.6 Miscellaneous Scriptures in Connection to the Gathering of Israel

8.7 The Priesthood in Connection to the Gathering of Israel

-The Melchizedek Priesthood

-The Aaronic Priesthood

-Receive the Priesthood

8.8 Temple Work in Connection to the Gathering of Israel

-The Temple, Anciently

-Priesthood Keys Concerning the Gathering of Israel Given in the Kirtland Temple

-The Doctrine of Temple Worship

-President Joseph F. Smith’s Vision

**9 The Latter-day Gathering of Israel**

9.1 Old Testaments Prophesy of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Amos Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Hosea Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel And of the

Return of Ephraim

-The Prophet Micah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Isaiah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Jeremiah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Ezekiel Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel

-The Prophet Daniel Prophesies of the Kingdoms of Men and of Christ’s Coming to Adam

-The Prophet Zechariah prophesies of the latter-day gathering of Israel

9.2 The Latter-day Gathering of Israel

9.3 Promises Made to Lehi’s Descendants in the Latter-days

9.4 The Gospel to go to the Gentiles First and Then to the Jews

9.5 Promises Made to the Gentiles in the Latter-days

9.6 Promises Made to the Jews in the Latter-days

9.7 Covenant Israel Must be Tried in All Things

Why This Study Matters

**10 Ancient and Latter-day Promises to Israel**

10.1 Blessings Given to the Tribes of Israel

10.2 Ancient Promises Given to the House of Israel

-Old Testament

-New Testament

-Book of Mormon

10.3 Modern Blessings Promised to the House of Israel

**11 The Second Coming of Jesus Christ**

11.1 The Gospel is Sent Forth to Prepare the World For the Second Coming of Jesus Christ

11.2 Jesus Christ Declares His Second Coming is Soon

11.3 The Doctrine of the Second Coming

-Ancient Day Meets Modern Day

-The Church Needs To Be Ready

-The Doctrine

11.4 Events to Precede the Second Coming

-Natural Disasters

-The Angels Are Getting Ready

-Specific Events Yet to Come

-The Jews to Build the Temple in Jerusalem

-A Day of Destruction and Wrath

-Massive World Wars

11.5 The New Jerusalem

11.6 Understanding the Second Coming of Jesus Christ

11.7 The Second Coming of Jesus Christ

11.8 Life During the Millennium

Recap of Israel’s History

Appendix: How the Scattering of Israel Affects Us Today

***FOREWORD:***

***UNDERSTANDING THE HISTORY OF ISRAEL***

The primary purpose of this study is to understand, seek out, and pray for, the promised blessings of God to those covenant members of the House of Israel in this, the latter-days. This study came about as a request by the Prophet, President Russell M. Nelson, in his October 2020 General Conference talk, entitled “Let God Prevail.” A few excerpts follow:

“For the more than 36 years I’ve been an Apostle, the doctrine of the gathering of Israel has captured my attention. Everything about it has intrigued me:

-Including the ministries and names of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; their lives and their wives;

-The covenant God made with them and extended through their lineage;

-The dispersion of the twelve tribes; and the numerous prophecies about the gathering in our day.

For a moment, let us recall a crucial turning point in the life of Jacob, the grandson of Abraham. At the place Jacob named Peniel (which means “the face of God”), Jacob wrestled with a serious challenge. His agency was tested. Through this wrestle, Jacob proved what was most important to him. He demonstrated that he was willing to let God prevail in his life. In response, God changed Jacob’s name to Israel, meaning “let God prevail.” God then promised Israel that all the blessings that had been pronounced upon Abraham’s head would also be his.

Sadly, Israel’s posterity broke their covenants with God. They stoned the prophets and were not willing to let God prevail in their lives. Subsequently, God scattered them to the four corners of the earth. Mercifully, He later promised to gather them, as reported by Isaiah: “For a small moment have I forsaken thee [Israel]; but with great mercies will I gather thee.”

With the Hebraic definition of Israel in mind, we find that the gathering of Israel takes on added meaning. The Lord is gathering those who are willing to let God prevail in their lives. The Lord is gathering those who will choose to let God be the most important influence in their lives. For centuries, prophets have foretold this gathering, and it is happening right now! As an essential prelude to the Second Coming of the Lord, it is the most important work in the world!

This pre-millennial gathering is an individual saga of expanding faith and spiritual courage for millions of people. And as members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, or “latter-day covenant Israel,” we have been charged to assist the Lord with this pivotal work.

When we speak of gathering Israel on both sides of the veil, we are referring, of course, to

-Missionary work

-Temple work

-Family history work.

-Building faith and testimony in the hearts of those with whom we live, work, and serve.

-Anytime we do anything that helps anyone﻿—on either side of the veil﻿—to make and keep their covenants with God, we are helping to gather Israel.

-We may be led to some who have never believed in God or Jesus Christ but who are now yearning to learn about Them and Their plan of happiness.

-Others may have been “born in the covenant” but have since wandered away from the covenant path. They may now be ready to repent, return, and let God prevail

-We may be led may have always felt there was something missing in their lives.

Now, how does the Lord feel about people who will let God prevail? Nephi summed it up well: “[The Lord] loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remember[s] the covenants which he [has] made.”

And what is the Lord willing to do for Israel? The Lord has pledged that He will “fight [our] battles, and [our] children’s battles, and our children’s children’s [battles] … to the third and fourth generation”!

*As you study your scriptures during the next six months, I encourage you to make a list of all that the Lord has promised He will do for covenant Israel. I think you will be astounded! Ponder these promises. Talk about them with your family and friends. Then live and watch for these promises to be fulfilled in your own life.”*

As I undertook this study, I wanted to start at the beginning. It’s hard to comprehend the blessings promised without understanding the history of Israel: Who were the blessings given to? What implications do they have for me, if any? Why was Israel scattered in the first place? Are there any parallels between the past and the present? Etc, etc. Thus, I started at the beginning. Literally. From Adam to Abraham to Moses to Christ to Joseph Smith to President Nelson and everything in between. As I embarked upon this study, I had no idea that it would become a 400 page book in its own right. This book is 99% all scriptures, with minor commentary by myself along the way. A book compiling the entire history of Israel from the Creation to the Second Coming. In essence, it’s literally become a mini-standard works, with highlighted scriptures from the Old Testament, New Testament, Book of Mormon, Pearl of Great Price, and Doctrine and Covenants, detailing the lives and promises made to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Joshua, the Kings of Israel, Lehi and his descendants, the ministry of Jesus Christ, on through the Restoration and the Second Coming, etc.

On a seemingly unrelated side note, considering the many life-altering events of 2020, biologically, politically, socially, etc, one might very easily wonder when the Second Coming will happen…and if it may happen in one’s lifetime. Many sometimes wonder why the Brethren aren’t more bold in predicting future events or condemning political, or other, wickedness, etc. Consider this: Since becoming the Prophet, President Nelson has spoken of 3 topics primarily: The importance of Temple Work, The Gathering of Israel on both sides of the veil in connection to… Preparing the world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. Thus, three points arise:

1-When the Prophet of God talks about the preparing the world for the Second Coming, you can’t really be any more forthright than that.

2-The current era in which we live is, as the prophet has stated, a time of Gathering; not a time of calling out the wicked. During a “harvest,” one gathers the good from the bad, or the wheat from the tares, if you will. Hence, not only is this a time of gathering the righteous, covenant-keeping elect, but also a time of separation, that is, separating the righteous from the wicked.

3-It’s my humble and sincere opinion that the Prophet wants to be more bold, but due to personal safety concerns for him, the rest of the Brethren, and simply the Church in general, he has to be extremely careful in what he says publicly, particularly in General Conference. As the scripture says “…whether by mine own voice or by the voice of my servants, it is the same (D&C 1:38).” After reading and compiling this study on Israel, I found that it is physically impossible to study the latter-day gathering of Israel without studying the Second Coming, as the two are extremely intertwined. By encouraging us to study Israel, he was telling us to read the words of past prophets…who speak for, and in the name of, God… and what they have said concerning the promises to Israel in relation to preparing for the Second Coming. Thus, it is my sincere belief that President Nelson was in fact telling us what to expect in the near future, or within our life-times, giving us the “good stuff,” if you will, by asking us to study the promises made to Israel in the latter-days. It was his way of safely, and over the pulpit, telling us things many of us are anxious to hear, but cannot be publicly stated by him outright. And like Christ who taught in parables, to conceal and reveal…conceal from the wicked and reveal to the righteous, these words of encouragement from our beloved prophet could only be properly received by those with ears to hear.

In relation to point 3, above, a brief excerpt from the book **That Moment: A Doctrinal Approach to Studying the Signs of the Times**, written by myself, CJ Crawshaw, is now given:

***A PROPHETIC “WHAT IF...” SCENARIO***

**From the Life of the Author:**

I have a relative who once told me, paraphrasing: “I’ve lived through three ‘End of the Worlds.’ When the Prophet says something about it actually happening, then I’ll pay attention.”

To that relative and many others of the same mindset, I wish to engage in what I like to term “A Prophetic What If.” Since our discussion is centered in understanding better the Signs of the Times, let’s pretend The Prophet did just that. What if The Prophet, in the first session of General Conference, was to come out and say, in straightforward words of clarity, using no cloaked language or parables, and declared before the world immediate and impending doom to take place in less than 6 months from that conference?

Pick your scenario. Or better yet, multiple of the following scenarios: Multiple earthquakes in many parts of the world. Stock market crash to happen overnight. Specific lakes and oceans to massively flood over. Severe outbreak of plague/disease that will take the lives of one in four people worldwide. Invasion by a foreign country. The winner of the next election. The breakout of the next world, war. Or simply for demonstrative purposes, the coming of the Savior. The list could go on and on. How would that affect the world? What effect would it have upon The Church? Or more so, The Prophet himself, his counselors, and the Apostles?

In today’s world, General Conference is broadcast live to millions of homes and people via TV, internet, and radio. Anyone from active member to anti-Mormon alike can listen in. Various newscasters publish highlights of conference, putting their own personal twist on things said, some speaking positive of the Brethren, and others, negatively. So, what if a message of impending doom or specific prophecy was to be uttered live, for the whole world to see, to be available in writing the very second it was spoken?

In some cases, such as natural disaster, plague, or a stock market crash, the economy would quickly tank. Grocery stores would go empty within hours, people would quit going to work, etc. Commerce would completely shut down. Riots would break out, etc. People in towns and cities, such as Utah and Salt Lake Counties, where the LDS population is the very high majority, would see entire economies break down overnight. In the case of proclaiming who the next President of the United States would be or identifying the physical place where the next World War would break out and the players involved, His very life could be in danger. And just what if The Prophet declared the coming of the Savior to be within the next 6 months? How would that affect the lives of Church members? Would faith be strengthened or weakened? On one account, any such announcement would serve to help strong and active members prepare for the coming destructions, but it would also give the enemies of the church an upper hand on the Lord’s plans for His people.

Similarly, when Martin Harris lost the 116 pages manuscript, the Lord revealed to Joseph Smith that had he re-translated them, wicked and conspiring men would’ve come forward with their own translation, contradicting the true translation (D&C 10:5-14). Hence he was commanded to translate Nephi’s record instead. If Joseph had re-translated it, the enemies of The Church would’ve been out for blood almost immediately! On one end to simply discredit the Lord’s Prophet, and on the other, to literally take his life.

Such is the caution the Brethren today must similarly make, sometimes by way of command, not knowing who their friends and enemies may be. Due to the very public nature of today’s world, The Church and its leaders are under constant 24/7 scrutiny by the media and society. ANYTHING said in such a context would have a domino effect that would see no end, probably resulting in more harm than good. In the day and age we live in, when and if the time comes for The Prophet to declare such major and impending changes to the world, it definitely wouldn’t come over the pulpit. Certainly in the days of Jeremiah, a prophet could be so bold as to proclaim to the heads of state what God intended to do to both the leaders and the people, but in today’s world, it’s just not plausible. It’s for those reasons, and more, that God purposefully and methodically goes out of His way to keep many things intentionally *secret*, something many people have a hard time accepting, but which the scriptures are very clear about.

So, food for thought. Either way, before delving into our study of the history of Israel’s scattering and promises of gathering, let’s take a brief look at why God chose Israel as His people.

**God chose Israel because He loved them (Deut 7:6-8)**

[And Moses spake, saying,]

“For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. The Lord did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the Lord loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.”

**God chose His people, who dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt (Acts 13:17)**

[And Luke wrote, saying]

“The God of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with an high arm brought he them out of it.”

**Those who keep covenants become the treasures of God (Ex 19:5-6)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine: And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.”

**God performs great wonders so that Israel will know that it is the Lord that does them, and not false gods (Isaiah 48:1-7)**

[And Isaiah spake in the name of the Lord, saying,]

“Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness. For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the God of Israel; The Lord of hosts is his name. I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass. Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass; I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldest say,

‘Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them.’

“Thou hast heard, see all this; and will not ye declare it? I have shewed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them. They are created now, and not from the beginning; even before the day when thou heardest them not; lest thou shouldest say, Behold, I knew them.”

**God has His own reasons for choosing and exalting those whom He chooses (Rom 9:1-5, 14-20)**

[And Paul spake, saying,]

“I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Ghost, That I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart. For I could wish that myself were accursed from Christ for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh: Who are Israelites; to whom pertaineth the adoption, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service of God, and the promises; Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen. What shall we say then? Is there unrighteousness with God? God forbid. For he saith to Moses,

‘I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.’

“So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy. For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh,

‘Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.’

“Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth. Thou wilt say then unto me,

‘Why doth he yet find fault? For who hath resisted his will?’

“Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed say to him that formed it,

‘Why hast thou made me thus?”

**God chooses people who don’t worship false gods (Rom 11:1-7)**

[And Paul spake, saying,]

“I say then, Hath God cast away his people? God forbid. For I also am an Israelite, of the seed of Abraham,  of the tribe of Benjamin. God hath not cast away his people which he foreknew. Wot ye not what the scripture saith of Elias? How he maketh intercession to God against Israel, saying, Lord, they have killed thy prophets, and digged down thine altars; and I am left alone, and they seek my life. But what saith the answer of God unto him?

‘I have reserved to myself seven thousand men, who have not bowed the knee to the image of Baal.’

“Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace. And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work. What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.”

**God has chosen sinners, through the grace of Christ, to sit with him in Heavenly Places (Eph 1:2-9)**

[And Paul spake, saying,]

“And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus: That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus. For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.”

******

***CHAPTER 1:***

***ABRAHAM, ISAAC, & JACOB***

******

***1.1***

***PROPHETS BEFORE ABRAHAM***

***-APPROX 4000 B.C.-***

**Adam’s genealogy through Noah set forth**

**(See Gen 5)**

**Adam blessed God and in turn was blessed to be father over the entire earth (Moses 5:10)**

And in that day Adam blessed God and was filled, and began to prophesy concerning all the families of the earth, saying: Blessed be the name of God, for because of my transgression my eyes are opened, and in this life I shall have joy, and again in the flesh I shall see God.

**Seth, like Adam, was blessed with the Priesthood (Moses 6:3-8)**

And God revealed himself unto Seth, and he rebelled not, but offered an acceptable sacrifice, like unto his brother Abel. And to him also was born a son, and he called his name Enos. And then began these men to call upon the name of the Lord, and the Lord blessed them; And a book of remembrance was kept, in the which was recorded, in the language of Adam, for it was given unto as many as called upon God to write by the spirit of inspiration;

And by them their children were taught to read and write, having a language which was pure and undefiled. Now this same Priesthood, which was in the beginning, shall be in the end of the world also. Now this prophecy Adam spake, as he was moved upon by the Holy Ghost, and a genealogy was kept of the children of God. And this was the book of the generations of Adam, saying: In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made he him;

**Enoch walked and talked with God (Moses 6:32, 39)**

And the Lord said unto Enoch: Go forth and do as I have commanded thee, and no man shall pierce thee. Open thy mouth, and it shall be filled, and I will give thee utterance, for all flesh is in my hands, and I will do as seemeth me good. And it came to pass when they heard him, no man laid hands on him; for fear came on all them that heard him; for he walked with God.

**Enoch, who preached repentance to his people for 365 years, established a city that was taken to heaven because of their supreme righteousness (Moses 7:18-21, 68-69)**

And the Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, and dwelt in righteousness; and there was no poor among them. And Enoch continued his preaching in righteousness unto the people of God. And it came to pass in his days, that he built a city that was called the City of Holiness, even Zion. And it came to pass that Enoch talked with the Lord; and he said unto the Lord: Surely Zion shall dwell in safety forever. But the Lord said unto Enoch: Zion have I blessed, but the residue of the people have I cursed.

And it came to pass that the Lord showed unto Enoch all the inhabitants of the earth; and he beheld, and lo, Zion, in process of time, was taken up into heaven. And the Lord said unto Enoch: Behold mine abode forever. And all the days of Zion, in the days of Enoch, were three hundred and sixty-five years. And Enoch and all his people walked with God, and he dwelt in the midst of Zion; and it came to pass that Zion was not, for God received it up into his own bosom; and from thence went forth the saying, Zion is Fled.

**Methuselah, like Adam, was promised that the kingdoms of the earth would come from him (Moses 8:3)**

And it came to pass that Methuselah prophesied that from his loins should spring all the kingdoms of the earth (through Noah), and he took glory unto himself.

**Noah was promised that he, like Adam, would be the father of many nations of the earth (Moses 7:50)**

And it came to pass that Enoch continued his cry unto the Lord, saying: I ask thee, O Lord, in the name of thine Only Begotten, even Jesus Christ, that thou wilt have mercy upon Noah and his seed, that the earth might never more be covered by the floods.

**Noah was ordained to the same Priesthood that Enoch had, and was given the same charge to preach the gospel (Moses 8:19)**

And the Lord ordained Noah after his own order, and commanded him that he should go forth and declare his Gospel unto the children of men, even as it was given unto Enoch.

**Noah receives grace from God, who covenants to spare him and his family from the flood (Gen 6:8, 18; Gen 8:1; Gen 9:8-12;**

**2 Peter 2:5)**

But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. [And the Lord said unto Noah,] “But with thee will I establish my covenant; and thou shalt come into the ark, thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons’ wives with thee.”

And God remembered Noah, and every living thing, and all the cattle that was with him in the ark: and God made a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters assuaged; And God spake unto Noah, and to his sons with him, saying,

“And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you, and with your seed after you; And with every living creature that is with you, of the fowl, of the cattle, and of every beast of the earth with you; from all that go out of the ark, to every beast of the earth. And I will establish my covenant with you; neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth …This is the token of the covenant which I make between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for perpetual generations.”

And [God] spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly;

**Ham and his descendants cursed from having the priesthood (Gen 9:18-25)**

And the sons of Noah, that went forth of the ark, were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth: and Ham is the father of Canaan. These are the three sons of Noah: and of them was the whole earth overspread. And Noah began to be an husbandman, and he planted a vineyard: And he drank of the wine, and was drunken; and he was uncovered within his tent.

And Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father, and told his two brethren without. And Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it upon both their shoulders, and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces were backward, and they saw not their father’s nakedness. And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son had done unto him. And he said, Cursed be Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren.

**The posterity and descendants of Noah named**

**(See Gen 10)**

**Nimrod, the creator of the tower of Babel, was the grandson of Ham (Gen 10:8-10, Gen 11:1-9)**

And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth. He was a mighty hunter before the Lord: wherefore it is said, Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the Lord. And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.

And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech. And it came to pass, as the [people] journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there. And they said one to another,

“Go to, let us make brick, and burn them throughly.”

And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar. And they said,

“Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.”

And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men builded. And the Lord said,

“Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do. Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another’s speech.”

So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city.

Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the Lord did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the Lord scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.

**Consider This!**

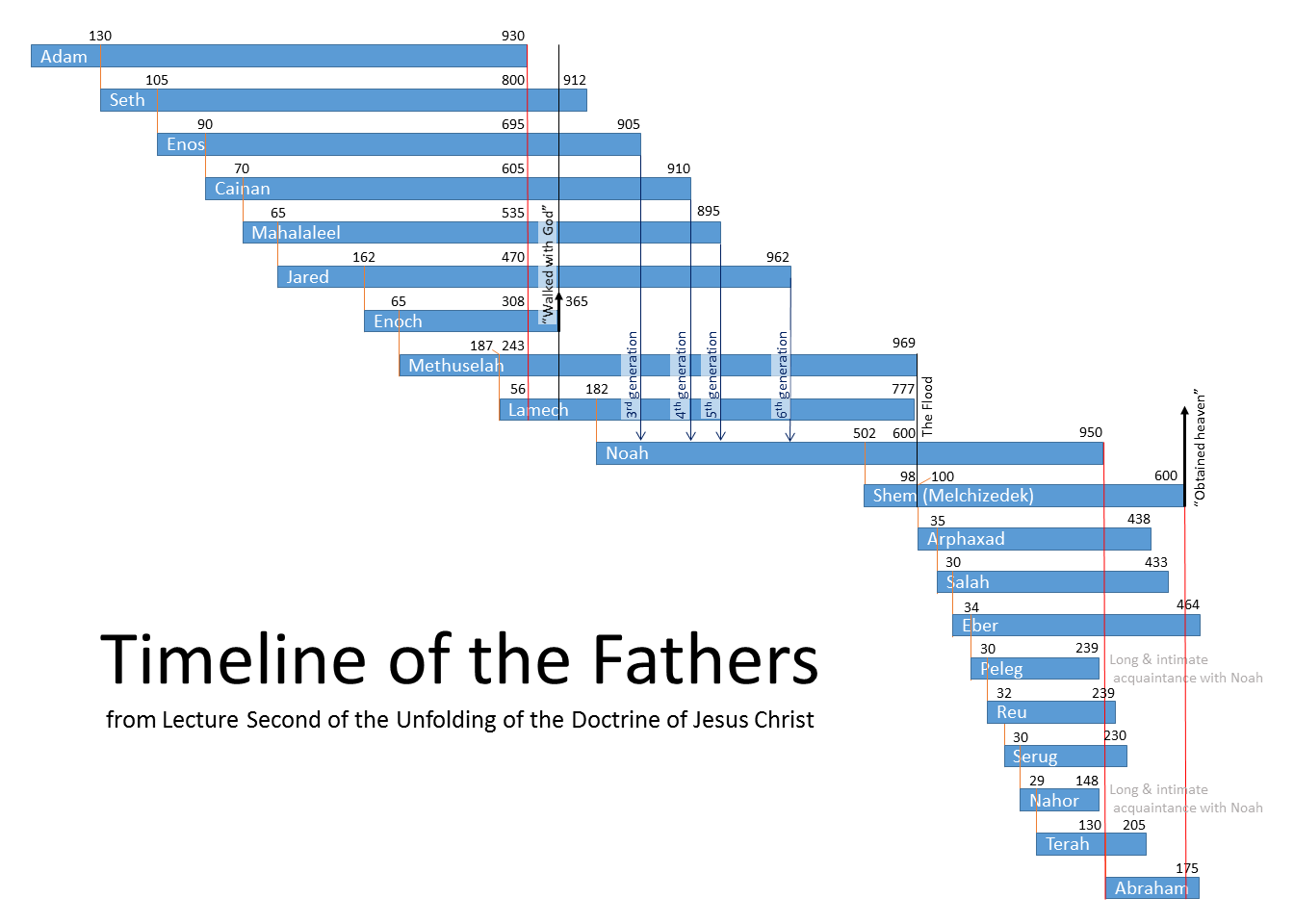
According to LDS.org, The Tower of Babel was actually a counterfeit temple, wherein the people tried to mimic the ordinances of the temple without making covenants or being governed by priesthood authority. Hence, the scattering of the people and the confounding of their languages. God was punishing the people for such gross wickedness. In one instance, the descendants of Ham remembered when God had destroyed the earth by flood and were angry with God as a result. In another aspect, they were angry and jealous that they were shut out from the priesthood and were trying to re-create the ordinances of salvation denied them. Thus, the building of the Tower of Babel was two-fold: 1-They wanted to create a building high enough that if God ever decided to flood the earth again, the waters would not be able to reach to the top, and 2-In their anger they wanted to not only take from God what was His alone to give: the Priesthood and its associated ordinances, but they also wanted to make God their equal, if not inferior. It was for these reasons that God saw fit to confound their languages and scatter them.

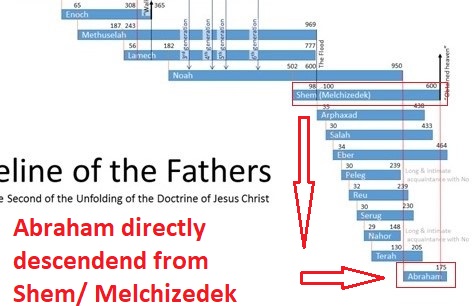
***1.2***

***FROM THE LIFE OF ABRAHAM***

**The posterity descendants from Shem to Abraham named**

**(See Gen 11:10-26)**





**Question: What Made Abraham So Special?**

The blessings of “Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob” were not original by any stretch of the imagination. In fact, Adam, Methuselah, and Noah…at the very least… had all been promised the Priesthood and to be the father’s of nations throughout the world (D&C 107:42, 50-57). What was so special about Abraham that he was promised to be the father of nations?

**Answer:** He was foreordained in the pre-mortal world to become the Father of Nations. This was both as a result of his obedience in heaven…and later on earth… as well as the will of God. While on earth, he was given the promise of endless posterity before he had accomplished any great task. This was 1-Because of his pre-mortal foreordination and 2-He was given the promise/reward BEFORE he would be obedient to the command to sacrifice his son, Isaac. In essence, he was being given the promise of reward before he actually accomplished the task worthy of the reward.

***The Significance of “The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”***

The Lord, in the Old Testament, is often referred to as “The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.” Why is this? Why not the “God of Adam” or the “God of Noah?” Of unique interest is the fact that according to the Old Testament, the people do not yet know the name of the Lord. It was when Moses was called to be a prophet that the Lord revealed His name as I AM. However, in the Pearl of Great Price, the Lord reveals his true name to Abraham as Jehovah (Abr 1:16). Maybe this is why Abraham is so unique, because he was the first prophet, according to the scriptures, to have the true name of the Lord revealed to him. Another thought could be that the Lord spoke so often to Abraham that people just naturally began to refer to the Lord as “The God of Abraham” (Gen 24:12, 42). The enemies of Jacob returned to him and repented of their sins towards him, recognizing that God was with, and blessed, Jacob (Gen 26:26-31). As such, people would see the blessings poured out upon Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob and would then refer to God as “The God OF Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,” recognizing the unique relationship these prophets had with God. Much like we refer to Mahonri as “The Brother OF Jared.” Mahonri was not a man of significance, but his brother, Jared, was. Hence, he was known as primarily Jared’s brother. So too, did no other individuals receive such a vast wealth of earthly and spiritual blessings as did Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. People wanted to worship the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob…or at least not be enemies with the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob… because they knew they would either be blessed or cursed by their God for so doing (Gen 12:1-3). The most important reason for people calling the Lord “the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob” is because the Lord literally introduced himself as “the Lord God of Abraham, thy father, and the God of Isaac” (Gen 28:13)

***-APPROX 2000 B.C.-***

**Why Abraham was chosen to be the Father of Nations (Abr 3:22-23)**

Now the Lord had shown unto me, Abraham, the intelligences that were organized before the world was; and among all these there were many of the noble and great ones; And God saw these souls that they were good, and he stood in the midst of them, and he said: These I will make my rulers; for he stood among those that were spirits, and he saw that they were good; and he said unto me: Abraham, thou art one of them; thou wast chosen before thou wast born.

And there stood one among them that was like unto God, and he said unto those who were with him: We will go down, for there is space there, and we will take of these materials, and we will make an earth whereon these may dwell;

And we will prove them herewith, to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord their God shall command them;

**The Covenant Between God and Abraham Is that All the Nations of the Earth Would Be Blessed (related to) Through Abraham (1 Ne 15:18; 1 Ne 22:9)**

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

**Abraham sought for greater peace and happiness by obtaining the priesthood blessings promised to his ancestors (Abr 1:2-4)**

And, finding there was greater happiness and peace and rest for me, I sought for the blessings of the fathers, and the right whereunto I should be ordained to administer the same; having been myself a follower of righteousness, desiring also to be one who possessed great knowledge, and to be a greater follower of righteousness, and to possess a greater knowledge, and to be a father of many nations, a prince of peace, and desiring to receive instructions, and to keep the commandments of God, I became a rightful heir, a High Priest, holding the right belonging to the fathers. It was conferred upon me from the fathers; it came down from the fathers, from the beginning of time, yea, even from the beginning, or before the foundation of the earth, down to the present time, even the right of the firstborn, or the first man, who is Adam, or first father, through the fathers unto me. I sought for mine appointment unto the Priesthood according to the appointment of God unto the fathers concerning the seed.

***Sacred Bloodline***

Abraham mentions seeking after the “blessings of the fathers” (Abr 1:1-2), yet also mentions how his specific father followed after the heathen Egyptian Gods. Abraham was a pure blood direct descendant of Adam, Seth, Enoch, Methuselah, Noah, and Shem/Melchizedek. The reason he was given the “Blessings of the Fathers” was partly because he was a direct descendant, and therefore rightful heir to the blessings they had been promised. In his same record, Abr 1:31, he tells us of the record he keeps wherein he discusses who has a right to the priesthood. It’s clearly evident, then, that part of the blessings of Abraham was his literal right to the priesthood. Additionally, sometime during the 9 generation gap between him and Shem/Melchizedek, he was the bloodline that was restored…through repentance… to the true worship of Jehovah. When the Lord is first speaking to Abraham, the Lord tells him “I will…put upon thee my name, even the Priesthood of thy father…” The Lord does not refer to his immediate “father,” who had rejected God in favor of false, heathen gods, but was referring to either Noah, or his son, Shem, both his grandfathers and priesthood patriarchs.

**Abraham rejected the heathen Gods of his day in favor of the one true God (Abr 1:5-13)**

My fathers, having turned from their righteousness, and from the holy commandments which the Lord their God had given unto them, unto the worshiping of the gods of the heathen, utterly refused to hearken to my voice;

For their hearts were set to do evil, and were wholly turned to the god of Elkenah, and the god of Libnah, and the god of Mahmackrah, and the god of Korash, and the god of Pharaoh, king of Egypt;

Therefore they turned their hearts to the sacrifice of the heathen in offering up their children unto these dumb idols, and hearkened not unto my voice, but endeavored to take away my life by the hand of the priest of Elkenah. The priest of Elkenah was also the priest of Pharaoh.

Now, at this time it was the custom of the priest of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, to offer up upon the altar which was built in the land of Chaldea, for the offering unto these strange gods, men, women, and children.

And it came to pass that the priest made an offering unto the god of Pharaoh, and also unto the god of Shagreel, even after the manner of the Egyptians. Now the god of Shagreel was the sun. Even the thank-offering of a child did the priest of Pharaoh offer upon the altar which stood by the hill called Potiphar’s Hill, at the head of the plain of Olishem.

Now, this priest had offered upon this altar three virgins at one time, who were the daughters of Onitah, one of the royal descent directly from the loins of Ham. These virgins were offered up because of their virtue; they would not bow down to worship gods of wood or of stone, therefore they were killed upon this altar, and it was done after the manner of the Egyptians.

And it came to pass that the priests laid violence upon me, that they might slay me also, as they did those virgins upon this altar; and that you may have a knowledge of this altar, I will refer you to the representation at the commencement of this record. It was made after the form of a bedstead, such as was had among the Chaldeans, and it stood before the gods of Elkenah, Libnah, Mahmackrah, Korash, and also a god like unto that of Pharaoh, king of Egypt.

**The Lord Jesus Christ, Jehovah, revealed himself to Abraham, sparing him from being killed by the wicked priests (Abr 1:15-17)**

And as they lifted up their hands upon me, that they might offer me up and take away my life, behold, I lifted up my voice unto the Lord my God, and the Lord hearkened and heard, and he filled me with the vision of the Almighty, and the angel of his presence stood by me, and immediately unloosed my bands; And his voice was unto me: Abraham, Abraham, behold, my name is Jehovah, and I have heard thee, and have come down to deliver thee, and to take thee away from thy father’s house, and from all thy kinsfolk, into a strange land which thou knowest not of; And this because they have turned their hearts away from me, to worship the god of Elkenah, and the god of Libnah, and the god of Mahmackrah, and the god of Korash, and the god of Pharaoh, king of Egypt; therefore I have come down to visit them, and to destroy him who hath lifted up his hand against thee, Abraham, my son, to take away thy life.

**The Lord promises that Abraham, like Noah, will receive the Priesthood and have an endless posterity (Abr 1:18-19; Abr 2:6-11; Gen 12:1-3)**

[And the Lord said unto Abraham,]

“Behold, I will lead thee by my hand, and I will take thee, to put upon thee my name, even the Priesthood of thy father, and my power shall be over thee. As it was with Noah so shall it be with thee; but through thy ministry my name shall be known in the earth forever, for I am thy God.”

But I, Abraham, and Lot, my brother’s son, prayed unto the Lord, and the Lord appeared unto me, and said unto me:

“Arise, and take Lot with thee; for I have purposed to take thee away out of Haran, and to make of thee a minister to bear my name in a strange land which I will give unto thy seed after thee for an everlasting possession, when they hearken to my voice. For I am the Lord thy God; I dwell in heaven; the earth is my footstool; I stretch my hand over the sea, and it obeys my voice; I cause the wind and the fire to be my chariot; I say to the mountains—Depart hence—and behold, they are taken away by a whirlwind, in an instant, suddenly.

“My name is Jehovah, and I know the end from the beginning; therefore my hand shall be over thee.

And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee above measure, and make thy name great among all nations, and thou shalt be a blessing unto thy seed after thee, that in their hands they shall bear this ministry and Priesthood unto all nations;

“And I will bless them through thy name; for as many as receive this Gospel shall be called after thy name, and shall be accounted thy seed, and shall rise up and bless thee, as their father; And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse them that curse thee; and in thee (that is, in thy Priesthood) and in thy seed (that is, thy Priesthood), for I give unto thee a promise that this right shall continue in thee, and in thy seed after thee (that is to say, the literal seed, or the seed of the body) shall all the families of the earth be blessed, even with the blessings of the Gospel, which are the blessings of salvation, even of life eternal.”

Now the Lord had said unto

“Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father’s house, unto a land that I will shew thee: And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.”

**Abraham kept a record concerning those who had a right to the priesthood (Abr 1:31)**

But the records of the fathers, even the patriarchs, concerning the right of Priesthood, the Lord my God preserved in mine own hands; therefore a knowledge of the beginning of the creation, and also of the planets, and of the stars, as they were made known unto the fathers, have I kept even unto this day, and I shall endeavor to write some of these things upon this record, for the benefit of my posterity that shall come after me.

**Abraham states how his desire to seek out God was not in vain (Abr 2:12)**

Now, after the Lord had withdrawn from speaking to me, and withdrawn his face from me, I said in my heart: Thy servant has sought thee earnestly; now I have found thee;

**The Lord hears the prayers of Abraham, promises his posterity the Land of Canaan (Abr 2:17-19)**

Now I, Abraham, built an altar in the land of Jershon, and made an offering unto the Lord, and prayed that the famine might be turned away from my father’s house, that they might not perish.

And then we passed from Jershon through the land unto the place of Sechem; it was situated in the plains of Moreh, and we had already come into the borders of the land of the Canaanites, and I offered sacrifice there in the plains of Moreh, and called on the Lord devoutly, because we had already come into the land of this idolatrous nation. And the Lord appeared unto me in answer to my prayers, and said unto me:

“Unto thy seed will I give this land.”

**One of the blessings that Abraham received was to see much of the Universe, the residence of God, the Creation, and the Garden of Eden**

**(See Abr 3-5)**

**The Lord spoke with Abraham at Beth-el (Abr 2:20; Gen 12:7-8)**

And I, Abraham, arose from the place of the altar which I had built unto the Lord, and removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched my tent there, Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east; and there I built another altar unto the Lord, and called again upon the name of the Lord. And the Lord appeared unto Abram, and said,

“Unto thy seed will I give this land:”

and there builded he an altar unto the Lord, who appeared unto him. And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Beth-el, and pitched his tent, having Beth-el on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he builded an altar unto the Lord, and called upon the name of the Lord.

***What’s so important about Beth-El?***

In the ancient language, “Beth” meant “House” and “El” was short for “Elohim.” Hence, Beth-el, was really “The House of Elohim,” or more appropriately, “The House of God.” It was at Beth-el, that temple ordinances, rites, and promises were first revealed to Abraham, in an ancient, sort of pre-temple.

**Abraham paid his tithing to Melchizedek (Melchizedek is Shem, son of Noah), king of Salem, Prince of Peace (Alma 13:14-18;**

**Heb 7:1-2)**

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever. And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord. Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace;

**Shem/Melchizedek, the King of Salem, blessed his great grandson, Abraham (Gen 14:18-19; Heb 7:1)**

And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God. And he blessed [Abram], and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth:

For this Melchisedec, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him;

**Abraham received the Priesthood from Melchizedek (D&C 84:14)**

Which Abraham received the priesthood from Melchizedek, who received it through the lineage of his fathers, even till Noah;

**Question:** Why did Abraham offer tithing to Melchizedek?

**Answer:** Melchizedek was the son of Noah, Shem. As such, he was a patriarch in his own right, an heir to the blessings of the Priesthood. At this point in time, he was the Prophet, and Abraham recognized him as such. He was also Abraham’s 8th great grandfather. As not only his grandfather, but the Prophet, and acting priesthood authority, it was very appropriate for Abraham to pay his tithes to him. It was also from Melchizedek that Abraham received the Priesthood, prior to his later becoming the prophet.

**The Lord promises to give Abraham as countless as the stars in heaven (Gen 15:1-6)**

After these things the word of the Lord came unto Abram in a vision, saying,

“Fear not, Abram: I am thy shield, and thy exceeding great reward.”

And Abram said,

“Lord God, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, and the steward of my house is this Eliezer of Damascus? Behold, to me thou hast given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir.”

And, behold, the word of the Lord came unto him, saying,

“This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir… Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them, So shall thy seed be.”

And he believed in the Lord; and he counted it to him for righteousness.

**Abraham was counted as righteous because he believed the promises of God (Rom 4:1-5, 13-22 ;Gal 3:6-9)**

What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found? For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.

Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness. Know ye therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham. And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed. So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham.

**The Lord establishes his covenant of posterity with Abraham (Gen 17:1-7)**

And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the Lord appeared to Abram, and said unto him,

“I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect. And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.”

And Abram fell on his face. And God talked with him, saying,

“As for me, behold, my covenant is with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations. Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be Abraham; for a father of many nations have I made thee. And I will make thee exceeding fruitful, and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee. And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee.”

**Abraham’s first son, Ishmael, to be a military leader over a great nation; his sons will reign as 12 princes (Gen 17:19-20;**

**Gen 21:12-13, 17-18)**

And God said,

“Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him. And as for Ishmael, I have heard thee: Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly; twelve princes shall he beget, and I will make him a great nation.”

And God said unto Abraham,

“Let it not be grievous in thy sight because of the lad, and because of thy bondwoman; in all that Sarah hath said unto thee, hearken unto her voice; for in Isaac shall thy seed be called. And also of the son of the bondwoman will I make a nation, because he is thy seed.”

And …the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her,

“What aileth thee, Hagar? fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he is. Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great nation.”

**The Lord promises that Isaac will inherit the blessings promised to Abraham (Gen 21:1-3, 12; Gal 4:22-28)**

And the Lord visited Sarah as he had said, and the Lord did unto Sarah as he had spoken. For Sarah conceived, and bare Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him. And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bare to him, Isaac. For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman. But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by promise.

Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants; the one from the mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, which is Agar. For this Agar is mount Sinai in Arabia, and answereth to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children. But Jerusalem which is above is free, which is the mother of us all. For it is written,

“Rejoice, thou barren that bearest not; break forth and cry, thou that travailest not: for the desolate hath many more children than she which hath an husband.”

Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise.

**Abraham promised to be a father of many nations as a result of being obedient to the command to sacrifice Isaac**

**(Gen 22:1-18)**

And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said,

“Behold, here I am.”

And [God] said,

“Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.”

And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and saddled his ass, and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son, and clave the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went unto the place of which God had told him. Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place afar off. And Abraham said unto his young men,

“Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.”

And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering, and laid it upon Isaac his son; and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife; and they went both of them together. And Isaac spake unto Abraham his father, and said,

“My father.”

and [Abraham] said,

“Here am I, my son.”

And [Isaac] said,

“Behold the fire and the wood: but where is the lamb for a burnt offering?”

And Abraham said,

“My son, God will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering.”

So they went both of them together. And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. And the angel of the Lord called unto him out of heaven, and said,

“Abraham, Abraham.”

and [Abraham] said,

“Here am I.”

And [the angel] said,

“Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest

  God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me.”

And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son. And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovah-jireh: as it is said to this day,

“In the mount of the Lord it shall be seen.”

And the angel of the Lord called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, and said,

“By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son: That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.”

**Abraham Offered Isaac as a similitude of Jesus Christ (Jacob 4:5)**

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

**How old was Isaac when Abraham took him upon the mountain top?**

Isaac wasn’t the meek 5-10 year old little boy that we picture Abraham attempting to sacrifice and wrestling in spirit about. Realistically speaking, Isaac was at least 15-25 years old. This was not only Abraham’s test of being willing to sacrifice his only son for the Lord, but it was also Isaac’s test to see if he would lay down his life for the Lord. Both passed the test and in so doing were found worthy of receiving and inheriting all that God has promised to Abraham and his posterity.

**Abraham was blessed by the Lord in all things (Gen 24:1)**

And Abraham was old, and well stricken in age: and the Lord had blessed Abraham in all things.

**Abraham forbade his son, Isaac, to marry a Canaanite (Gen 24:2-4)**

And Abraham said unto his eldest servant of his house, that ruled over all that he had,

“Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh: And I will make thee swear by the Lord, the God of heaven, and the God of the earth, that thou shalt not take a wife unto my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell: But thou shalt go unto my country, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son Isaac.”

**Abraham declared the father of the faithful, including Isaac and Jacob (D&C 138:41)**

Noah, who gave warning of the flood; Shem, the great high priest; Abraham, the father of the faithful; Isaac, Jacob, and Moses, the great law-giver of Israel;

**The Promises of Posterity belong to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph (D&C 27:10)**

And also with Joseph and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, your fathers, by whom the promises remain;

***Sum It All Up***

Reasons WHY Abraham was chosen to be the Father of Nations:

-He was a pure blood descendant of Adam, Seth, Noah, and Shem, all important patriarchs, all given the promise of endless posterity and the priesthood, and was therefore rightful heir to those promises.

-D&C teaches us…as does President Nelson… that every blessing bestowed comes with an attached law. Hence, he earned the reward by living the law….it’s possible that many in Adam’s bloodline were “called, but not chosen” that is, the reward was offered to them but they declined to live the attached law.

-He was being given the promise and the reward before the action he would later perform in life in offering Isaac as sacrifice.

-He believed in God and it was accounted unto him for righteousness (Rom 4:1-5, 13-22).

-He was among the noble and great ones in the pre-mortal world (Abr 3:22-25).

-God chose Him for His own reasons and purpose, and God doesn’t need to explain Himself (Isa 55:8).

.

**“…and among all these, there were many of the noble and great ones…and he said unto me: Abraham, thou art one of them; thou wast chosen before thou wast born.”**

**–abraham 3:22-23**

***1.3***

***FROM THE LIFE OF ISAAC***

**Isaac inherited all physical wealth, property, servants, and cattle that his father had (Gen 25:5-6)**

And Abraham gave all that he had unto Isaac. But unto the sons of the concubines, which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away from Isaac his son, while he yet lived, eastward, unto the east country.

**Isaac blessed by God, following the death of Abraham (Gen 25:11)**

And it came to pass after the death of Abraham, that God blessed his son Isaac; and Isaac dwelt by the well Lahai-roi.

**Isaac’s wife, Rebekah, is to have twins, from which two nations will arise. (Gen 25:22-23)**

And the children struggled together within her; and she said,

“If it be so, why am I thus?”

And she went to inquire of the Lord. And the Lord said unto her,

“Two nations are in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.”

**Esau was a hunter and Jacob was a plainsman (Gen 25:27)**

And the boys grew: and Esau was a cunning hunter, a man of the field; and Jacob was a plain man, dwelling in tents.

**Esau sells his birthright to Jacob for a mess of pottage (Gen 25:29-34)**

And Jacob sod pottage: and Esau came from the field, and he was faint: And Esau said to Jacob,

“Feed me, I pray thee, with that same red pottage; for I am faint,”

therefore was his name called Edom. And Jacob said,

“Sell me this day thy birthright.”

And Esau said,

“Behold, I am at the point to die: and what profit shall this birthright do to me?”

And Jacob said,

“Swear to me this day;”

and he sware unto him: and he sold his birthright unto Jacob. Then Jacob gave Esau bread and pottage of lentiles; and he did eat and drink, and rose up, and went his way: thus Esau despised his birthright.

**The Lord appears to Jacob and promises him the same blessings of Abraham and Isaac (Gen 26:2-5, 24)**

And the Lord appeared unto [Jacob], and said,

“Go not down into Egypt; dwell in the land which I shall tell thee of: Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I sware unto Abraham thy father; And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; Because that Abraham obeyed my voice, and kept my charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws.”

And the Lord appeared unto him the same night, and said,

“I am the God of Abraham thy father: fear not, for I am with thee, and will bless thee, and multiply thy seed for my servant Abraham’s sake.”

**Jacob was financially blessed by the Lord (Gen 26:12-22)**

Then Isaac sowed in that land, and received in the same year an hundredfold: and the Lord blessed him. And the man waxed great, and went forward, and grew until he became very great: For he had possession of flocks, and possession of herds, and great store of servants: and the Philistines envied him. For all the wells which his father’s servants had digged in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines had stopped them, and filled them with earth. And Abimelech said unto Isaac,

“Go from us; for thou art much mightier than we.”

And Isaac departed thence, and pitched his tent in the valley of Gerar, and dwelt there. And Isaac digged again the wells of water, which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father; for the Philistines had stopped them after the death of Abraham: and he called their names after the names by which his father had called them. And Isaac’s servants digged in the valley, and found there a well of springing water. And the herdmen of Gerar did strive with Isaac’s herdmen, saying,

“The water is ours,”

and he called the name of the well Esek; because they strove with him. And they digged another well, and strove for that also: and he called the name of it Sitnah. And he removed from thence, and digged another well; and for that they strove not: and he called the name of it Rehoboth; and he said,

“For now the Lord hath made room for us, and we shall be fruitful in the land.”

**Consider This! Proof of Divine, Birthright, Favor upon Jacob**

Jacob was already being very blessed, at least financially, long before he received the unofficial and later, official, birthright blessings from his father, Isaac.

**The enemies of Jacob repent, recognizing the blessings of God upon him (Gen 26:26-31)**

Then Abimelech went to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath one of his friends, and Phichol the chief captain of his army.

And Isaac said unto them,

“Wherefore come ye to me, seeing ye hate me, and have sent me away from you?”

And they said,

“We saw certainly that the Lord was with thee: and we said, Let there be now an oath betwixt us, even betwixt us and thee, and let us make a covenant with thee; That thou wilt do us no hurt, as we have not touched thee, and as we have done unto thee nothing but good, and have sent thee away in peace: thou art now the blessed of the Lord.”

And he made them a feast, and they did eat and drink. And they rose up betimes in the morning, and sware one to another: and Isaac sent them away, and they departed from him in peace.

**Jacob, fooling his blind father, Isaac, receives a blessing of abundance from Isaac (Gen 27:22-29)**

And Jacob went near unto Isaac his father; and he felt him, and said,

“The voice is Jacob’s voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau.”

And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy, as his brother Esau’s hands: so he blessed him. And he said,

“Art thou my very son Esau?”

And [Jacob] said,

“I am.”

And [Isaac] said,

“Bring it near to me, and I will eat of my son’s venison, that my soul may bless thee.”

And [Jacob] brought it near to him, and he did eat: and he brought him wine, and he drank. And his father Isaac said unto him,

“Come near now, and kiss me, my son.”

And [Jacob] came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and [Isaac] blessed him, and said,

“See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which the Lord hath blessed: Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine: Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother’s sons bow down to thee: cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee.”

**Isaac finds out that he was tricked into giving Isaac the blessing (Gen 27:30-41)**

And it came to pass, as soon as Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob was yet scarce gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, that Esau his brother came in from his hunting. And he also had made savoury meat, and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father,

“Let my father arise, and eat of his son’s venison, that thy soul may bless me.”

And Isaac his father said unto him,

“Who art thou?”

And [Esau] said,

“I am thy son, thy firstborn Esau.”

And Isaac trembled very exceedingly, and said,

“Who? Where is he that hath taken venison, and brought it me, and I have eaten of all before thou camest, and have blessed him? Yea, and he shall be blessed.”

And when Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father,

“Bless me, even me also, O my father.”

And [Isaac] said,

“Thy brother came with subtilty, and hath taken away thy blessing.”

And [Esau] said

“Is not he rightly named Jacob? For he hath supplanted me these two times: he took away my birthright; and, behold, now he hath taken away my blessing… Hast thou not reserved a blessing for me?”

And Isaac answered and said unto Esau,

“Behold, I have made him thy lord, and all his brethren have I given to him for servants; and with corn and wine have I sustained him: and what shall I do now unto thee, my son?”

And Esau said unto his father,

“Hast thou but one blessing, my father? Bless me, even me also, O my father.”

And Esau lifted up his voice, and wept. And Isaac his father answered and said unto him,

“Behold, thy dwelling shall be the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; And by thy sword shalt thou live, and shalt serve thy brother; and it shall come to pass when thou shalt have the dominion, that thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck.”

And Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him: and Esau said in his heart,

“The days of mourning for my father are at hand; then will I slay my brother Jacob.”

**Isaac forbade Jacob from marrying a Canaanite (Gen 28:1-2)**

And Isaac called Jacob, and blessed him, and charged him, and said unto him, Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan. Arise, go to Padan-aram, to the house of Bethuel thy mother’s father; and take thee a wife from thence of the daughters of Laban thy mother’s brother.

**Isaac gives Jacob the rightful blessing of Abraham and himself (Gen 28:1-5)**

And Isaac called Jacob, and blessed him, and charged him, and said unto him,

“Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan. Arise, go to Padan-aram, to the house of Bethuel thy mother’s father; and take thee a wife from thence of the daughters of Laban thy mother’s brother.

And God Almighty bless thee, and make thee fruitful, and multiply thee, that thou mayest be a multitude of people; And give thee the blessing of Abraham, to thee, and to thy seed with thee; that thou mayest inherit the land wherein thou art a stranger, which God gave unto Abraham.”

And Isaac sent away Jacob: and he went to Padan-aram unto Laban, son of Bethuel the Syrian, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob’s and Esau’s mother.

**Esau, jealous of the blessings of Isaac to Jacob, marries a daughter of Ishmael (Gen 28:8-9)**

And Esau seeing that the daughters of Canaan pleased not Isaac his father; Then went Esau unto Ishmael, and took unto the wives which he had Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael Abraham’s son, the sister of Nebajoth, to be his wife.

***1.4***

***FROM THE LIFE OF JACOB***

**After leaving his father, Jacob sees a vision of the Lord and is promised the blessings of Abraham and Isaac (Gen 28:11-19)**

And he lighted upon a certain place, and tarried there all night, because the sun was set; and he took of the stones of that place, and put them for his pillows, and lay down in that place to sleep. And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it. And, behold, the Lord stood above it, and said,

“I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed; And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed. And, behold, I am with thee, and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee, until I have done that which I have spoken to thee of.”

And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the Lord is in this place; and I knew it not. And he was afraid, and said,

“How dreadful is this place! This is none other but the house of God, and this is the gate of heaven.”

And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put for his pillows, and set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it. And he called the name of that place Beth-el: but the name of that city was called Luz at the first.

**Jacob is tricked into working for Laban for 14 years for Rachel, instead of 7, by whom he also marries Leah (Gen 29:11-30)**

And Jacob kissed Rachel, and lifted up his voice, and wept. And Jacob told Rachel that he was her father’s brother, and that he was Rebekah’s son: and she ran and told her father. And it came to pass, when Laban heard the tidings of Jacob his sister’s son, that he ran to meet him, and embraced him, and kissed him, and brought him to his house. And he told Laban all these things. And Laban said to him,

“Surely thou art my bone and my flesh.”

And[Jacob]e abode with him the space of a month. And Laban said unto Jacob,

“Because thou art my brother, shouldest thou therefore serve me for nought? Tell me, what shall thy wages be?”

And Laban had two daughters: the name of the elder was Leah, and the name of the younger was Rachel.

Leah was tender eyed; but Rachel was beautiful and well favoured. And Jacob loved Rachel; and said,

“I will serve thee seven years for Rachel thy younger daughter.”

And Laban said,

“It is better that I give her to thee, than that I should give her to another man: abide with me.”

And Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed unto him but a few days, for the love he had to her.

And Jacob said unto Laban,

“Give me my wife, for my days are fulfilled, that I may go in unto her.”

And Laban gathered together all the men of the place, and made a feast. And it came to pass in the evening, that he took Leah his daughter, and brought her to him; and he went in unto her. And Laban gave unto his daughter Leah Zilpah his maid for an handmaid. And it came to pass, that in the morning, behold, it was Leah: and [Jacob] said to Laban,

“What is this thou hast done unto me? did not I serve with thee for Rachel? Wherefore then hast thou beguiled me?”

And Laban said, It must not be so done in our country, to give the younger before the firstborn. Fulfil her week, and we will give thee this also for the service which thou shalt serve with me yet seven other years. And Jacob did so, and fulfilled her week: and he gave him Rachel his daughter to wife also. And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter Bilhah his handmaid to be her maid. And he went in also unto Rachel, and he loved also Rachel more than Leah, and served with him yet seven other years.

**Jacob’s wife, Leah, gives birth to Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah (Gen 29:31-35)**

And when the Lord saw that Leah was hated, he opened her womb: but Rachel was barren. And Leah conceived, and bare a son, and she called his name Reuben: for she said,

“Surely the Lord hath looked upon my affliction; now therefore my husband will love me.”

And she conceived again, and bare a son; and said,

“Because the Lord hath heard that I was hated, he hath therefore given me this son also: and she called his name Simeon.”

And she conceived again, and bare a son; and said,

“Now this time will my husband be joined unto me, because I have born him three sons: therefore was his name called Levi.”

And she conceived again, and bare a son: and she said,

“Now will I praise the Lord: therefore she called his name Judah; and left bearing.”

**Jacob marries Bilhah, who gives birth to Dan and Naphtali (Gen 30:1-8)**

And when Rachel saw that she bare Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister; and said unto Jacob,

“Give me children, or else I die.”

And Jacob’s anger was kindled against Rachel: and he said,

“Am I in God’s stead, who hath withheld from thee the fruit of the womb?”

And she said,

“Behold my maid Bilhah, go in unto her; and she shall bear upon my knees, that I may also have children by her.”

And she gave him Bilhah her handmaid to wife: and Jacob went in unto her. And Bilhah conceived, and bare Jacob a son. And Rachel said,

“God hath judged me, and hath also heard my voice, and hath given me a son: therefore called she his name Dan.”

And Bilhah Rachel’s maid conceived again, and bare Jacob a second son. And Rachel said,

“With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed: and she called his name Naphtali.”

**Jacob marries Zilpah, who gives birth to Gad and Asher (Gen 30:9-13)**

When Leah saw that she had left bearing, she took Zilpah her maid, and gave her Jacob to wife. And Zilpah Leah’s maid bare Jacob a son. And Leah said,

“A troop cometh: and she called his name Gad.”

And Zilpah Leah’s maid bare Jacob a second son. And Leah said,

“Happy am I, for the daughters will call me blessed: and she called his name Asher.”

**Jacob’s wife, Leah, gives birth to Issachar, Zebulon, and a daughter, Dinah (Gen 30:14-21)**

And Reuben went in the days of wheat harvest, and found mandrakes in the field, and brought them unto his mother Leah. Then Rachel said to Leah,

“Give me, I pray thee, of thy son’s mandrakes.”

And [Leah] said unto [Rachel],

“Is it a small matter that thou hast taken my husband? And wouldest thou take away my son’s mandrakes also?”

And Rachel said,

“Therefore he shall lie with thee to night for thy son’s mandrakes.”

  And Jacob came out of the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him, and said, Thou must come in unto me; for surely I have hired thee with my son’s mandrakes. And he lay with her that night. And God hearkened unto Leah, and she conceived, and bare Jacob the fifth son. And Leah said,

“God hath given me my hire, because I have given my maiden to my husband: and she called his name Issachar.”

And Leah conceived again, and bare Jacob the sixth son. And Leah said,

“God hath endued me with a good dowry; now will my husband dwell with me, because I have born him six sons: and she called his name Zebulun.”

And afterwards she bare a daughter, and called her name Dinah.

**Jacob’s wife, Rachel, gives birth to Joseph (Gen 30:22-24)**

And God remembered Rachel, and God hearkened to her, and opened her womb. And she conceived, and bare a son; and said,

“God hath taken away my reproach:”

And she called his name Joseph; and said,

“The Lord shall add to me another son.”

**Jacob’s father in law, Laban, asks Jacob to keep working for him, recognizing the great blessings that attended Jacob’s labors**

**(Gen 30:27)**

And Laban said unto [Jacob],

“I pray thee, if I have found favour in thine eyes, tarry: for I have learned by experience that the Lord hath blessed me for thy sake.”

**The Lord warns Jacob to flee once his father and brothers in law grow jealous of him…and return to his native land**

**(Gen 31:1-3, 11-13)**

And [Jacob] heard the words of Laban’s sons, saying,

“Jacob hath taken away all that was our father’s; and of that which was our father’s hath he gotten all this glory.”

And Jacob beheld the countenance of Laban, and, behold, it was not toward him as before. And the Lord said unto

“Jacob, Return unto the land of thy fathers, and to thy kindred; and I will be with thee.”

And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, saying,

  “Jacob”

And I said,

“Here am I.”

And he said,

“Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle are ringstraked, speckled, and grisled: for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto thee. I am the God of Beth-el, where thou anointedst the pillar, and where thou vowedst a vow unto me: now arise, get thee out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred.”

**After departing from Laban with a covenant of peace, the angels of God appear to Jacob (Gen 32:1-2)**

And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him. And when Jacob saw them, he said,

“This is God’s host.”

And he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

**Jacob prays that God will protect him from his brother, Esau’s anger (Gen 32:9-12)**

And Jacob said,

“O God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, the Lord which saidst unto me,

‘Return unto thy country, and to thy kindred, and I will deal well with thee.’

I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which thou hast shewed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands. Deliver me, I pray thee, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau: for I fear him, lest he will come and smite me, and the mother with the children. And thou saidst,

‘I will surely do thee good, and make thy seed as the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude.”

**Jacob prays all night with an angel of the Lord, who informs him that his name will now be called Israel (Gen 32:24-29)**

And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob’s thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. And [the angel] said,

“Let me go, for the day breaketh.”

And [Jacob] said,

“I will not let thee go, except thou bless me.”

And [the angel] said unto him,

“What is thy name?”

And he said,

“Jacob.”

And [the angel] said,

“Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed.”

And Jacob asked him, and said,

“Tell me, I pray thee, thy name.”

And [the angel] said,

“Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name”?

And [the angel] blessed him there.

**Jacob states that he has seen the Lord face to face (Gen 32:30-32)**

And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel:

“For I have seen God face to face and my life is preserved.”

And as he passed over Penuel the sun rose upon him, and he halted upon his thigh. Therefore the children of Israel eat not of the sinew which shrank, which is upon the hollow of the thigh, unto this day: because he touched the hollow of Jacob’s thigh in the sinew that shrank.

**Jacob and Esau reconcile (Gen 33:1-4)**

And Jacob lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, Esau came, and with him four hundred men. And he divided the children unto Leah, and unto Rachel, and unto the two handmaids. And he put the handmaids and their children foremost, and Leah and her children after, and Rachel and Joseph hindermost. And he passed over before them, and bowed himself to the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother. And Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck, and kissed him: and they wept.

**Jacob builds an altar at Shalem called El-Elohe-Israel, meaning “God is the God of Israel” (Gen 33:18-20)**

And Jacob came to Shalem, a city of Shechem, which is in the land of Canaan, when he came from Padan-aram; and pitched his tent before the city. And he bought a parcel of a field, where he had spread his tent, at the hand of the children of Hamor, Shechem’s father, for an hundred pieces of money. And he erected there an altar, and called it El-elohe-Israel.

**Jacob’s daughter, Dinah, is raped, and his son’s, Simeon and Levi, kill many in retaliation**

**(See Gen 34)**

**God commands Jacob to return to Bethel (Gen 35:1)**

And God said unto Jacob,

“Arise, go up to Beth-el, and dwell there: and make there an altar unto God, that appeared unto thee when thou fleddest from the face of Esau thy brother.”

**Jacob removes all idolatry from anyone who lives with him (Gen 35:2-3)**

Then Jacob said unto his household, and to all that were with him,

“Put away the strange gods that are among you, and be clean, and change your garments: And let us arise, and go up to Beth-el; and I will make there an altar unto God, who answered me in the day of my distress, and was with me in the way which I went.”

**The terror of God is upon all the enemies of Jacob (Gen 35:5)**

And they journeyed: and the terror of God was upon the cities that were round about them, and they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob.

**Jacob builds a new altar at Beth-el, called El-beth-el, meaning God lives in His House (Gen 35:7)**

And he built there an altar, and called the place El-beth-el: because there God appeared unto him, when he fled from the face of his brother.

**The Lord appears to Jacob and reaffirms his new name as Israel, and the blessings of abundance already promised to him**

**(Gen 35:9-15)**

And God appeared unto Jacob again, when he came out of Padan-aram, and blessed him. And God said unto him,

“Thy name is Jacob: thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name.”

And he called his name Israel. And God said unto him,

“I am God Almighty: be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come out of thy loins; And the land which I gave Abraham and Isaac, to thee I will give it, and to thy seed after thee will I give the land.”

And God went up from him in the place where he talked with him. And Jacob set up a pillar in the place where he talked with him, even a pillar of stone: and he poured a drink offering thereon, and he poured oil thereon. And Jacob called the name of the place where God spake with him, Beth-el.

**Rachel gives birth to Benjamin, and dies (Gen 35:16-19)**

And they journeyed from Beth-el; and there was but a little way to come to Ephrath: and Rachel travailed, and she had hard labour. And it came to pass, when she was in hard labour, that the midwife said unto her,

“Fear not; thou shalt have this son also.”

And it came to pass, as her soul was in departing, (for she died) that she called his name Ben-oni: but his father called him Benjamin. And Rachel died, and was buried in the way to Ephrath, which is Beth-lehem.

**Jacob’s son, Reuben, sleeps with one of Jacob’s wives, Bilhah (Gen 35:22)**

And it came to pass, when Israel dwelt in that land, that Reuben went and lay with Bilhah, his father’s concubine: and Israel heard it…

**Jacob’s posterity named (Gen 35:22-26)**

…Now the sons of Jacob were twelve: The sons of Leah; Reuben, Jacob’s firstborn, and Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Zebulun: The sons of Rachel; Joseph, and Benjamin: And the sons of Bilhah, Rachel’s handmaid; Dan, and Naphtali: And the sons of Zilpah, Leah’s handmaid; Gad, and Asher: these are the sons of Jacob, which were born to him in Padan-aram.

**Jacob returns to his father, Isaac, who dies at 180 years old (Gen 35:27-29)**

And Jacob came unto Isaac his father unto Mamre, unto the city of Arbah, which is Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac sojourned. And the days of Isaac were an hundred and fourscore years. And Isaac gave up the ghost, and died, and was gathered unto his people, being old and full of days: and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

**12 sons = 12 tribes……… of israel**

***1.5***

***FROM THE LIVES OF JACOB AND HIS SON, JOSEPH***

***-APPROX 1900 B.C.-***

**Jacob lives in Canaan, where his father was a stranger (Gen 37:1)**

And Jacob dwelt in the land wherein his father was a stranger, in the land of Canaan.

**Jacob favors Joseph over his other sons (Gen 37:2-3)**

These are the generations of Jacob. Joseph, being seventeen years old, was feeding the flock with his brethren; and the lad was with the sons of Bilhah, and with the sons of Zilpah, his father’s wives: and Joseph brought unto his father their evil report. Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his children, because he was the son of his old age: and he made him a coat of many colours.

**CJ’s Thoughts: The Coat of Many “Colors”**

I’ve heard it taught by both a temple president, and also in Temple and Cosmos by Hugh Nibley, that the coat of many colors was in reality not a colorful coat at all, but was actually a “coat of many cuts,” indicating the marks of the Holy Priesthood, that is, the garment. Hence, the jealously of Joseph’s brothers wasn’t just because his father loved him over them, but that love was shown by their dad giving the blessings of the Priesthood above them… much like how the creators of the Tower of Babel were jealous that they had been shut out from the Priesthood.

**Joseph receives dreams that his brothers will one day bow before him (Gen 37:5-10)**

And Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told it his brethren: and they hated him yet the more. And he said unto them,

“Hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed: For, behold, we were binding sheaves in the field, and, lo, my sheaf arose, and also stood upright; and, behold, your sheaves stood round about, and made obeisance to my sheaf.”

And his brethren said to him,

“Shalt thou indeed reign over us? Or shalt thou indeed have dominion over us?”

And they hated him yet the more for his dreams, and for his words. And he dreamed yet another dream, and told it his brethren, and said,

“Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me.”

And he told it to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him,

“What is this dream that thou hast dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to the earth?”

**Joseph’s brothers, out of anger and jealousy, kidnap him, and sell him as a slave (Gen 37:23-28, 36)**

And it came to pass, when Joseph was come unto his brethren, that they stript Joseph out of his coat, his coat of many colours that was on him; And they took him, and cast him into a pit: and the pit was empty, there was no water in it.

And they sat down to eat bread: and they lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a company of Ishmeelites came from Gilead with their camels bearing spicery and balm and myrrh, going to carry it down to Egypt. And Judah said unto his brethren,

“What profit is it if we slay our brother, and conceal his blood? Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmeelites, and let not our hand be upon him; for he is our brother and our flesh.”

And his brethren were content. Then there passed by Midianites merchantmen; and they drew and lifted up Joseph out of the pit, and sold Joseph to the Ishmeelites for twenty pieces of silver: and they brought Joseph into Egypt. And the Midianites sold him into Egypt unto Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh’s, and captain of the guard.

**Joseph’s brothers lie to Jacob, saying that Joseph was killed (Gen 37:29-35)**

And Reuben returned unto the pit; and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit; and he rent his clothes. And he returned unto his brethren, and said,

“The child is not; and I, whither shall I go?”

And they took Joseph’s coat, and killed a kid of the goats, and dipped the coat in the blood; And they sent the coat of many colours, and they brought it to their father; and said,

“This have we found: know now whether it be thy son’s coat or no.”

And he knew it, and said,

“It is my son’s coat; an evil beast hath devoured him; Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces.”

And Jacob rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his loins, and mourned for his son many days. And all his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him; but he refused to be comforted; and he said, For I will go down into the grave unto my son mourning. Thus his father wept for him.

**Joseph, despite numerous setbacks, prospers in slavery**

**(See Gen 39-40)**

**Pharaoh has troubling dreams that he doesn’t understand (Gen 41:1-8)**

And it came to pass at the end of two full years, that Pharaoh dreamed: and, behold, he stood by the river. And, behold, there came up out of the river seven well favoured kine and fatfleshed; and they fed in a meadow. And, behold, seven other kine came up after them out of the river, ill favoured and leanfleshed; and stood by the other kine upon the brink of the river. And the ill favoured and leanfleshed kine did eat up the seven well favoured and fat kine. So Pharaoh awoke.

And he slept and dreamed the second time: and, behold, seven ears of corn came up upon one stalk, rank and good.

And, behold, seven thin ears and blasted with the east wind sprung up after them. And the seven thin ears devoured the seven rank and full ears. And Pharaoh awoke, and, behold, it was a dream. And it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled; and he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt, and all the wise men thereof: and Pharaoh told them his dream; but there was none that could interpret them unto Pharaoh.

**Joseph interprets the dreams of Pharaoh and is made second in command of all Egypt (Gen 41:25, 37-43)**

And Joseph said unto Pharaoh,

“The dream of Pharaoh is one: God hath shewed Pharaoh what he is about to do.”

And the thing was good in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of all his servants. And Pharaoh said unto his servants,

“Can we find such a one as this is, a man in whom the Spirit of God is?”

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph,

“Forasmuch as God hath shewed thee all this, there is none so discreet and wise as thou art: Thou shalt be over my house, and according unto thy word shall all my people be ruled: only in the throne will I be greater than thou…, I have set thee over all the land of Egypt.”

And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph’s hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck; And he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him,

“Bow the knee.”

And he made him ruler over all the land of Egypt.

**Joseph’s name is changed to Zaphnath-paaneah and marries Asenath (Gen 41:44)**

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I am Pharaoh, and without thee shall no man lift up his hand or foot in all the land of Egypt.

**Greater than “God on Earth.”**

Joseph’s promotion to second in command in Egypt is often looked at as the blessings of God, which obviously it is. But looked at in practical terms, it’s no wonder he was promoted as such. A Hebrew slave, rejected from the house of Pharaoh, in prison no less, was able to tell the Pharaoh what dreams he was having and what their meanings were. Pharaoh, “God on Earth,” in that moment stood inferior to the God of Joseph, and recognized his greatness as such. Instead of taking offense at Joseph’s prophetic insight, he gladly accepted it as such and made Joseph practically his partner, recognizing that jail was not where he was meant to be.

**Asenath gives birth to Manasseh and Ephraim (Gen 41:50-52)**

And unto Joseph were born two sons before the years of famine came, which Asenath the daughter of Poti-pherah priest of On bare unto him. And Joseph called the name of the firstborn Manasseh:

“For God, hath made me forget all my toil, and all my father’s house.”

And the name of the second called he Ephraim,

“For God hath caused me to be fruitful in the land of my affliction.”

**Joseph’s brothers are sent by Jacob to Egypt to buy grain, where Joseph reveals himself to them**

**(See Gen 42-45)**

**Joseph is reunited with his father, Jacob (Gen 46:29-30)**

And Joseph made ready his chariot, and went up to meet Israel his father, to Goshen, and presented himself unto him; and he fell on his neck, and wept on his neck a good while. And Israel said unto Joseph,

“Now let me die, since I have seen thy face, because thou art yet alive.”

**Jacob blesses the Pharaoh (Gen 47:7)**

And Joseph brought in Jacob his father, and set him before Pharaoh: and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

**When Superpowers Kneel**

Despite the many years loss of his son, and the supreme mental toil that it obviously took on him, imagine the great surprise of Jacob to find out that not only was Joseph still alive, but that he was now second in command of all of Egypt? Furthermore, after reuniting with Joseph and meeting the Pharaoh, he gave the Pharaoh a blessing. A Hebrew nobody, by worldly standards, giving the leader of the world superpower of Egypt a blessing. Twice did pharaoh bow before the Hebrew God: in promoting the Hebrew slave Joseph, and in receiving a blessing at the hand of the Hebrew nobody, Jacob/Israel. Hence at least some of the blessings of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are to have world superpowers bow before you.

**Jacob desires to be buried in Canaan, with his fathers (Gen 47:29-31)**

And the time drew nigh that Israel must die: and he called his son Joseph, and said unto him,

“If now I have found grace in thy sight, put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh, and deal kindly and truly with me; bury me not, I pray thee, in Egypt: But I will lie with my fathers, and thou shalt carry me out of Egypt, and bury me in their burying place.”

And [Joseph] said,

“I will do as thou hast said.”

And [Jacob] said,

“Swear unto me.”

And [Joseph] sware unto him. And Israel bowed himself upon the bed’s head.

***(FOR A FULL AND COMPLETE READING OF THE PROMISES MADE***

***BY JACOB & MOSES TO THE TRIBES OF ISRAEL, SEE 8.8)***

**Jacob dies; His body is embalmed and is buried by Joseph (Gen 49:33; Gen 50:1-13)**

And when Jacob had made an end of commanding his sons, he gathered up his feet into the bed, and yielded up the ghost, and was gathered unto his people.

**Joseph buries his father (Gen 50:22-26)**

And Joseph fell upon his father’s face, and wept upon him, and kissed him. And Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father: and the physicians embalmed Israel. And forty days were fulfilled for him; for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed: and the Egyptians mourned for him threescore and ten days. And when the days of his mourning were past, Joseph spake unto… Pharaoh, saying,

“If now I have found grace in your eyes…My father made me swear, saying,

‘Lo, I die: in my grave which I have digged for me in the land of Canaan, there shalt thou bury me.’

“Now therefore let me go up, I pray thee, and bury my father, and I will come again.”

And Pharaoh said,

“Go up, and bury thy father, according as he made thee swear.”

And Joseph went up to bury his father: and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his house, and all the elders of the land of Egypt, And all the house of Joseph, and his brethren, and his father’s house: only their little ones, and their flocks, and their herds, they left in the land of Goshen. And there went up with him both chariots and horsemen: and it was a very great company.

And they came to the threshingfloor of Atad, which is beyond Jordan, and there they mourned with a great and very sore lamentation: and he made a mourning for his father seven days. And when the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, This is a grievous mourning to the Egyptians: wherefore the name of it was called Abel-mizraim, which is beyond Jordan. And his sons did unto him according as he commanded them: For his sons carried him into the land of Canaan, and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham bought with the field for a possession of a buryingplace of Ephron the Hittite, before Mamre.

**The posterity of Jacob/Israel who moved to Egypt (Exodus 1:1-6)**

Now these are the names of the children of Israel, which came into Egypt; every man and his household came with Jacob. Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin, Dan, and Naphtali, Gad, and Asher. And all the souls that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy souls: for Joseph was in Egypt already. And Joseph died, and all his brethren, and all that generation.

**Jacob’s inheritance was that of a choice son of Adam (Deut 32:7-14)**

[And Moses said unto the people,]

“Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will shew thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee. When the most High divided to the nations their inheritance, when he separated the sons of Adam, he set the bounds of the people according to the number of the children of Israel. For the Lord’s portion is his people; Jacob is the lot of his inheritance.

“He found him in a desert land, and in the waste howling wilderness; he led him about, he instructed him, he kept him as the apple of his eye. As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young, spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her wings: So the Lord alone did lead him, and there was no strange god with him.

“He made him ride on the high places of the earth, that he might eat the increase of the fields; and he made him to suck honey out of the rock, and oil out of the flinty rock; Butter of kine, and milk of sheep, with fat of lambs, and rams of the breed of Bashan, and goats, with the fat of kidneys of wheat; and thou didst drink the pure blood of the grape.”

**The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly:**

Jacob was promised many blessings and was no doubt supremely financially blessed and protected from all of his enemies. But even despite these many blessings, he still had a very hard life. His father in law cheated him multiple times concerning his wife, Rachel, and land, cattle, and servants owed to him. Rachel was the last to give birth, and his daughter, Dinah, was raped. Despite later reconciling in life, Jacob and Esau were estranged for many years. And after the Lord appeared to Jacob promising him great blessings of posterity…Rachel dies in childbirth, giving birth to Benjamin. Following this tragic event, Reuben sleeps with one of his step-moms, Bilhah. Then there’s the tragic event of his sons lying about the death of Joseph…thinking for over 20 years that his son was dead. All the while this is going on, Judah marries and has two sons, who become wicked and are killed by the Lord. The widow, Tamar, is unable to conceive children by either of the 2 sons and is later banished by Judah. Later, Tamar, knowing she’s supposed to have children, disguises herself as a prostitute and manages to sleep with Judah, getting pregnant with twins.

Many of Jacob’s problems came directly from within his own family….why is this? Why would God give so many wonderful promises to Jacob, only to make his family life so difficult? It would seem, then, as has been stated by numerous prophets and conference addresses, that being blessed by God does not shelter anyone, particularly the righteous, from hardships in life. Despite the fact that Jacob was rich in every sense of the word and was promised by God himself a multitude of blessings, he still had many deep sorrows and heartaches that he had to deal with and overcome in his mortal life.

Maybe the reason Jacob was so financially blessed and so seemingly spiritually cursed (no he wasn’t cursed, but it could easily be viewed as such) was because that his Abrahamic trials had to do come from within his own house, the hardest being the loss of Joseph, his favorite son. He had to be willing to move forward with the promises of God daily on his mind, despite the seeming death of his favorite son and numerous apostasies of his other sons.

**Jacob/Israel’s Wives and Sons:**

**Leah: Bilhah:**

**-Reuben -Dan**

**-Simeon -Naphtali**

**-Levi**

**-Judah Zilpah:**

**-Issachar -Gad**

**-Zebulon -Asher**

**Rachel:**

**-Joseph**

**-Manasseh**

**-Ephraim**

**-Benjamin**

**The Lord declares the laws of patience and vengeance given to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph: (D&C 98:23-32)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph, saying,]

“Now, I speak unto you concerning your families—if men will smite you, or your families, once, and ye bear it patiently and revile not against them, neither seek revenge, ye shall be rewarded; But if ye bear it not patiently, it shall be accounted unto you as being meted out as a just measure unto you. And again, if your enemy shall smite you the second time, and you revile not against your enemy, and bear it patiently, your reward shall be an hundred-fold. And again, if he shall smite you the third time, and ye bear it patiently, your reward shall be doubled unto you four-fold;

“And these three testimonies shall stand against your enemy if he repent not, and shall not be blotted out.

And now, verily I say unto you, if that enemy shall escape my vengeance, that he be not brought into judgment before me, then ye shall see to it that ye warn him in my name, that he come no more upon you, neither upon your family, even your children’s children unto the third and fourth generation.

And then, if he shall come upon you or your children, or your children’s children unto the third and fourth generation, I have delivered thine enemy into thine hands;

“And then if thou wilt spare him, thou shalt be rewarded for thy righteousness; and also thy children and thy children’s children unto the third and fourth generation. Nevertheless, thine enemy is in thine hands; and if thou rewardest him according to his works thou art justified; if he has sought thy life, and thy life is endangered by him, thine enemy is in thine hands and thou art justified. Behold, this is the law I gave unto my servant Nephi, and thy fathers, Joseph, and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, and all mine ancient prophets and apostles.”

**Why the younger ones?**

The blessings of “Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob” always seemed to go to the younger/youngest of the siblings. Isaac was younger than Ishmael, Jacob was younger than Esau, Joseph was younger than all of his siblings, except for Benjamin only, and Ephraim was younger than Manasseh. Each of the younger of the siblings received the priesthood and earthly birthright. Why was this so? This makes me think of the scripture “and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last” (D&C 29:30; Eth 13:12; Matt 19:30). See article immediately below, from LDS.org:

**What do the scriptures mean that say, “The first shall be last and the last shall be first”?**

When the Savior used this phrase, “the first” meant those who self-righteously assert their superiority yet reject the Savior and His gospel. “The last” meant His humble followers who make great sacrifices for the gospel (see [Mark 10:28–31](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/mark/10.28-31?lang=eng#p28); see also Joseph Smith Translation, [Mark 10:30–31](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/mark/10.30-31?lang=eng#p30) [in [Mark 10:31](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/mark/10.31?lang=eng#p31), footnote a]). In a general sense, “the first” are the privileged, prestigious, and selfish who get ahead in this life while defying God’s commandments. But they will receive condemnation in the life to come. “The last,” though rejected by the world, will receive a great reward in heaven. This phrase has also been used to describe the pattern through which the Savior reveals Himself and His gospel. When He came to earth, He came among the Jews, or His original covenant people, and later the gospel was preached to non-Jews (Gentiles). With the Restoration, He revealed the gospel first among the Gentiles, and it will eventually go to the Jews (see [1 Nephi 13:42](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/bofm/1-ne/13.42?lang=eng#p42); [Jacob 5:63](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/bofm/jacob/5.63?lang=eng#p63); [Ether 13:4–12](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/bofm/ether/13.4-12?lang=eng#p4)).

**The Lord declares the laws of war given to his Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, and other ancient peoples: (D&C 98:32-36)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph, saying,]

“Behold, this is the law I gave unto my servant Nephi, and thy fathers, Joseph, and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, and all mine ancient prophets and apostles. And again, this is the law that I gave unto mine ancients, that they should not go out unto battle against any nation, kindred, tongue, or people, save I, the Lord, commanded them.

“And if any nation, tongue, or people should proclaim war against them, they should first lift a standard of peace unto that people, nation, or tongue; And if that people did not accept the offering of peace, neither the second nor the third time, they should bring these testimonies before the Lord;

Then I, the Lord, would give unto them a commandment, and justify them in going out to battle against that nation, tongue, or people.”

**Birthright and Covenant Blessings**

Why are the “12 Tribes of Israel” so important? 10 of the 12 sons of Jacob repeatedly lied to and embarrassed him, and at times, committed murder, attempted murder, and gross sexual immorality within familial bloodlines. Excepting Joseph and Benjamin only, the other 10 were an utter embarrassment to their father, Jacob. Why then, does God make them to be so important, referring to the House of Israel as the 12 Tribes of Israel? Where did they get their special, elite status, despite their wicked sins?

The Original Promise was to Abraham, later extended to his son Isaac and later his son, Jacob. From Jacob, we begin to see the fulfillment of God’s Promise to Abraham, through Jacob. The many sons of Jacob, disobedient or not, became the heads of nations, not by their obedience or righteous purity, but simply because of their birthright through their great grandfather, Abraham.

We know that the promise to Abraham that continued through Isaac, and Jacob, was continued through Joseph, and Ephraim; Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, and Ephraim all being the younger ones in their families. It would seem, then, that one of the reasons the10 of the 12 disobedient tribes were given elite status was simply because they were birthright heirs to the promises of God to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. You might say they “were born under the covenant.”

In such a condition, no amount of sins committed in their lives were greater than the promises given to their father, grandfather, and great-grandfather. Sure, they had to pay for their sins, but their sins were limited to their lives and stopped there. The blessings of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were to extend throughout the eternities.

Additionally, despite their being born “under the covenant” promise, they were not given the greater portions. Neither was Ishmael, Esau, or Manasseh. Those elite status blessings were promised to the more righteous of the siblings, those willing to seek out God and make covenants with him.

Hence, we find that there are actually 3 types of birthright blessings: 1-Blessings of wealth and increase, such as the case of Ishmael and Esau, 2-Blessings of covenant-born birthright, as in the cases of the 10 overall disobedient sons of Jacob, and 3-Blessings of covenant-seeking AND covenant-born birthright of wealth and increase, as in the cases of Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, and Ephraim.

******

***CHAPTER 2:***

***THE GREAT LAW-GIVER, MOSES,***

***LEADS ISRAEL***

******

***2.1***

***ISRAEL IN BONDAGE & DELIVERED FROM CAPTIVITY***

**The Blessings of Slavery.**

Abraham, in his own right, didn’t have much. Sure, he was mildly successful, and had some lands, servants, and cattle. But nothing could compare to royalty or the probability of a pure pedigree, when considering the growth rate of Israel. Yet one of his youngest great grandsons, Joseph, was made second in command in Egypt, aligning with royal blood. Joseph’s blessing of promotion didn’t just come as a result of his obedience, but partly as a fulfillment of the promises of God to his great grandfather, Abraham. In this environment, the descendants of Israel were given freedom to grow, unhindered. Even later in their captivity, this too, was fulfilling the promises of God to Abraham. For over 400 years while in slavery, they were protected as a people from all outsiders, by their Egyptian captors. As pharaoh’s property, they were off limits. A people viewed as desolate and without nothing, as they continued to grow larger and larger... the more pharaoh let them multiply, the more slaves they had…they also became a very large nation…2 million people approximately, by the time Moses led them out of Egypt. Ultimately, slavery was the best way that the posterity of Abraham could grow without hinderment before they could go into the Promised Land, build the tabernacle, conquer Jerusalem, build the temple, and then later be scattered, etc. Thus, even in slavery, they were still fulfilling the promises of God made to Abraham.

***-APPROX 1500 B.C.-***

**The descendants of Israel made slaves by a new Pharaoh (Ex 1:7-12)**

And the children of Israel were fruitful, and increased abundantly, and multiplied, and waxed exceeding mighty; and the land was filled with them. Now there arose up a new king over Egypt, which knew not Joseph. And he said unto his people,

“Behold, the people of the children of Israel are more and mightier than we: Come on, let us deal wisely with them; lest they multiply, and it come to pass, that, when there falleth out any war, they join also unto our enemies, and fight against us, and so get them up out of the land.”

Therefore they did set over them taskmasters to afflict them with their burdens. And they built for Pharaoh treasure cities, Pithom and Raamses. But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied and grew. And they were grieved because of the children of Israel.

**The descendants of Israel lived in Egypt for 430 years (Ex 12:40)**

Now the sojourning of the children of Israel, who dwelt in Egypt, was four hundred and thirty years.

**Pharaoh decrees the death of every Hebrew newborn son (Ex 1:22)**

And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying,

“Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive.”

**Moses born, raised in Pharaoh’s house (Ex 2:1-10)**

And there went a man of the house of Levi, and took to wife a daughter of Levi. And the woman conceived, and bare a son: and when she saw him that he was a goodly child, she hid him three months. And when she could not longer hide him, she took for him an ark of bulrushes, and daubed it with slime and with pitch, and put the child therein; and she laid it in the flags by the river’s brink. And his sister stood afar off, to wit what would be done to him.

And the daughter of Pharaoh came down to wash herself at the river; and her maidens walked along by the river’s side; and when she saw the ark among the flags, she sent her maid to fetch it. And when she had opened it, she saw the child: and, behold, the babe wept. And she had compassion on him, and said,

“This is one of the Hebrews’ children.”

Then said his sister to Pharaoh’s daughter,

“Shall I go and call to thee a nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may nurse the child for thee?”

And Pharaoh’s daughter said to her,

“Go.”

And the maid went and called the child’s mother. And Pharaoh’s daughter said unto her,

“Take this child away, and nurse it for me, and I will give thee thy wages. And the woman took the child, and nursed it.”

And the child grew, and she brought him unto Pharaoh’s daughter, and he became her son. And she called his name Moses: and she said,

“Because I drew him out of the water.”

**Moses flees Egypt (Ex 2:11-15)**

And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown, that he went out unto his brethren, and looked on their burdens: and he spied an Egyptian smiting an Hebrew, one of his brethren. And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no man, he slew the Egyptian, and hid him in the sand. And when he went out the second day, behold, two men of the Hebrews strove together: and [one] said to [Moses],

“Wherefore smitest thou thy fellow?”

And [the other] said,

“Who made thee a prince and a judge over us? Intendest thou to kill me, as thou killedst the Egyptian?”

And Moses feared, and said,

“Surely this thing is known.”

Now when Pharaoh heard this thing, he sought to slay Moses. But Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh, and dwelt in the land of Midian: and he sat down by a well.

**God hears the cries of the Israelites (Ex 2:23-25)**

And it came to pass in process of time, that the king of Egypt died: and the children of Israel sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God by reason of the bondage. And God heard their groaning, and God remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. And God looked upon the children of Israel, and God had respect unto them.

**The Lord appears to Moses, calls him to deliver the Israelites from Egyptian bondage (Ex 3:1-10)**

Now Moses kept the flock of Jethro his father in law, the priest of Midian: and he led the flock to the backside of the desert, and came to the mountain of God, even to Horeb. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed. And Moses said,

“I will now turn aside, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt.”

And when the Lord saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said,

“Moses, Moses.”

And [Moses] said,

“Here am I.”

And [God] said,

“Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground…I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.”

And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God. And the Lord said,

“I have surely seen the affliction of my people which are in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows; And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. Now therefore, behold, the cry of the children of Israel is come unto me: and I have also seen the oppression wherewith the Egyptians oppress them. Come now therefore, and I will send thee unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth my people the children of Israel out of Egypt.”

**Moses and Aaron tell the Israelites that God will deliver them from Pharaoh (Ex 4:27-31)**

And the Lord said to Aaron,

“Go into the wilderness to meet Moses.”

And he went, and met him in the mount of God, and kissed him. And Moses told Aaron all the words of the Lord who had sent him, and all the signs which he had commanded him. And Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the children of Israel: And Aaron spake all the words which the Lord had spoken unto Moses, and did the signs in the sight of the people. And the people believed: and when they heard that the Lord had visited the children of Israel, and that he had looked upon their affliction, then they bowed their heads and worshipped.

**The Lord identifies Himself as Jehovah, to Moses, reiterates his covenant with them (Ex 6:1-8)**

Then the Lord said unto Moses, Now shalt thou see what I will do to Pharaoh: for with a strong hand shall he let them go, and with a strong hand shall he drive them out of his land. And God spake unto Moses, and said unto him,

“I am the Lord:”

And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of God Almighty, but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them. And I have also established my covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their pilgrimage, wherein they were strangers. And I have also heard the groaning of the children of Israel, whom the Egyptians keep in bondage; and I have remembered my covenant. Wherefore say unto the children of Israel,

‘I am the Lord, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments: And I will take you to me for a people, and I will be to you a God: and ye shall know that I am the Lord your God, which bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians. And I will bring you in unto the land, concerning the which I did swear to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for an heritage: I am the Lord.”

**Moses appointed as a God over pharaoh, by the Lord (Ex 7:1)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“See, I have made thee a god to Pharaoh: and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet.”

**After numerous plagues sent to Egypt, Pharaoh still refuses to let Israel go free (Ex 10:27. JST)**

But Pharaoh hardened his heart, and he would not let them go.

**The Lord promises to kill the firstborn out of every Egyptian household (Ex 11:1-6)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Yet will I bring one plague more upon Pharaoh, and upon Egypt; afterwards he will let you go hence: when he shall let you go, he shall surely thrust you out hence altogether. Speak now in the ears of the people, and let every man borrow of his neighbour, and every woman of her neighbour, jewels of silver, and jewels of gold.”

And the Lord gave the people favour in the sight of the Egyptians. Moreover the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the sight of Pharaoh’s servants, and in the sight of the people. And Moses said,

“Thus saith the Lord, About midnight will I go out into the midst of Egypt: And all the firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the firstborn of the maidservant that is behind the mill; and all the firstborn of beasts. And there shall be a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt, such as there was none like it, nor shall be like it any more.”

**The Lord institutes the Passover among the Children of Israel**

**See Ex 12:1-20**

**The Lord promises to spare every household that has lambs blood smeared over their door (Ex 12:21-28)**

Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them,

“Draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the Passover. And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning.

For the Lord will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the Lord will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you.

“And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever. And it shall come to pass, when ye be come to the land which the Lord will give you, according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service. And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you,

‘What mean ye by this service?’

“That ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of the Lord’s Passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.”

And the children of Israel went away, and did as the Lord had commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they.

**Pharaoh lets the Israelites go free (Ex 12:29-36)**

And it came to pass, that at midnight the Lord smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the firstborn of the captive that was in the dungeon; and all the firstborn of cattle.

And Pharaoh rose up in the night, he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians; and there was a great cry in Egypt; for there was not a house where there was not one dead. And he called for Moses and Aaron by night, and said,

“Rise up, and get you forth from among my people, both ye and the children of Israel; and go, serve the Lord, as ye have said. Also take your flocks and your herds, as ye have said, and be gone; and bless me also.”

And the Egyptians were urgent upon the people, that they might send them out of the land in haste; for they said, We be all dead men. And the people took their dough before it was leavened, their kneading troughs being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders. And the children of Israel did according to the word of Moses; and they borrowed of the Egyptians jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment: And the Lord gave the people favour in the sight of the Egyptians, so that they lent unto them such things as they required. And they spoiled the Egyptians.

**The Israelites delivered from bondage after 430 years (Ex 12:41)**

And it came to pass at the end of the four hundred and thirty years, even the selfsame day it came to pass, that all the hosts of the Lord went out from the land of Egypt.

***2.2***

***THE ISRAELITES REJCT THE LORD, PROVOKE GOD’S ANGER***

**The Lord covenants to make Israel a particular treasure above all people (Ex 19:1-6)**

In the third month, when the children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they into the wilderness of Sinai. For they were departed from Rephidim, and were come to the desert of Sinai, and had pitched in the wilderness; and there Israel camped before the mount. And Moses went up unto God, and the Lord called unto him out of the mountain, saying,

“Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel; Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles’ wings, and brought you unto myself. Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine: And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.”

**The Lord promises to speak to the people face to face from Mt. Sinai (Ex 19:10-25)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Go unto the people, and sanctify them today and tomorrow, and let them wash their clothes, And be ready against the third day: for the third day the Lord will come down in the sight of all the people upon mount Sinai. And thou shalt set bounds unto the people round about, saying,

‘Take heed to yourselves, that ye go not up into the mount, or touch the border of it: whosoever toucheth the mount shall be surely put to death.’

“There shall not an hand touch it, but he shall surely be stoned, or shot through; whether it be beast or man, it shall not live: when the trumpet soundeth long, they shall come up to the mount.”

And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their clothes.

And he said unto the people,

“Be ready against the third day: come not at your wives.”

And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that was in the camp trembled. And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount. And mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the Lord descended upon it in fire: and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly. And when the voice of the trumpet sounded long, and waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice.

And the Lord came down upon mount Sinai, on the top of the mount: and the Lord called Moses up to the top of the mount; and Moses went up. And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Go down, charge the people, lest they break through unto the Lord to gaze, and many of them perish.

And let the priests also, which come near to the Lord, sanctify themselves, lest the Lord break forth upon them.”

And Moses said unto the Lord,

“The people cannot come up to mount Sinai: for thou chargedst us, saying, Set bounds about the mount, and sanctify it.”

And the Lord said unto him,

“Away, get thee down, and thou shalt come up, thou, and Aaron with thee: but let not the priests and the people break through to come up unto the Lord, lest he break forth upon them.”

So Moses went down unto the people, and spake unto them.

**The Lord gives the 10 Commandments to Moses (Ex 20:1-17)**

And God spake all these words, saying,

“I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

1-Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

2-Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:

3-Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me; And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments.

4-Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

5-Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work:

But the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates: For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

6-Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

7-Thou shalt not kill.

8-Thou shalt not commit adultery.

9-Thou shalt not steal.

10-Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbour’s.”

**The people, for fear of the Lord, ask Moses to speak to him on their behalf, instead of receiving the Law directly (Ex 20:18-21)**

And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking: and when the people saw it, they removed, and stood afar off. And they said unto Moses,

“Speak thou with us, and we will hear: but let not God speak with us, lest we die.”

And Moses said unto the people,

“Fear not: for God is come to prove you, and that his fear may be before your faces, that ye sin not.”

And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was.

**The Lord takes the Melchizedek Priesthood away from the people due to sin, gives them the Aaronic Priesthood instead (D&C 84:18-25)**

And the Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations, which priesthood also continueth and abideth forever with the priesthood which is after the holiest order of God. And this greater priesthood administereth the gospel and holdeth the key of the mysteries of the kingdom, even the key of the knowledge of God. Therefore, in the ordinances thereof, the power of godliness is manifest. And without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh; For without this no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and live.

Now this Moses plainly taught to the children of Israel in the wilderness, and sought diligently to sanctify his people that they might behold the face of God; But they hardened their hearts and could not endure his presence; therefore, the Lord in his wrath, for his anger was kindled against them, swore that they should not enter into his rest while in the wilderness, which rest is the fulness of his glory. Therefore, he took Moses out of their midst, and the Holy Priesthood also;

**The Lord commands Israel to sacrifice and worship upon holy altars (Ex 20:24-26)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“An altar of earth thou shalt make unto me, and shalt sacrifice thereon thy burnt offerings, and thy peace offerings, thy sheep, and thine oxen: in all places where I record my name I will come unto thee, and I will bless thee. And if thou wilt make me an altar of stone, thou shalt not build it of hewn stone: for if thou lift up thy tool upon it, thou hast polluted it. Neither shalt thou go up by steps unto mine altar, that thy nakedness be not discovered thereon.”

**Moses, Aaron, and 72 others see the Lord face to face (Ex 24:9-11)**

Then went up Moses, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel: And they saw the God of Israel: and there was under his feet as it were a paved work of a sapphire stone, and as it were the body of heaven in his clearness. And upon the nobles of the children of Israel he laid not his hand: also they saw God, and did eat and drink.

**The Lord calls Moses to commune with him upon Mt. Sinai for 40 days (Ex 24:12-18)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Come up to me into the mount, and be there: and I will give thee tables of stone, and a law, and commandments which I have written; that thou mayest teach them.”

And Moses rose up, and his minister Joshua: and Moses went up into the mount of God. And he said unto the elders,

“Tarry ye here for us, until we come again unto you: and, behold, Aaron and Hur are with you: if any man have any matters to do, let him come unto them.”

And Moses went up into the mount, and a cloud covered the mount. And the glory of the Lord abode upon mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud. And the sight of the glory of the Lord was like devouring fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children of Israel. And Moses went into the midst of the cloud, and gat him up into the mount: and Moses was in the mount forty days and forty nights.

**The Lord commands Moses to build the Tabernacle and Ark of the Covenants (Ex 25:8-9,22)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And let them make me a sanctuary; that I may dwell among them. According to all that I shew thee, after the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall ye make it. And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the children of Israel.”

**Aaron and his sons to be consecrated as Priests to work in the Tabernacle (Ex 28:1)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And take thou unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister unto me in the priest’s office, even Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron’s sons.”

**The garments to be worn by the priests are to represent the 12 Tribes of Israel (Ex 28:2-4, 12, 21, 29)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron thy brother for glory and for beauty. And thou shalt speak unto all that are wise hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they may make Aaron’s garments to consecrate him, that he may minister unto me in the priest’s office. And these are the garments which they shall make; a breastplate, and an ephod, and a robe, and a broidered coat, a mitre, and a girdle: and they shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, and his sons, that he may minister unto me in the priest’s office.

“And thou shalt put the two stones upon the shoulders of the ephod for stones of memorial unto the children of Israel: and Aaron shall bear their names before the Lord upon his two shoulders for a memorial.

And the stones shall be with the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, like the engravings of a signet; every one with his name shall they be according to the twelve tribes. And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goeth in unto the holy place, for a memorial before the Lord continually.”

**Aaron and the Priests to wear the Urim and Thummim (Ex 28:30)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt put in the breastplate of judgment the Urim and the Thummim; and they shall be upon Aaron’s heart, when he goeth in before the Lord: and Aaron shall bear the judgment of the children of Israel upon his heart before the Lord continually.”

**The breastplate carrying the Urim and Thummim to be inscribed with the words HOLINESS TO THE LORD (Ex 28:36)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt make a plate of pure gold, and grave upon it, like the engravings of a signet, HOLINESS TO THE LORD.”

**Aaron and his sons to be washed, anointed, and consecrated to work in their respective offices (Ex 29:4-7)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And Aaron and his sons thou shalt bring unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and shalt wash them with water. And thou shalt take the garments, and put upon Aaron the coat, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breastplate, and gird him with the curious girdle of the ephod: And thou shalt put the mitre upon his head, and put the holy crown upon the mitre. Then shalt thou take the anointing oil, and pour it upon his head, and anoint him.”

**Cleansing by blood to be performed in the Tabernacle (Ex 29:19-21)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt take the other ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram.

Then shalt thou kill the ram, and take of his blood, and put it upon the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and upon the tip of the right ear of his sons, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot, and sprinkle the blood upon the altar round about.

“And thou shalt take of the blood that is upon the altar, and of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it upon Aaron, and upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon the garments of his sons with him: and he shall be hallowed, and his garments, and his sons, and his sons’ garments with him.”

**The holy garments worn by Aaron and the priests to be consecrated (Ex 29:29)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And the holy garments of Aaron shall be his sons’ after him, to be anointed therein, and to be consecrated in them.”

**Blood sacrifice, representing the Atonement of Jesus Christ to be performed in the Tabernacle (Ex 29:31-33)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt take the ram of the consecration, and seethe his flesh in the holy place. And Aaron and his sons shall eat the flesh of the ram, and the bread that is in the basket, by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. And they shall eat those things wherewith the atonement was made, to consecrate and to sanctify them: but a stranger shall not eat thereof, because they are holy.”

**Death decreed upon any who violate the Sabbath, a day to be recognized by Israel forever (Ex 31:14-17)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“Ye shall keep the sabbath therefore; for it is holy unto you: every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death: for whosoever doeth any work therein, that soul shall be cut off from among his people.

Six days may work be done; but in the seventh is the sabbath of rest, holy to the Lord: whosoever doeth any work in the sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death. Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever: for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.”

**The Israelites commit blasphemy by creating and worshipping a false god (Ex 32:1-6)**

And when the people saw that Moses delayed to come down out of the mount, the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron, and said unto him,

“Up, make us gods, which shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.”

And Aaron said unto them,

“Break off the golden earrings, which are in the ears of your wives, of your sons, and of your daughters, and bring them unto me.”

And all the people brake off the golden earrings which were in their ears, and brought them unto Aaron. And he received them at their hand, and fashioned it with a graving tool, after he had made it a molten calf: and they said

“These be thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.”

And when Aaron saw it, he built an altar before it; and Aaron made proclamation, and said,

“Tomorrow is a feast to the Lord.”

And they rose up early on the morrow, and offered burnt offerings, and brought peace offerings; and the people sat down to eat and to drink, and rose up to play.

**The Lord, although angry with the Israelites, remembers the promises He made to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob**

**(Ex 32:7-14, JST)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Go, get thee down; for thy people, which thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves: They have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them: they have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed thereunto, and said, These be thy gods, O Israel, which have brought thee up out of the land of Egypt…I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people: Now therefore let me alone, that my wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them: and I will make of thee a great nation.”

And Moses besought the Lord his God, and said,

“Lord, why doth thy wrath wax hot against thy people, which thou hast brought forth out of the land of Egypt with great power, and with a mighty hand? Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say,

‘For mischief did he bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth?’

“Turn from thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against thy people. Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, thy servants, to whom thou swarest by thine own self, and saidst unto them,

‘I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit it forever.’

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“If they will repent of the evil which they have done, I swill l spare them, and turn away my fierce wrath; but, behold, thou shalt execute judgment upon all that will not repent of this evil this day. Therefore, see thou do this thing that I have commanded thee, or I will execute all that which I had thought to do unto my people.”

**Moses destroys the golden image by use of the 10 Commandments tablets (Ex 32:19)**

And it came to pass, as soon as he came nigh unto the camp, that he saw the calf, and the dancing: and Moses’ anger waxed hot, and he cast the tables out of his hands, and brake them beneath the mount.

**Moses asks the Lord to forgive the sins of Israel. The Lord promises to punish Israel for her sins (Ex 32:30-35)**

And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses said unto the people,

“Ye have sinned a great sin: and now I will go up unto the Lord; peradventure I shall make an atonement for your sin.”

And Moses returned unto the Lord, and said,

“Oh, this people have sinned a great sin, and have made them gods of gold. Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin—; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.”

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Whosoever hath sinned against me, him will I blot out of my book. Therefore now go, lead the people unto the place of which I have spoken unto thee: behold, mine Angel shall go before thee: nevertheless in the day when I visit, I will visit their sin upon them.”

And the Lord plagued the people, because they made the calf, which Aaron made.

**Moses declared the great lawgiver of Israel (D&C 138:41)**

…Moses, the great law-giver of Israel;

**The Israelites of Moses’ Day.**

How do a people go from such collective righteousness to such gross collective wickedness? Through countless miracles, these people had witnessed the power of God for months and years in a way that no other people ever had, through their deliverance from Egypt, as well as their being pronounced clean from their sins through fasting and repentance to the point where they were going to literally have the Lord speak to them from Mt. Sinai (Ex 19:14-25). However, being too afraid to receive the Lord, they wilfully rejected him, in favor of Moses speaking for them (Ex 20:19-21). Weeks/months later, during Moses’ 40 day absence while on Mt. Sinai talking with the Lord…AS THEY REQUESTED…they lost all hope and faith in God’s promises and power, as well as Moses’ leadership abilities (Ex 32:1). In this state, they created and worshipped what they knew as a false god/idol, danced before it, offered sacrifice to it, and then got naked and committed sexual acts in front of, and dedicated to, it (Ex 32:2-25).

Aaron, not exactly being a willful participant, but giving in more to peer pressure and fear, was forced to build the golden calf for them, whereas Joshua shunned all of their sins completely and left the group to wait for Moses. When the events of the Second Coming start unfolding and it seems as if God has abandoned his people, and the prophet seems too old to lead the Church, will you, along with many members and leaders perhaps, lose your testimony, or will you hold strong like Joshua, who was later called as Prophet to succeed Moses?

Concerning the children of Israel, what separated this group of people from the inhabitants of the City of Enoch? Fear. They were literally on the cusp of seeing and entering the presence of the Lord. The Brother of Jared, too, was filled with fear when faced with such a moment of decision (Eth 3:6). But instead of running away, he moved through his fears so that he could be in Christ’s presence (Eth 3:7-10). So, too, did the people of the city of Enoch continue to move closer to, and feel after, God , through repentance and obedience until the blessed day of translation arrived after 365 years (Moses 7:17-20, 68-69). It took 365 year of individual preparation, repentance, forgiveness, spiritual experiences, master over the flesh, etc, until it could happened, but it happened nonetheless because the people did not flee out of fear.

***2.3***

***THE ISRAELITES RECEIVE TEMPLE ORDINANCES AND COMMANDMENTS***

**Chosen of the Lord.**

Moses, the Great Lawgiver, revealed to the people the ordinances of the Temple through the Tabernacle. Out of all the people of the world, the Israelites were given the temple blessings. This, then, makes them a very special and unique people because it was to them that God revealed the ordinances of salvation: ordinances necessary for every person to receive in order to return to live with God, ordinances which only a select group of people were chosen to receive and have these revealed to (Ex 19:5-6).

**The Lord promises to give the Israelites the land promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Ex 33:1-3)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Depart, and go up hence, thou and the people which thou hast brought up out of the land of Egypt, unto the land which I sware unto Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, Unto thy seed will I give it: And I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite: Unto a land flowing with milk and honey: for I will not go up in the midst of thee; for thou art a stiffnecked people: lest I consume thee in the way.”

**The Lord declares great mercies upon, and to do great miracles before, the children of Israel (Ex 34:5-11, 28)**

And the Lord descended in the cloud, and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the Lord. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed,

“The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear the guilty; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children’s children, unto the third and to the fourth generation.”

And Moses made haste, and bowed his head toward the earth, and worshipped. And he said,

“If now I have found grace in thy sight, O Lord, let my Lord, I pray thee, go among us; for it is a stiffnecked people; and pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us for thine inheritance.”

And [the Lord] said,

“Behold, I make a covenant: before all thy people I will do marvels, such as have not been done in all the earth, nor in any nation: and all the people among which thou art shall see the work of the Lord: for it is a terrible thing that I will do with thee. Observe thou that which I command thee this day: behold, I drive out before thee the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.”

And he was there with the Lord forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water. And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the Ten Commandments.

**The tabernacle and its objects built and created according to revelation**

**(See Ex 35-39)**

**Aaron and his sons washed before administering before the Tabernacle, the priesthood promised upon their posterity**

**(Ex 40:12-16; 1 Chron 6:49)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt bring Aaron and his sons unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and wash them with water. And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify him; that he may minister unto me in the priest’s office. And thou shalt bring his sons, and clothe them with coats:

And thou shalt anoint them, as thou didst anoint their father, that they may minister unto me in the priest’s office: for their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations.”

Thus did Moses: according to all that the Lord commanded him, so did he. But Aaron and his sons offered upon the altar of the burnt offering, and on the altar of incense, and were appointed for all the work of the place most holy, and to make an atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded.

**The Tabernacle finished; the glory of the Lord fills the Tabernacle (Ex 40:30-35)**

And he set the laver between the tent of the congregation and the altar, and put water there, to wash withal. And Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet thereat: When they went into the tent of the congregation, and when they came near unto the altar, they washed; as the Lord commanded Moses. And he reared up the court round about the tabernacle and the altar, and set up the hanging of the court gate. So Moses finished the work. Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle. And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle.

**The Tabernacle to be a place of reconciliation with the Lord and for performing Atonement (Lev 5:18)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And he shall bring a ram without blemish out of the flock, with thy estimation, for a trespass offering, unto the priest: and the priest shall make an atonement for him concerning his ignorance wherein he erred and wist it not, and it shall be forgiven him.”

**Aaron and his sons washed, anointed, and clothed in Priesthood robes (Lev 7:6-9)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“Every male among the priests shall eat thereof: it shall be eaten in the holy place: it is most holy. As the sin offering is, so is the trespass offering: there is one law for them: the priest that maketh atonement therewith shall have it. And the priest that offereth any man’s burnt offering, even the priest shall have to himself the skin of the burnt offering which he hath offered. And all the meat offering that is baken in the oven, and all that is dressed in the frying pan, and in the pan, shall be the priest’s that offereth it.”

**Aaron performs sacrifice to atone for the sins of Israel (Lev 9:7-8)**

And Moses said unto Aaron,

“Go unto the altar, and offer thy sin offering, and thy burnt offering, and make an atonement for thyself, and for the people: and offer the offering of the people, and make an atonement for them; as the Lord commanded.”

Aaron therefore went unto the altar, and slew the calf of the sin offering, which was for himself.

**The Lord commands Israel to be clean and holy (Lev 11:44-45; Lev 19:1-2)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“For I am the Lord your God: ye shall therefore sanctify yourselves, and ye shall be holy; for I am holy: neither shall ye defile yourselves with any manner of creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

For I am the Lord that bringeth you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: ye shall therefore be holy, for I am holy… Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them,

‘Ye shall be holy: for I the Lord your God am holy.”

**Numerous sins including sexual sins, dishonoring parents, or worshipping false gods condemned among Israel**

**(See Lev 18-20)**

**The descendants of Aaron are to be pure and without blemish (Lev 21:21-23)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“No man that hath a blemish of the seed of Aaron the priest shall come nigh to offer the offerings of the Lord made by fire: he hath a blemish; he shall not come nigh to offer the bread of his God. He shall eat the bread of his God, both of the most holy, and of the holy. Only he shall not go in unto the veil, nor come nigh unto the altar, because he hath a blemish; that he profane not my sanctuaries: for I the Lord do sanctify them.”

**Israel commanded to keep the Sabbath day Holy (Lev 23:1-3)**

And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying,

“Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, Concerning the feasts of the Lord, which ye shall proclaim to be holy convocations, even these are my feasts. Six days shall work be done: but the seventh day is the sabbath of rest, an holy convocation; ye shall do no work therein: it is the sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings.”

**Israel reminded to not worship false idols, but to worship God on the Sabbath (Lev 26:1-2)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“Ye shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall ye set up any image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it: for I am the Lord your God. Ye shall keep my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I am the Lord.”

**Israel commanded to keep many feasts, including the Passover, yearly**

**(See Lev 23:4-44)**

**The Lord reveals the Law of Sabbaths and Jubilees**

**(See Lev 25:1-17)**

**Many blessings and cursings pronounced Israel based on their obedience or disobedience**

**(See Lev 26:3-46)**

**Truly, A Chosen People.**

Considering the absolute gross rejection of God by creating a false god and to sexually dance before, and worship, it, it’s a great surprise why God didn’t completely reject them as a people. Their situation resembles the 10 sons of Jacob, brothers of Joseph. As a group, they lied to their dad about the death of Joseph, committed murder in revenge of Dinah’s rape, and Reuben slept with one of his step-moms. And yet they were still given the promises given to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. But their blessings were not blessings of obedience and the making of covenants, but were birthright blessings guaranteed them, despite their obedience or lack thereof. The same held true for Israel. Despite their rejection of God, they were still given the Aaronic Priesthood and its attendant ordinances. Yes, many had to repent, and yes, they had the Melchizedek Priesthood taken from them. But by virtue of their birthright, heirs to the promise made to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, they were guaranteed blessings…blessings which they obviously were not worthy of.

***2.4***

***THE ISRAELITES WANDER IN THE WILDERNESS FOR 40 YEARS***

***-APPROX 1450 B.C.-***

**The Lord commands Moses to count the number of males 20 years and older in their group (Num 1:1-4; Num 2:32)**

And the Lord spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the tabernacle of the congregation, on the first day of the second month, in the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying,

“Take ye the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, after their families, by the house of their fathers, with the number of their names, every male by their polls; From twenty years old and upward, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel: thou and Aaron shall number them by their armies. And with you there shall be a man of every tribe; every one head of the house of his fathers. These are those which were numbered of the children of Israel by the house of their fathers: all those that were numbered of the camps throughout their hosts were six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty.”

**The sons of Aaron, known as Levites, are chosen by the Lord (Num 3:11-13)**

And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying,

“And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from among the children of Israel instead of all the firstborn that openeth the matrix among the children of Israel: therefore the Levites shall be mine; Because all the firstborn are mine; for on the day that I smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt I hallowed unto me all the firstborn in Israel, both man and beast: mine shall they be: I am the Lord.”

**Aaron’s blessing to the Israelites, as revealed by the Lord (Num 6:22-27)**

And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying,

“Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons, saying, On this wise ye shall bless the children of Israel, saying unto them,

‘The Lord bless thee, and keep thee: The Lord make his face shine upon thee, and be gracious unto thee: The Lord lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace.’

“And they shall put my name upon the children of Israel; and I will bless them.”

**Aaron and his posterity chosen to serve the Lord forever (Num 8:13-19)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“And thou shalt set the Levites before Aaron, and before his sons, and offer them for an offering unto the Lord. Thus shalt thou separate the Levites from among the children of Israel: and the Levites shall be mine. And after that shall the Levites go in to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation: and thou shalt cleanse them, and offer them for an offering. For they are wholly given unto me from among the children of Israel; instead of such as open every womb, even instead of the firstborn of all the children of Israel, have I taken them unto me.

“For all the firstborn of the children of Israel are mine, both man and beast: on the day that I smote every firstborn in the land of Egypt I sanctified them for myself. And I have taken the Levites for all the firstborn of the children of Israel. And I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and to his sons from among the children of Israel, to do the service of the children of Israel in the tabernacle of the congregation, and to make an atonement for the children of Israel: that there be no plague among the children of Israel, when the children of Israel come nigh unto the sanctuary.”

**The enemies of Israel scattered before them as the Lord was with them (Num 10:33-36)**

And [the Israelites] departed from the mount of the Lord three days’ journey: and the ark of the covenant of the Lord went before them in the three days’ journey, to search out a resting place for them. And the cloud of the Lord was upon them by day, when they went out of the camp. And it came to pass, when the ark set forward, that Moses said,

“Rise up, Lord, and let thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate thee flee before thee.”

And when it rested, he said,

“Return, O Lord, unto the many thousands of Israel.”

**Moses desires that all of God’s people would prophesy as the prophets (Num 11:29)**

And Moses said unto [Joshua],

“Enviest thou for my sake? Would God that all the Lord’s people were prophets, and that the Lord would put his spirit upon them!”

**The Lord punishes Israel for her wickedness, declares that they must wander in the wilderness for 40 years (Num 14:20-35)**

And the Lord said,

“I have pardoned according to thy word: But as truly as I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of the Lord. Because all those men which have seen my glory, and my miracles, which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tempted me now these ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice; Surely they shall not see the land which I sware unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that provoked me see it:

But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and hath followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it. (Now the Amalekites and the Canaanites dwelt in the valley.) To morrow turn you, and get you into the wilderness by the way of the Red sea.”

And the Lord spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,

“How long shall I bear with this evil congregation, which murmur against me? I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel, which they murmur against me. Say unto them,

‘As truly as I live, saith the Lord, as ye have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you: Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, which have murmured against me, Doubtless ye shall not come into the land, concerning which I sware to make you dwell therein, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun. But your little ones, which ye said should be a prey, them will I bring in, and they shall know the land which ye have despised.

But as for you, your carcases, they shall fall in this wilderness. And your children shall wander in the wilderness forty years, and bear your whoredoms, until your carcases be wasted in the wilderness. After the number of the days in which ye searched the land, even forty days, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years, and ye shall know my breach of promise.

I the Lord have said, I will surely do it unto all this evil congregation, that are gathered together against me: in this wilderness they shall be consumed, and there they shall die.”

**The Israelites attacked soon after being cursed by the Lord (Num 14:40-45)**

And they rose up early in the morning, and gat them up into the top of the mountain, saying,

“Lo, we be here, and will go up unto the place which the Lord hath promised: for we have sinned.”

And Moses said,

“Wherefore now do ye transgress the commandment of the Lord? but it shall not prosper. Go not up, for the Lord is not among you; that ye be not smitten before your enemies. For the Amalekites and the Canaanites are there before you, and ye shall fall by the sword: because ye are turned away from the Lord, therefore the Lord will not be with you.”

But they presumed to go up unto the hill top: nevertheless the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and Moses, departed not out of the camp. Then the Amalekites came down, and the Canaanites which dwelt in that hill, and smote them, and discomfited them, even unto Hormah.

**Balaam prophesies of the destiny of Israel (Num 24:1-9)**

And when Balaam saw that it pleased the Lord to bless Israel, he went not, as at other times, to seek for enchantments, but he set his face toward the wilderness. And Balaam lifted up his eyes, and he saw Israel abiding in his tents according to their tribes; and the spirit of God came upon him. And he took up his parable, and said,

“Balaam the son of Beor hath said, and the man whose eyes are open hath said:

‘He hath said, which heard the words of God, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open:

‘How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob, and thy tabernacles, O Israel!’

‘As the valleys are they spread forth, as gardens by the river’s side, as the trees of lign aloes which the Lord hath planted, and as cedar trees beside the waters. He shall pour the water out of his buckets, and his seed shall be in many waters, and his king shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom shall be exalted. God brought him forth out of Egypt; he hath as it were the strength of an unicorn: he shall eat up the nations his enemies, and shall break their bones, and pierce them through with his arrows. He couched, he lay down as a lion, and as a great lion: who shall stir him up? Blessed is he that blesseth thee, and cursed is he that curseth thee.”

**Balaam prophesies that the Messiah, Jesus Christ, will come from the descendants of Israel (Num 24:15-19)**

And he took up his parable, and said,

“Balaam the son of Beor hath said, and the man whose eyes are open hath said:

‘He hath said, which heard the words of God, and knew the knowledge of the most High, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open: I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth. And Edom shall be a possession, Seir also shall be a possession for his enemies; and Israel shall do valiantly. Out of Jacob shall come he that shall have dominion, and shall destroy him that remaineth of the city.”

**Moses and Eleazar number all males in Israel 20 years and older, excluding Levites. Caleb and Joshua are the last alive.**

**(Num 26:1-4, 62-65)**

And it came to pass after the plague, that the Lord spake unto Moses and unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,

“Take the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, from twenty years old and upward, throughout their fathers’ house, all that are able to go to war in Israel.”

And Moses and Eleazar the priest spake with them in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho, saying,

“Take the sum of the people, from twenty years old and upward;”

as the Lord commanded Moses and the children of Israel, which went forth out of the land of Egypt. And those that were numbered of them were twenty and three thousand, all males from a month old and upward: for they were not numbered among the children of Israel, because there was no inheritance given them among the children of Israel. These are they that were numbered by Moses and Eleazar the priest, who numbered the children of Israel in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho. But among these there was not a man of them whom Moses and Aaron the priest numbered, when they numbered the children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai. For the Lord had said of them,

“They shall surely die in the wilderness.”

And there was not left a man of them, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

**The Lord calls Joshua to succeed Moses as Prophet (Num 27:18-23)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the spirit, and lay thine hand upon him; And set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation; and give him a charge in their sight. And thou shalt put some of thine honour upon him, that all the congregation of the children of Israel may be obedient. And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who shall ask counsel for him after the judgment of Urim before the Lord: at his word shall they go out, and at his word they shall come in, both he, and all the children of Israel with him, even all the congregation.”

And Moses did as the Lord commanded him: and he took Joshua, and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation: And he laid his hands upon him, and gave him a charge, as the Lord commanded by the hand of Moses.

**Moses specifies the inheritances of Israel in the land of Canaan**

**(See Num 34:1-15)**

**Inheritances shall stay in each family’s tribe (Num 36:7)**

So shall not the inheritance of the children of Israel remove from tribe to tribe: for every one of the children of Israel shall keep himself to the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers.

**Israel commanded to go possess the land promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Deut 1:5-8)**

On this side Jordan, in the land of Moab, began Moses to declare this law, saying,

“The Lord our God spake unto us in Horeb, saying, Ye have dwelt long enough in this mount:

‘Turn you, and take your journey, and go to the mount of the Amorites, and unto all the places nigh thereunto, in the plain, in the hills, and in the vale, and in the south, and by the sea side, to the land of the Canaanites, and unto Lebanon, unto the great river, the river Euphrates. Behold, I have set the land before you: go in and possess the land which the Lord sware unto your fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to give unto them and to their seed after them.”

**The Lord promises to multiply Israel 1000 times (Deut 1:10-11)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses, saying]

The Lord your God hath multiplied you, and, behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude. (The Lord God of your fathers make you a thousand times so many more as ye are, and bless you, as he hath promised you!)”

**The Lord reminds Israel of the blessing’s they received during their 40 years of wandering (Deut 2:7)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“For the Lord thy God hath blessed thee in all the works of thy hand: he knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness: these forty years the Lord thy God hath been with thee; thou hast lacked nothing.”

**The Lord promises to scatter Israel all throughout the earth if they worship false Gods (Deut 4:23-28)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses, saying]

“Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the covenant of the Lord your God, which he made with you, and make you a graven image, or the likeness of any thing, which the Lord thy God hath forbidden thee. For the Lord thy God is a consuming fire, even a jealous God. When thou shalt beget children, and children’s children, and ye shall have remained long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image, or the likeness of any thing, and shall do evil in the sight of the Lord thy God, to provoke him to anger:

“I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto ye go over Jordan to possess it; ye shall not prolong your days upon it, but shall utterly be destroyed. And the Lord shall scatter you among the nations, and ye shall be left few in number among the heathen, whither the Lord shall lead you. And there ye shall serve gods, the work of men’s hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell.”

**Moses reminds the Israelites of the covenant the Lord made with them: the Ten Commandments**

**(See Deut 5:1-22)**

**The Lord promises to scatter Israel if they serve other gods (Deut 8:19-20)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses, saying]

“And it shall be, if thou do at all forget the Lord thy God, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you this day that ye shall surely perish. As the nations which the Lord destroyeth before your face, so shall ye perish; because ye would not be obedient unto the voice of the Lord your God.”

**Israel commanded to love the Lord (Deut 10:12)**

[And the Lord said unto people, saying]

“And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul.”

**Israel given a blessing of abundance or a cursing of being scattered, depending on their worship of him or false gods**

**(Deut 11:26-28; Deut 27:9-10, 14-15; Deut 30:19-20)**

**(See also Deut 28:1-68; Deut 29:1-29)**

[And the Lord said unto the people, saying]

“Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse; A blessing, if ye obey the commandments of the Lord your God, which I command you this day: And a curse, if ye will not obey the commandments of the Lord your God, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which ye have not known.”

And Moses and the priests the Levites spake unto all Israel, saying,

“Take heed, and hearken, O Israel; this day thou art become the people of the Lord thy God. Thou shalt therefore obey the voice of the Lord thy God, and do his commandments and his statutes, which I command thee this day. And the Levites shall speak, and say unto all the men of Israel with a loud voice,

‘Cursed be the man that maketh any graven or molten image, an abomination unto the Lord, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth it in a secret place. And all the people shall answer and say, Amen.’

“I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live: That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey his voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto him: for he is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.”

**Israel commanded to not listen to false prophets who worship false gods (Deut 13:1-4)**

[And the Lord said unto the people, saying]

“If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying,

‘Let us go after other gods, (which thou hast not known), and let us serve them;’

“Thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the Lord your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul.

Ye shall walk after the Lord your God, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and ye shall serve him, and cleave unto him.”

**The Lord tells Israel of the day when they will ask him for a King: the King is required to study the scriptures daily**

**(Deut 17:14-19)**

[An d the Lord said unto the people, saying]

“When thou art come unto the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee, and shalt possess it, and shalt dwell therein, and shalt say, I will set a king over me, like as all the nations that are about me; Thou shalt in any wise set him king over thee, whom the Lord thy God shall choose: one from among thy brethren shalt thou set king over thee: thou mayest not set a stranger over thee, which is not thy brother.

But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he should multiply horses: forasmuch as the Lord hath said unto you, Ye shall henceforth return no more that way.

“Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away: neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold. And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book out of that which is before the priests the Levites: And it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life: that he may learn to fear the Lord his God, to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to do them.”

**The worship of false gods condemned (Deut 18:9-14)**

[And the Lord spake unto the people, saying]

“When thou art come into the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not learn to do after the abominations of those nations. There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer.

“For all that do these things are an abomination unto the Lord: and because of these abominations the Lord thy God doth drive them out from before thee. Thou shalt be perfect with the Lord thy God. For these nations, which thou shalt possess, hearkened unto observers of times, and unto diviners: but as for thee, the Lord thy God hath not suffered thee so to do.”

**A prophecy about Jesus Christ being like Moses (Deut 18:15-19)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken; According to all that thou desiredst of the Lord thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not. And the Lord said unto me,

‘They have well spoken that which they have spoken. I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.”

**Israel promised to inherit the land promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Deut 30:20)**

[And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying]

“That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey his voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto him: for he is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.”

**Moses pronounces blessings upon Israel (Deut 33:26-29)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say,

‘Destroy them.’

“Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew. Happy art thou, O Israel: who is like unto thee, O people saved by the Lord, the shield of thy help, and who is the sword of thy excellency! and thine enemies shall be found liars unto thee; and thou shalt tread upon their high places.”

**Moses sees the Promised Land, stays behind at the command of the Lord (Deut 34:1-8, 10-12)**

And Moses went up from the plains of Moab unto the mountain of Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, that is over against Jericho. And the Lord shewed him all the land of Gilead, unto Dan, And all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim, and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah, unto the utmost sea, And the south, and the plain of the valley of Jericho, the city of palm trees, unto Zoar. And the Lord said unto him,

“This is the land which I sware unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, saying,

‘I will give it unto thy seed: I have caused thee to see it with thine eyes, but thou shalt not go over thither.”

So Moses the servant of the Lord died there in the land of Moab, according to the word of the Lord. And he buried him in a valley in the land of Moab, over against Beth-peor: but no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day. And Moses was an hundred and twenty years old when he died: his eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated. And the children of Israel wept for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days: so the days of weeping and mourning for Moses were ended. And there arose not a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom the Lord knew face to face, In all the signs and the wonders, which the Lord sent him to do in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh, and to all his servants, and to all his land, And in all that mighty hand, and in all the great terror which Moses shewed in the sight of all Israel.

***2.5***

***ISRAEL ATTACKS, INVADES, AND POSSESSES THE LANDS PROMISED THEM\****

\*ONLY SCRIPTURAL REFERENCES GIVEN

**The lands and peoples of Esau, Seit, Elath, Moab and others**

**Deut 2:8-37**

**The people of Bashan**

**Deut 3**

**Seven nations of Canaan**

**Deut 7:1-5**

**The children of the Anakims, living in the land of Jordan**

**Deut 9:1-3**

**Mt. Gerizim, Mt. Ebal, Gilgal, and plains of Moreh, in the land of Jordan**

**Deut 11:29-32**

**Canaanites and other groups**

**Josh 3:10**

**The Israelites conquer the city of Jericho**

**Josh 6:1-21**

**The people of Ai**

**Josh 8:1-29**

**Amorites**

**Josh 10:7-11**

**Remnants of the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Joseph continue to conquer the Canaanites**

**Judges 1:26**

******

***CHAPTER 3:***

***ISRAEL:***

***AFTER MOSES***

******

***3.1***

***JOSHUA***

***-APPROX 1400 B.C.-***

**Joshua leads the people into the Promised Land (Deut 34:9; Josh 1:1-2)**

And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom; for Moses had laid his hands upon him: and the children of Israel hearkened unto him, and did as the Lord commanded Moses. Now after the death of Moses the servant of the Lord it came to pass, that the Lord spake unto Joshua the son of Nun, Moses’ minister, saying,

“Moses my servant is dead; now therefore arise, go over this Jordan, thou, and all this people, unto the land which I do give to them, even to the children of Israel.”

**The Lord promises to be with Joshua as He was with Moses (Josh 1:8: Josh 3:7)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joshua, saying,]

“This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success… This day will I begin to magnify thee in the sight of all Israel, that they may know that, as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee.”

**The Israelites entered Jordan (Josh 3:17)**

And the priests that bare the ark of the covenant of the Lord stood firm on dry ground in the midst of Jordan, and all the Israelites passed over on dry ground, until all the people were passed clean over Jordan.

**The Lord removes the reproach from off of Israel (Josh 5:9)**

And the Lord said unto Joshua,

“This day have I rolled away the reproach of Egypt from off you. Wherefore the name of the place is called Gilgal unto this day.”

**The Captain of the Lord’s host speaks with Joshua (Josh 5:13-15)**

And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him,

“Art thou for us, or for our adversaries?”

And [the man] said,

“Nay; but as captain of the host of the Lord am I now come.”

And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him,

“What saith my lord unto his servant?”

And the captain of the Lord’s host said unto Joshua,

“Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon thou standest is holy.”

And Joshua did so.

“The Lord parted the water for Moses. For you…He will split rock!”

-Captain of the lord’s host, bible movie

**Joshua takes the city of Jericho through revelation from God**

**(See Josh 6)**

**Gibeonites enslaved by Israel (Josh 9:22-26)**

And Joshua called for them, and he spake unto them, saying,

“Wherefore have ye beguiled us, saying, We are very far from you; when ye dwell among us? Now therefore ye are cursed, and there shall none of you be freed from being bondmen, and hewers of wood and drawers of water for the house of my God.”

And they answered Joshua, and said, Because it was certainly told thy servants, how that the Lord thy God commanded his servant Moses to give you all the land, and to destroy all the inhabitants of the land from before you, therefore we were sore afraid of our lives because of you, and have done this thing. And now, behold, we are in thine hand: as it seemeth good and right unto thee to do unto us, do. And so did he unto them, and delivered them out of the hand of the children of Israel, that they slew them not.

**Joshua commands that the sun and the moon stand still during battle (Josh 10:12-14)**

Then spake Joshua to the Lord in the day when the Lord delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun,

“Stand thou still upon Gibeon; and thou, Moon, in the valley of Ajalon.”

And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies… So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day. And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the Lord hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the Lord fought for Israel.

**33 Kingdoms Defeated by Israel**

**(See Josh 12)**

**Lands divided according to Tribes**

**(See Josh 14-19, 21-22)**

**Israel to be cursed if they worship false Gods (Josh 23:15-16; Josh 24:20)**

[And Joshua spake unto the people, saying]

“Therefore it shall come to pass, that as all good things are come upon you, which the Lord your “God promised you; so shall the Lord bring upon you all evil things, until he have destroyed you from off this good land which the Lord your God hath given you.

“When ye have transgressed the covenant of the Lord your God, which he commanded you, and have gone and served other gods, and bowed yourselves to them; then shall the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and ye shall perish quickly from off the good land which he hath given unto you.”

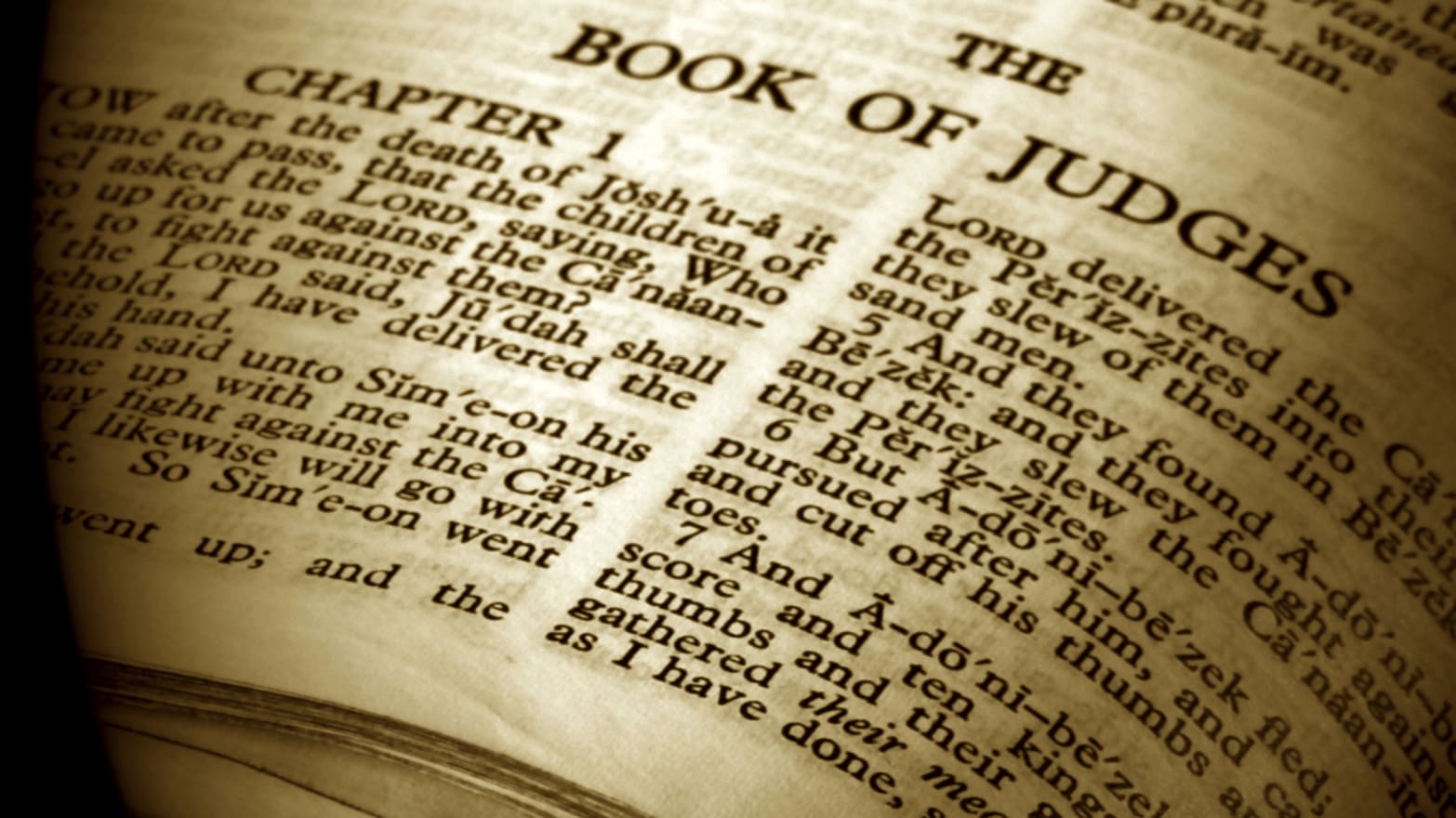
**Joshua declares that he and his house will serve the Lord (Josh 24:14-15)**

[And Joshua spake unto the people, saying]

“Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve ye the Lord. And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.”

***3.2***

***THE RULE OF JUDGES***



***-APPROX 1375 B.C.-***

**Joshua dies, no prophet called to succeed him (Josh 24:29-31)**

And it came to pass after these things, that Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of the Lord, died, being an hundred and ten years old. And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnath-serah, which is in mount Ephraim, on the north side of the hill of Gaash. And Israel served the Lord all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that overlived Joshua, and which had known all the works of the Lord, that he had done for Israel.

**Although no prophet is directing the people, the Lord reveals his will to the people to Tribal Leaders (Judges 1:1-2)**

Now after the death of Joshua it came to pass, that the children of Israel asked the Lord, saying,

“Who shall go up for us against the Canaanites first, to fight against them?”

And the Lord said,

“Judah shall go up: behold, I have delivered the land into his hand.”

**A new generation of Israelites are condemned by an angel for their worship of false Gods (Judges 2:1-4; Judges 2:11-15)**

And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said [unto the people],

“I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I sware unto your fathers; and I said,

‘I will never break my covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars.’

“But ye have not obeyed my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said,

‘I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you.”

And it came to pass, when the angel of the Lord spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.

And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord, and served Baalim: And they forsook the Lord God of their fathers, which brought them out of the land of Egypt, and followed other gods, of the gods of the people that were round about them, and bowed themselves unto them, and provoked the Lord to anger. And they forsook the Lord, and served Baal and Ashtaroth. And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers that spoiled them, and he sold them into the hands of their enemies round about, so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies. Whithersoever they went out, the hand of the Lord was against them for evil, as the Lord had said, and as the Lord had sworn unto them: and they were greatly distressed.

**Who was/is the heathen god, Baal, that Israel worshipped?**

Per the Bible dictionary, “The word Baal expresses the relationship between a lord and his slave. The usual symbol for Baal was a bull. Ashtoreth was the goddess generally worshiped along with Baal. Baal was sometimes combined with another name or word to indicate a connection with Baal, such as a place where he was worshiped or a person with attributes like those of Baal. Later, because Baal came to have very evil meanings, the word Bosheth replaced it in those combined names Bosheth Bosheth means ‘shame.”

Baal worship is simply satan worship in that it worships, and claims salvation from that which falsely offers, but cannot give, true salvation and exaltation. Because the word “Baal” indicated a relationship between a lord and his slave, it’s clear that the worshipper was in slavery to their proclaimed “Lord,” that is Baal. Much like how satan, in the War in Heaven, offered to save everyone in a form of communistic slavery, so, too, does Baal offer slavery to those who worship him, unlike God who offers a Father-son relationship between his children who worship Him in truth.

Two gross forms of Baal worship, was that of child sacrifice and sexual acts, also dedicated to Ashtoreth, in outdoor forest-like areas known as groves.

**The Lord calls judges, whom He reveals Himself to, to lead the people, but the people don’t listen (Judges 2:16-19)**

Nevertheless the Lord raised up judges, which delivered them out of the hand of those that spoiled them.

And yet they would not hearken unto their judges, but they went a whoring after other gods, and bowed themselves unto them: they turned quickly out of the way which their fathers walked in, obeying the commandments of the Lord; but they did not so. And when the Lord raised them up judges, then the Lord was with the judge, and delivered them out of the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge: for it repented the Lord because of their groanings by reason of them that oppressed them and vexed them. And it came to pass, when the judge was dead, that they returned, and corrupted themselves more than their fathers, in following other gods to serve them, and to bow down unto them; they ceased not from their own doings, nor from their stubborn way.

**Israel cursed to be scattered by the Lord for worshipping false gods (Judges 2:20-21)**

And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel; and he said,

“Because that this people hath transgressed my covenant which I commanded their fathers, and have not hearkened unto my voice; I also will not henceforth drive out any from before them of the nations which Joshua left when he died.”

**Israel spends almost 200 years in different stages of rejecting the Lord, then repenting, spending various years in slavery or being delivered by the hand of the Lord**

**(See Judges 3-Ruth 4)**

**Israel intermarries with the Canaanites, worships Baal and other false gods (Judges 3:5-7)**

And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, Hittites, and Amorites, and Perizzites, and Hivites, and Jebusites: And they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods.

And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord, and forgat the Lord their God, and served Baalim and the groves.

**The Lord gives the people Othniel, a military leader and judge to deliver the people following 8 years of enslavement and repentance, who reigns for 40 years (Judges 3:8-11)**

Therefore the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of Chushan-rishathaim king of Mesopotamia: and the children of Israel served Chushan-rishathaim eight years. And when the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, the Lord raised up a deliverer to the children of Israel, who delivered them, even Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb’s younger brother. And the Spirit of the Lord came upon him, and he judged Israel, and went out to war: and the Lord delivered Chushan-rishathaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand; and his hand prevailed against Chushan-rishathaim.

And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.

**Deborah, a prophetess, judges over, and prophesies before, Israel (Judges 4:4-6)**

And Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lapidoth, she judged Israel at that time. And she dwelt under the palm tree of Deborah between Ramah and Beth-el in mount Ephraim: and the children of Israel came up to her for judgment. And she sent and called Barak the son of Abinoam out of Kedesh-naphtali, and said unto him,

“Hath not the Lord God of Israel commanded, saying, Go and draw toward mount Tabor, and take with thee ten thousand men of the children of Naphtali and of the children of Zebulun?”

**The Lord sends an unnamed prophet to declare good tidings to Israel, following their repentance (Judges 6:7-10)**

And it came to pass, when the children of Israel cried unto the Lord because of the Midianites, that the Lord sent a prophet unto the children of Israel, which said unto them,

“Thus saith the Lord God of Israel, I brought you up from Egypt, and brought you forth out of the house of bondage; And I delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all that oppressed you, and drave them out from before you, and gave you their land; And I said unto you,

‘I am the Lord your God; fear not the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell.”

“But ye have not obeyed my voice.”

**The angel of the Lord calls Gideon to lead the army of Israel and to deliver them from bondage (Judges 6:11-14)**

And there came an angel of the Lord, and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah, that pertained unto Joash the Abi-ezrite: and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto him, and said unto him,

“The Lord is with thee, thou mighty man of valour.”

And Gideon said unto him,

“Oh my Lord, if the Lord be with us, why then is all this befallen us? And where be all his miracles which our fathers told us of, saying,

‘Did not the Lord bring us up from Egypt?’

“But now the Lord hath forsaken us, and delivered us into the hands of the Midianites.”

And the Lord looked upon him, and said,

“Go in this thy might, and thou shalt save Israel from the hand of the Midianites: have not I sent thee?”

**Gideon, after freeing the Israelites, refuses to be their king, says the Lord should rule over them (Judges 8:22-23)**

Then the men of Israel said unto Gideon,

“Rule thou over us, both thou, and thy son, and thy son’s son also: for thou hast delivered us from the hand of Midian.”

And Gideon said unto them,

“I will not rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you: the Lord shall rule over you.”

**Immediately following the death of Gideon, the Israelites return to the worship of false gods (Judges 8:33-34)**

And it came to pass, as soon as Gideon was dead, that the children of Israel turned again, and went a whoring after Baalim, and made Baal-berith their god. And the children of Israel remembered not the Lord their God, who had delivered them out of the hands of all their enemies on every side.

**Tola, followed by Jair, judge Israel for 45 years (Judges 10:1-3)**

And after Abimelech there arose to defend Israel Tola the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar; and he dwelt in Shamir in mount Ephraim. And he judged Israel twenty and three years, and died, and was buried in Shamir. And after him arose Jair, a Gileadite, and judged Israel twenty and two years.

**The Israelites defeated in a great battle because of their worship of false gods (Judges 10:6-16)**

And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the Lord, and served Baalim, and Ashtaroth, and the gods of Syria, and the gods of Zidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the children of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines, and forsook the Lord, and served not him. And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hands of the Philistines, and into the hands of the children of Ammon. And that year they vexed and oppressed the children of Israel: eighteen years, all the children of Israel that were on the other side Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead. Moreover the children of Ammon passed over Jordan to fight also against Judah, and against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim; so that Israel was sore distressed. And the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, saying,

“We have sinned against thee, both because we have forsaken our God, and also served Baalim.”

And the Lord said unto the children of Israel,

“Did not I deliver you from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines? The Zidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and ye cried to me, and I delivered you out of their hand. Yet ye have forsaken me, and served other gods: wherefore I will deliver you no more. Go and cry unto the gods which ye have chosen; let them deliver you in the time of your tribulation.”

And the children of Israel said unto the Lord,

“We have sinned: do thou unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto thee; deliver us only, we pray thee, this day.”

And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the Lord: and his soul was grieved for the misery of Israel.

**The Lord calls, and Israel sustains, Jephthah, as their military captain (Judges 11:1-11, 29-31)**

Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty man of valour, and he was the son of an harlot: and Gilead begat Jephthah.

And Gilead’s wife bare him sons; and his wife’s sons grew up, and they thrust out Jephthah, and said unto him,

“Thou shalt not inherit in our father’s house; for thou art the son of a strange woman.”

Then Jephthah fled from his brethren, and dwelt in the land of Tob: and there were gathered vain men to Jephthah, and went out with him. And it came to pass in process of time, that the children of Ammon made war against Israel. And it was so, that when the children of Ammon made war against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to fetch Jephthah out of the land of Tob: And they said unto Jephthah,

“Come, and be our captain, that we may fight with the children of Ammon.”

And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead,

“Did not ye hate me, and expel me out of my father’s house? And why are ye come unto me now when ye are in distress?”

And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah,

“Therefore we turn again to thee now, that thou mayest go with us, and fight against the children of Ammon, and be our head over all the inhabitants of Gilead.”

And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead,

“If ye bring me home again to fight against the children of Ammon, and the Lord deliver them before me, shall I be your head?”

And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah,

“The Lord be witness between us, if we do not so according to thy words.”

Then Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him head and captain over them: and Jephthah uttered all his words before the Lord in Mizpeh. Then the Spirit of the Lord came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead, and Manasseh, and passed over Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed over unto the children of Ammon.

And Jephthah vowed a vow unto the Lord, and said,

“If thou shalt without fail deliver the children of Ammon into mine hands, Then it shall be, that whatsoever cometh forth of the doors of my house to meet me, when I return in peace from the children of Ammon, shall surely be the Lord’s, and I will offer it up for a burnt offering.”

**The length of judgment by Jephthah and his successors mentioned (Judges 12:7-14)**

And Jephthah judged Israel six years. Then died Jephthah the Gileadite, and was buried in one of the cities of Gilead.

And after him Ibzan of Beth-lehem judged Israel. And he had thirty sons, and thirty daughters, whom he sent abroad, and took in thirty daughters from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel seven years.

Then died Ibzan, and was buried at Beth-lehem. And after him Elon, a Zebulonite, judged Israel; and he judged Israel ten years. And Elon the Zebulonite died, and was buried in Aijalon in the country of Zebulun. And after him Abdon the son of Hillel, a Pirathonite, judged Israel. And he had forty sons and thirty nephews, that rode on threescore and ten ass colts: and he judged Israel eight years.

**Israel, forsaking the lord again, is taken into bondage by the Philistines for 40 years (Judges 13:1)**

And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the Lord; and the Lord delivered them into the hand of the Philistines forty years.

***-APPROX 1100 B.C.-***

**The angel of the Lord gives the people Samson, who is exceedingly strong, to deliver Israel from bondage**

**(Judges 13:2-5, 24-25)**

And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah; and his wife was barren, and bare not. And the angel of the Lord appeared unto the woman, and said unto her,

“Behold now, thou art barren, and bearest not: but thou shalt conceive, and bear a son. Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink not wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean thing: For, lo, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and no razor shall come on his head: for the child shall be a Nazarite unto God from the womb: and he shall begin to deliver Israel out of the hand of the Philistines.”

And the woman bare a son, and called his name Samson: and the child grew, and the Lord blessed him. And the Spirit of the Lord began to move him at times in the camp of Dan between Zorah and Eshtaol.

**Samson’s strength is revealed as he fights, and kills, a lion with his bare hands (Judges 14:5-6)**

Then went Samson down, and his father and his mother, to Timnath, and came to the vineyards of Timnath: and, behold, a young lion roared against him. And the Spirit of the Lord came mightily upon him, and he rent him as he would have rent a kid, and he had nothing in his hand: but he told not his father or his mother what he had done.

**Samson’s life is one of continuous struggle as he keeps breaking the Law of Chastity, and ultimately loses his strength, and is imprisoned as a result**

**(See Judges 14-16)**

**Samson, repenting of his sins, has his strength restored, and kills 3000 Philistines, including himself (Judges 16:27-30)**

Now the house was full of men and women; and all the lords of the Philistines were there; and there were upon the roof about three thousand men and women, that beheld while Samson made sport. And Samson called unto the Lord, and said,

“O Lord God, remember me, I pray thee, and strengthen me, I pray thee, only this once, O God, that I may be at once avenged of the Philistines for my two eyes.”

And Samson took hold of the two middle pillars upon which the house stood, and on which it was borne up, of the one with his right hand, and of the other with his left.

**Massive apostasy and warring take place among the Tribes of Israel**

**(See Judges 17-21)**

**Ruth follows Naomi to Bethlehem (Ruth 1:22)**

So Naomi returned, and Ruth the Moabitess, her daughter in law, with her, which returned out of the country of Moab: and they came to Beth-lehem in the beginning of barley harvest.

**Boaz marries Ruth, gets her pregnant, and gives birth to Obed, grandfather to King David (Ruth 4:13-22)**

So Boaz took Ruth, and she was his wife: and when he went in unto her, the Lord gave her conception, and she bare a son. And the women said unto Naomi,

“Blessed be the Lord, which hath not left thee this day without a kinsman, that his name may be famous in Israel. And he shall be unto thee a restorer of thy life, and a nourisher of thine old age: for thy daughter in law, which loveth thee, which is better to thee than seven sons, hath born him.”

And Naomi took the child, and laid it in her bosom, and became nurse unto it. And the women her neighbours gave it a name, saying,

“There is a son born to Naomi.”

And they called his name Obed: he is the father of Jesse, the father of David. Now these are the generations of Pharez: Pharez begat Hezron, And Hezron begat Ram, and Ram begat Amminadab, And Amminadab begat Nahshon, and Nahshon begat Salmon, And Salmon begat Boaz, and Boaz begat Obed, And Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David.

**The Prophet Samuel is born to Hannah (1 Sam 1:19-22)**

And they rose up in the morning early, and worshipped before the Lord, and returned, and came to their house to Ramah: and Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and the Lord remembered her. Wherefore it came to pass, when the time was come about after Hannah had conceived, that she bare a son, and called his name Samuel, saying,

“Because I have asked him of the Lord.”

And the man Elkanah, and all his house, went up to offer unto the Lord the yearly sacrifice, and his vow. But Hannah went not up; for she said unto her husband, I will not go up until the child be weaned, and then I will bring him, that he may appear before the Lord, and there abide forever.

**The Lord, through an unnamed prophet, rejects the High Priest, Eli, because of his wickedness and the wickedness of his sons**

**(1 Sam 2:22-25, 27-36)**

Now Eli was very old, and heard all that his sons did unto all Israel; and how they lay with the women that assembled at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. And [Eli] said unto [his sons],

“Why do ye such things? For I hear of your evil dealings by all this people. Nay, my sons; for it is no good report that I hear: ye make the Lord’s people to transgress. If one man sin against another, the judge shall judge him: but if a man sin against the Lord, who shall entreat for him?”

Notwithstanding they hearkened not unto the voice of their father, because the Lord would slay them.

And there came a man of God unto Eli, and said unto him,

“Thus saith the Lord,

‘Did I plainly appear unto the house of thy father, when they were in Egypt in Pharaoh’s house? And did I choose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to offer upon mine altar, to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me? and did I give unto the house of thy father all the offerings made by fire of the children of Israel? Wherefore kick ye at my sacrifice and at mine offering, which I have commanded in my habitation; and honourest thy sons above me, to make yourselves fat with the chiefest of all the offerings of Israel my people?’

“Wherefore the Lord God of Israel saith,

‘I said indeed that thy house, and the house of thy father, should walk before me forever:

“but now the Lord saith,

‘Be it far from me; for them that honour me I will honour, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed. Behold, the days come, that I will cut off thine arm, and the arm of thy father’s house, that there shall not be an old man in thine house. And thou shalt see an enemy in my habitation, in all the wealth which God shall give Israel: and there shall not be an old man in thine house for ever. And the man of thine, whom I shall not cut off from mine altar, shall be to consume thine eyes, and to grieve thine heart: and all the increase of thine house shall die in the flower of their age.

‘And this shall be a sign unto thee, that shall come upon thy two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas; in one day they shall die both of them. And I will raise me up a faithful priest, that shall do according to that which is in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed forever. And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left in thine house shall come and crouch to him for a piece of silver and a morsel of bread, and shall say, Put me, I pray thee, into one of the priests’ offices, that I may eat a piece of bread.”

**The Lord appears to the boy Samuel, in the Tabernacle, and tells him of the destructions awaiting Eli (1 Sam 2:26; 3:1-18)**

And the child Samuel grew on, and was in favour both with the Lord, and also with men. And the child Samuel ministered unto the Lord before Eli. And the word of the Lord was precious in those days; [for it was said in those days that] there was no open vision.

And it came to pass at that time, when Eli was laid down in his place, and his eyes began to wax dim, that he could not see; And ere the lamp of God went out in the temple of the Lord, where the ark of God was, and Samuel was laid down to sleep; That the Lord called Samuel: and [Samuel] answered,

“Here am I.”

And he ran unto Eli, and said,

“Here am I; for thou calledst me.”

And [Eli] said,

“I called not; lie down again. And he went and lay down.”

And the Lord called yet again,

“Samuel.”

And Samuel arose and went to Eli, and said,

“Here am I; for thou didst call me.”

And [Eli] answered,

“I called not, my son; lie down again.”

Now Samuel did not yet know the Lord, neither was the word of the Lord yet revealed unto him. And the Lord called Samuel again the third time. And he arose and went to Eli, and said,

“Here am I; for thou didst call me.”

And Eli perceived that the Lord had called the child. Therefore Eli said unto Samuel,

“Go, lie down: and it shall be, if he call thee, that thou shalt say,

‘Speak, Lord; for thy servant heareth.”

So Samuel went and lay down in his place. And the Lord came, and stood, and called as at other times,

“Samuel, Samuel.”

Then Samuel answered,

“Speak; for thy servant heareth.”

And the Lord said to Samuel,

“Behold, I will do a thing in Israel, at which both the ears of every one that heareth it shall tingle. In that day I will perform against Eli all things which I have spoken concerning his house: when I begin, I will also make an end. For I have told him that I will judge his house for ever for the iniquity which he knoweth; because his sons made themselves vile, and he restrained them not. And therefore I have sworn unto the house of Eli, that the iniquity of Eli’s house shall not be purged with sacrifice nor offering forever.”

And Samuel lay until the morning, and opened the doors of the house of the Lord. And Samuel feared to shew Eli the vision. Then Eli called Samuel, and said,

“Samuel, my son.”

And [Samuel] answered,

“Here am I.”

And [Eli] said,

“What is the thing that the Lord hath said unto thee? I pray thee hide it not from me: God do so to thee, and more also, if thou hide anything from me of all the things that he said unto thee.”

And Samuel told him every whit, and hid nothing from him. And [Eli] said,

“It is the Lord: let him do what seemeth him good.”

**The people acknowledge Samuel as a prophet (1 Sam 3:19-21)**

And Samuel grew, and the Lord was with him, and did let none of his words fall to the ground. And all Israel from Dan even to Beer-sheba knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet of the Lord. And the Lord appeared again in Shiloh: for the Lord revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by the word of the Lord.

**In a massive battle, the Israelites are defeated, Eli’s sons slain, Eli falls to his death, and the Ark of the Covenant taken**

**(See 1 Sam 4:1-18)**

**The Philistines return the Ark of the Covenant after being severely plagued as a result of taking it**

**(See 1 Sam 5, 6:1-18)**

**Samuel exhorts Israel to forsake the worship of Ashtaroth and Baalim and to serve the Lord (1 Sam 7:3-8)**

And Samuel spake unto all the house of Israel, saying,

“If ye do return unto the Lord with all your hearts, then put away the strange gods and Ashtaroth from among you, and prepare your hearts unto the Lord, and serve him only: and he will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines.”

Then the children of Israel did put away Baalim and Ashtaroth, and served the Lord only. And Samuel said,

“Gather all Israel to Mizpeh, and I will pray for you unto the Lord.”

And they gathered together to Mizpeh, and drew water, and poured it out before the Lord, and fasted on that day, and said there,

“We have sinned against the Lord.”

And Samuel judged the children of Israel in Mizpeh. And when the Philistines heard that the children of Israel were gathered together to Mizpeh, the lords of the Philistines went up against Israel. And when the children of Israel heard it, they were afraid of the Philistines. And the children of Israel said to Samuel,

“Cease not to cry unto the Lord our God for us, that he will save us out of the hand of the Philistines.”

**Israel ask Samuel to choose a king for them; Samuel is displeased, seeks counsel from the Lord (1 Sam 8:4-22)**

Then all the elders of Israel gathered themselves together, and came to Samuel unto Ramah, and said unto him,

“Behold, thou art old, and thy sons walk not in thy ways: now make us a king to judge us like all the nations.”

But the thing displeased Samuel…And Samuel prayed unto the Lord. And the Lord said unto Samuel,

“Hearken unto the voice of the people in all that they say unto thee: for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me, that I should not reign over them. According to all the works which they have done since the day that I brought them up out of Egypt even unto this day, wherewith they have forsaken me, and served other gods, so do they also unto thee. Now therefore hearken unto their voice: howbeit yet protest solemnly unto them, and shew them the manner of the king that shall reign over them.”

And Samuel told all the words of the Lord unto the people that asked of him a king. And he said,

“This will be the manner of the king that shall reign over you: He will take your sons, and appoint them for himself, for his chariots, and to be his horsemen; and some shall run before his chariots. And he will appoint him captains over thousands, and captains over fifties; and will set them to ear his ground, and to reap his harvest, and to make his instruments of war, and instruments of his chariots. And he will take your daughters to be confectionaries, and to be cooks, and to be bakers.

And he will take your fields, and your vineyards, and your oliveyards, even the best of them, and give them to his servants. And he will take the tenth of your seed, and of your vineyards, and give to his officers, and to his servants. And he will take your menservants, and your maidservants, and your goodliest young men, and your asses, and put them to his work. He will take the tenth of your sheep: and ye shall be his servants. And ye shall cry out in that day because of your king which ye shall have chosen you; and the Lord will not hear you in that day.”

Nevertheless the people refused to obey the voice of Samuel; and they said,

“Nay; but we will have a king over us; That we also may be like all the nations; and that our king may judge us, and go out before us, and fight our battles.”

And Samuel heard all the words of the people, and he rehearsed them in the ears of the Lord. And the Lord said to Samuel,

“Hearken unto their voice, and make them a king.”

And Samuel said unto the men of Israel,

“Go ye every man unto his city.”

***3.3***

***THE REIGN OF KINGS:***

***KING SAUL***

***-APPROX 1050-1000 B.C.-***

**Saul, of the Tribe of Benjamin, called to be King (1 Sam 9:1-2, 15-17)**

Now there was a man of Benjamin, whose name was Kish, the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Bechorath, the son of Aphiah, a Benjamite, a mighty man of power. And he had a son, whose name was Saul, a choice young man, and a goodly: and there was not among the children of Israel a goodlier person than he: from his shoulders and upward he was higher than any of the people. Now the Lord had told Samuel in his ear a day before Saul came, saying,

“To morrow about this time I will send thee a man out of the land of Benjamin, and thou shalt anoint him to be captain over my people Israel, that he may save my people out of the hand of the Philistines: for I have looked upon my people, because their cry is come unto me.”

And when Samuel saw Saul, the Lord said unto him,

“Behold the man whom I spake to thee of! This same shall reign over my people.”

**Saul anointed as King of Israel (1 Sam 10:1, 24)**

Then Samuel took a vial of oil, and poured it upon his head, and kissed him, and said,

“Is it not because the Lord hath anointed thee to be captain over his inheritance?”

And Samuel said to all the people,

“See ye him whom the Lord hath chosen, that there is none like him among all the people?”

And all the people shouted, and said,

“God save the king.”

**Saul, after just 2 years of being king, panicking in a time of war, offers sacrifice without authority, and is rejected by the Lord**

**(1 Sam 13:1, 6-14)**

Saul reigned one year; and when he had reigned two years over Israel, the men of Israel saw that they were in a strait, (for the people were distressed,) then the people did hide themselves in caves, and in thickets, and in rocks, and in high places, and in pits. And some of the Hebrews went over Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead.

As for Saul, he was yet in Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling. And he tarried seven days, according to the set time that Samuel had appointed: but Samuel came not to Gilgal; and the people were scattered from him. And Saul said,

“Bring hither a burnt offering to me, and peace offerings.”

And he offered the burnt offering. And it came to pass, that as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, behold, Samuel came; and Saul went out to meet him, that he might salute him. And Samuel said,

“What hast thou done?”

And Saul said,

“Because I saw that the people were scattered from me, and that thou camest not within the days appointed, and that the Philistines gathered themselves together at Michmash; Therefore said I, The Philistines will come down now upon me to Gilgal, and I have not made supplication unto the Lord: I forced myself therefore, and offered a burnt offering.”

And Samuel said to Saul,

“Thou hast done foolishly: thou hast not kept the commandment of the Lord thy God, which he commanded thee: for now would the Lord have established thy kingdom upon Israel for ever. But now thy kingdom shall not continue: the Lord hath sought him a man after his own heart, and the Lord hath commanded him to be captain over his people, because thou hast not kept that which the Lord commanded thee.”

**The Lord reveals to Samuel that Saul has been completely rejected as king, as a result of his disobedience (1 Sam 15:10-11)**

Then came the word of the Lord unto Samuel, saying,

“It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king: for he is turned back from following me, and hath not performed my commandments.”

And it grieved Samuel; and he cried unto the Lord all night.

**Samuel reveals to Saul that the Lord has rejected him as king (1 Sam 15:22-23)**

And Samuel said [unto Saul, who had disobeyed the Lord],

“Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the Lord, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

**The Lord sends Samuel to Bethlehem, to the house of Jesse, to anoint the new king (1 Sam 16:1, 11-13)**

And the Lord said unto Samuel,

“How long wilt thou mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from reigning over Israel? Fill thine horn with oil, and go, I will send thee to Jesse the Beth-lehemite: for I have provided me a king among his sons.”

And Samuel [went in the house of Jesse and ] said unto Jesse,

“Are here all thy children?”

And [Jesse] said,

“There remaineth yet the youngest, and, behold, he keepeth the sheep.”

And Samuel said unto Jesse,

“Send and fetch him: for we will not sit down till he come hither.”

And [Jesse] sent [a servant], and brought him in. Now he was ruddy, and withal of a beautiful countenance, and goodly to look to. And the Lord said,

“Arise, anoint him: for this is he.”

Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of the Lord came upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.

**Saul sends for David, to play his harp before him, to calm him down (1 Sam 16:14-23, JST)**

But the Spirit of the Lord departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from the Lord troubled him. And Saul’s servants said unto him,

“Behold now, an evil spirit from God troubleth thee. Let our lord now command thy servants, which are before thee, to seek out a man, who is a cunning player on an harp: and it shall come to pass, when the evil spirit from God is upon thee, that he shall play with his hand, and thou shalt be well.”

And Saul said unto his servants,

“Provide me now a man that can play well, and bring him to me.”

Then answered one of the servants, and said,

“Behold, I have seen a son of Jesse the Beth-lehemite, that is cunning in playing, and a mighty valiant man, and a man of war, and prudent in matters, and a comely person, and the Lord is with him.”

Wherefore Saul sent messengers unto Jesse, and said,

“Send me David thy son, which is with the sheep.”

And Jesse took an ass laden with bread, and a bottle of wine, and a kid, and sent them by David his son unto Saul.

And David came to Saul, and stood before him: and he loved him greatly; and he became his armour bearer. And Saul sent to Jesse, saying,

“Let David, I pray thee, stand before me; for he hath found favour in my sight.”

And it came to pass, when the evil spirit which is not of God was upon Saul, that David took an harp, and played with his hand: so Saul was refreshed, and was well, and the evil spirit departed from him.

**David, while among the camp of Israel, defeats the Philistine giant, Goliath (1 Sam 17:1-4, 20-25, 32-51)**

Now the Philistines gathered together their armies to battle, and were gathered together at Shochoh, which

belongeth to Judah, and pitched between Shochoh and Azekah, in Ephes-dammim. And Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together, and pitched by the valley of Elah, and set the battle in array against the Philistines. And the Philistines stood on a mountain on the one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side: and there was a valley between them. And there went out a champion out of the camp of the Philistines, named Goliath, of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span.

And David rose up early in the morning, and left the sheep with a keeper, and took, and went, as Jesse had commanded him; and he came to the trench, as the host was going forth to the fight, and shouted for the battle. For Israel and the Philistines had put the battle in array, army against army. And David left his carriage in the hand of the keeper of the carriage, and ran into the army, and came and saluted his brethren. And as he talked with them, behold, there came up the champion, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, out of the armies of the Philistines, and spake according to the same words: and David heard them.

And all the men of Israel, when they saw the man, fled from him, and were sore afraid. And the men of Israel said,

“Have ye seen this man that is come up? Surely to defy Israel is he come up: and it shall be, that the man who killeth him, the king will enrich him with great riches, and will give him his daughter, and make his father’s house free in Israel.”

And David said to Saul,

“Let no man’s heart fail because of him; thy servant will go and fight with this Philistine.”

And Saul said to David,

“Thou art not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him: for thou art but a youth, and he a man of war from his youth.”

And David said unto Saul,

“Thy servant kept his father’s sheep, and there came a lion, and a bear, and took a lamb out of the flock:

And I went out after him, and smote him, and delivered it out of his mouth: and when he arose against me, I caught him by his beard, and smote him, and slew him. Thy servant slew both the lion and the bear: and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he hath defied the armies of the living God… The Lord that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, he will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine.”

And Saul said unto David,

“Go, and the Lord be with thee.”

And Saul armed David with his armour, and he put an helmet of brass upon his head; also he armed him with a coat of mail. And David girded his sword upon his armour, and he assayed to go; for he had not proved it. And David said unto Saul,

“I cannot go with these; for I have not proved them.”

And David put them off him. And he took his staff in his hand, and chose him five smooth stones out of the brook, and put them in a shepherd’s bag which he had, even in a scrip; and his sling was in his hand: and he drew near to the Philistine.

And the Philistine came on and drew near unto David; and the man that bare the shield went before him. And when the Philistine looked about, and saw David, he disdained him: for he was but a youth, and ruddy, and of a fair countenance. And the Philistine said unto David,

“Am I a dog that thou comest to me with staves?”

And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. And the Philistine said to David,

“Come to me, and I will give thy flesh unto the fowls of the air, and to the beasts of the field.”

Then said David to the Philistine,

“Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to thee in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied. This day will the Lord deliver thee into mine hand; and I will smite thee, and take thine head from thee; and I will give the carcases of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel. And all this assembly shall know that the Lord saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is the Lord’s, and he will give you into our hands.”

And it came to pass, when the Philistine arose, and came and drew nigh to meet David, that David hasted, and ran toward the army to meet the Philistine. And David put his hand in his bag, and took thence a stone, and slang it, and smote the Philistine in his forehead, that the stone sunk into his forehead; and he fell upon his face to the earth. So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and with a stone, and smote the Philistine, and slew him; but there was no sword in the hand of David. Therefore David ran, and stood upon the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled.

***3.4***

***THE REIGN OF KINGS:***

***SAUL vs DAVID***

**Saul becomes jealous of David’s military victories and popularity, seeks to kill him (1 Sam 18:28-29; 1 Sam 19:1)**

And Saul saw and knew that the Lord was with David, and that Michal Saul’s daughter loved him. And Saul was yet the more afraid of David; and Saul became David’s enemy continually. And Saul spake to Jonathan his son, and to all his servants, that they should kill David.

**David flees from the presence of Saul (1 Sam 19:2)**

But Jonathan Saul’s son delighted much in David: and Jonathan told David, saying,

“Saul my father seeketh to kill thee: now therefore, I pray thee, take heed to thyself until the morning, and abide in a secret place, and hide thyself.”

**The Prophet Gad, and other priests, help David, who is in hiding (1 Sam 22:1-5)**

David therefore departed thence, and escaped to the cave Adullam: and when his brethren and all his father’s house heard it, they went down thither to him. And every one that was in distress, and every one that was in debt, and every one that was discontented, gathered themselves unto him; and he became a captain over them: and there were with him about four hundred men. And David went thence to Mizpeh of Moab: and he said unto the king of Moab,

“Let my father and my mother, I pray thee, come forth, and be with you, till I know what God will do for me.”

And he brought them before the king of Moab: and they dwelt with him all the while that David was in the hold. And the prophet Gad said unto David,

“Abide not in the hold; depart, and get thee into the land of Judah.”

Then David departed, and came into the forest of Hareth.

**Saul murders the priests of the Lord who helped David (1 Sam 22:17-19)**

And the king said unto the footmen that stood about him,

“Turn, and slay the priests of the Lord; because their hand also is with David, and because they knew when he fled, and did not shew it to me. But the servants of the king would not put forth their hand to fall upon the priests of the Lord.”

And the king said to Doeg,

“Turn thou, and fall upon the priests.”

And Doeg the Edomite turned, and he fell upon the priests, and slew on that day fourscore and five persons that did wear a linen ephod. And Nob, the city of the priests, smote he with the edge of the sword, both men and women, children and sucklings, and oxen, and asses, and sheep, with the edge of the sword.

**David twice has the opportunity to kill Saul, but spares his life**

**(See 1 Sam 24-26)**

**Saul, completely rejected of the Lord, seeks revelation through a witch, concerning the coming battle, told he will die**

**(1 Sam 28:3-20)**

Now Samuel was dead, and all Israel had lamented him, and buried him in Ramah, even in his own city. And Saul had put away those that had familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land. And the Philistines gathered themselves together, and came and pitched in Shunem: and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they pitched in Gilboa. And when Saul saw the host of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart greatly trembled.

And when Saul inquired of the Lord, the Lord answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.

Then said Saul unto his servants,

“Seek me a woman that hath a familiar spirit, that I may go to her, and inquire of her.”

And his servants said to him,

“Behold, there is a woman that hath a familiar spirit at En-dor.”

And Saul disguised himself, and put on other raiment, and he went, and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night: and he said,

“I pray thee, divine unto me by the familiar spirit, and bring me him up, whom I shall name unto thee.”

And the woman said unto him,

“Behold, thou knowest what Saul hath done, how he hath cut off those that have familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land: wherefore then layest thou a snare for my life, to cause me to die?”

And Saul sware to her by the Lord, saying,

“As the Lord liveth, there shall no punishment happen to thee for this thing.”

Then said the woman,

“Whom shall I bring up unto thee?”

And [Saul] said,

“Bring me up Samuel.”

And when the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice: and the woman spake to Saul, saying,

“Why hast thou deceived me? For thou art Saul.”

And the king said unto her,

“Be not afraid: for what sawest thou?”

And the woman said unto Saul,

“I saw gods ascending out of the earth.”

And he said unto her,

“What form is he of?”

And she said,

“An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a mantle.”

And Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he stooped with his face to the ground, and bowed himself. And [the spirit in the form of] Samuel said to Saul,

“Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up?”

And Saul answered,

“I am sore distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and God is departed from me, and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams: therefore I have called thee, that thou mayest make known unto me what I shall do.”

Then said [the spirit that was in the form of] Samuel,

“Wherefore then dost thou ask of me, seeing the Lord is departed from thee, and is become thine enemy?

And the Lord hath done to him, as he spake by me: for the Lord hath rent the kingdom out of thine hand, and given it to thy neighbour, even to David: Because thou obeyedst not the voice of the Lord, nor executedst his fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore hath the Lord done this thing unto thee this day.

Moreover the Lord will also deliver Israel with thee into the hand of the Philistines: and tomorrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me: the Lord also shall deliver the host of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.”

Then Saul fell straightway all along on the earth, and was sore afraid, because of the words of Samuel: and there was no strength in him; for he had eaten no bread all the day, nor all the night.

***NOT the Prophet, Samuel!***

It almost goes without saying that a witch, one who dabbles in the dark arts and the worship of satan, would have no authority to summon/call forth anyone from the Celestial Realms, let alone a prophet of God. Hence, the personage who appeared was in all reality an evil spirit in the form of the Prophet Samuel. However, much like a spirit communicating through a Ouija board or any other psychic medium, this spirit did reveal truth: that Saul had been rejected of God and would be killed the next day. And, true to satanic form, his message was not one of hope, with the possibility of forgiveness, but one of fear and certain death.

**Saul, seeing his sons killed in battle and the Israelites losing, commits suicide (1 Sam 31:1-4)**

Now the Philistines fought against Israel: and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down slain in mount Gilboa. And the Philistines followed hard upon Saul and upon his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchi-shua, Saul’s sons. And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him; and he was sore wounded of the archers. Then said Saul unto his armourbearer,

“Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and thrust me through, and abuse me.”

But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. Therefore Saul took a sword, and fell upon it.

***3.5***

***THE REIGN OF KINGS:***

***KING DAVID***

***-APPROX 1000-970 B.C.-***

**David is anointed King over the people of Judah, Ish-bosheth becomes King of Israel (2 Sam 2:4, 8-9)**

And the men of Judah came, and there they anointed David king over the house of Judah. And they told David, saying,

“That the men of Jabesh-gilead were they that buried Saul.”

But Abner the son of Ner, captain of Saul’s host, took Ish-bosheth the son of Saul, and brought him over to Mahanaim; And made him king over Gilead, and over the Ashurites, and over Jezreel, and over Ephraim, and over Benjamin, and over all Israel.

**David gets stronger as the descendants of Saul get weaker (2 Sam 3:1)**

Now there was long war between the house of Saul and the house of David: but David waxed stronger and stronger, and the house of Saul waxed weaker and weaker.

**Abner, making peace with David, is slain by Joab (2 Sam 3:27-28)**

And when Abner was returned to Hebron, Joab took him aside in the gate to speak with him quietly, and smote him there under the fifth rib, that he died, for the blood of Asahel his brother. And afterward when David heard it, he said,

“I and my kingdom are guiltless before the Lord for ever from the blood of Abner the son of Ner.”

**Ish-bosheth slain by two of David’s Captains, in turn killed for doing so (2 Sam 4:5-12)**

And the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, Rechab and Baanah, went, and came about the heat of the day to the house of Ish-bosheth, who lay on a bed at noon. And they came thither into the midst of the house, as though they would have fetched wheat; and they smote him under the fifth rib: and Rechab and Baanah his brother escaped. For when they came into the house, he lay on his bed in his bedchamber, and they smote him, and slew him, and beheaded him, and took his head, and gat them away through the plain all night. And they brought the head of Ish-bosheth unto David to Hebron, and said to the king,

“Behold the head of Ish-bosheth the son of Saul thine enemy, which sought thy life; and the Lord hath avenged my lord the king this day of Saul, and of his seed.”

And David answered Rechab and Baanah his brother, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, and said unto them,

“As the Lord liveth, who hath redeemed my soul out of all adversity, When one told me, saying,

‘Behold, Saul is dead, thinking to have brought good tidings, I took hold of him, and slew him in Ziklag, who thought that I would have given him a reward for his tidings.’

“How much more, when wicked men have slain a righteous person in his own house upon his bed? Shall I not therefore now require his blood of your hand, and take you away from the earth?”

And David commanded his young men, and they slew them, and cut off their hands and their feet, and hanged them up over the pool in Hebron. But they took the head of Ish-bosheth, and buried it in the sepulchre of Abner in Hebron.

**David anointed as king before all of Israel, reigns for 40 years (2 Sam 5:1-4)**

Then came all the tribes of Israel to David unto Hebron, and spake, saying,

“Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh. Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the Lord said to thee,

‘Thou shalt feed my people Israel, and thou shalt be a captain over Israel.”

So all the elders of Israel came to the king to Hebron; and king David made a league with them in Hebron before the Lord: and they anointed David king over Israel. David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years.

**David obtains and worships before the Ark of the Covenant (2 Sam 6:1-5)**

Again, David gathered together all the chosen men of Israel, thirty thousand. And David arose, and went with all the people that were with him from Baale of Judah, to bring up from thence the ark of God, whose name is called by the name of the Lord of hosts that dwelleth between the cherubims. And they set the ark of God upon a new cart, and brought it out of the house of Abinadab that was in Gibeah: and Uzzah and Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, drave the new cart. And they brought it out of the house of Abinadab which was at Gibeah, accompanying the ark of God: and Ahio went before the ark. And David and all the house of Israel played before the Lord on all manner of instruments made of fir wood, even on harps, and on psalteries, and on timbrels, and on cornets, and on cymbals.

**David wants to build a Temple for the Lord, is told one of his sons will built it (2 Sam 7:1-13)**

And it came to pass, when the king sat in his house, and the Lord had given him rest round about from all his enemies;

That the king said unto Nathan the prophet,

“See now, I dwell in an house of cedar, but the ark of God dwelleth within curtains.”

And Nathan said to the king,

“Go, do all that is in thine heart; for the Lord is with thee.”

And it came to pass that night, that the word of the Lord came unto Nathan, saying,

“Go and tell my servant David, Thus saith the Lord,

‘Shalt thou build me an house for me to dwell in? Whereas I have not dwelt in any house since the time that I brought up the children of Israel out of Egypt, even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle. In all the places wherein I have walked with all the children of Israel spake I a word with any of the tribes of Israel, whom I commanded to feed my people Israel, saying,

‘Why build ye not me an house of cedar?’

‘Now therefore so shalt thou say unto my servant David,

‘Thus saith the Lord of hosts, I took thee from the sheepcote, from following the sheep, to be ruler over my people, over Israel: And I was with thee whithersoever thou wentest, and have cut off all thine enemies out of thy sight, and have made thee a great name, like unto the name of the great men that are in the earth. Moreover I will appoint a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in a place of their own, and move no more; neither shall the children of wickedness afflict them anymore, as beforetime,

‘And as since the time that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel, and have caused thee to rest from all thine enemies. Also the Lord telleth thee that he will make thee an house. And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom forever.”

**David commits adultery with Bathsheba, gets her pregnant, kills her husband; Is punished by the Lord**

**(See 2 Sam 11:2-17; Sam 12:1-23)**

**Bathsheba gives birth to Solomon (2 Sam 12:24)**

And David comforted Bath-sheba his wife, and went in unto her, and lay with her: and she bare a son, and he called his name Solomon: and the Lord loved him

**The Kingdom of Israel plagued for years by rape, incest, jealousy, murder, treason, & civil war: all taking place among David’s family**

**(See 2 Sam 13-21)**

**David passes away, having reigned for 40 years (1 Kings 2:1-3, 10-11)**

Now the days of David drew nigh that he should die; and he charged Solomon his son, saying,

“I go the way of all the earth: be thou strong therefore, and shew thyself a man; And keep the charge of the Lord thy God, to walk in his ways, to keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and his testimonies, as it is written in the law of Moses, that thou mayest prosper in all that thou doest, and whithersoever thou turnest thyself.”

So David slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David. And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years: seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem.

**The house of david:**

**-Rape, incest, jealousy, treason, & civil war**

***God Is A God of Forgiveness!***

David had committed the two worse sins any man, let alone one anointed King by God, could commit: adultery and murder. And this came *after* he expressed his desire to build the first ever permanent standing temple, for God. God punished David by killing the first son between him and Bathsheba. However, and this is the interesting part, he not only forgave David, but allowed David to not only stay with, and keep Bathsheba, despite murdering her husband, but he blessed David with another son through her, Solomon. Furthermore, the Lord chose Solomon to not only succeed David as king, but that he would ultimately build the Temple. This seems terribly backwards. The son of such great wickedness would rise to such heights of such righteousness. One would think that God would’ve taken Bathsheba from David, or at the least commanded that one of his sons through a different wife of David would actually build the temple. Why Solomon? Why the son, who was an end result creation, coming out of adultery and murder? Because even adultery and murder are not out of the realm of God’s forgiveness. God could’ve chosen any of David’s sons to build the temple, but as a tender mercy to David, chose Solomon. Maybe for David, if anything, it was the best that David could do to repent. By having Solomon build the temple of the Lord, David was doing his best to bring the greatest good out of the greatest wrong. That being said, despite God’s tender mercies upon David and his never ending repentance, modern revelation tells us that David’s *exaltation* was ultimately taken from him as a result of the murder of Uriah (D&C 132:39).

***3.6***

***THE REIGN OF KINGS:***

***KING SOLOMON***

***-APPROX 970-930 B.C.-***

**Solomon reigns as King (1 Kings 2:12)**

Then sat Solomon upon the throne of David his father; and his kingdom was established greatly.

**The Lord appears to Solomon in a dream, promises him great wisdom and many riches (1 Kings 3:5-15)**

In Gibeon the Lord appeared to Solomon in a dream by night: and God said,

“Ask what I shall give thee.”

And Solomon said,

“Thou hast shewed unto thy servant David my father great mercy, according as he walked before thee in truth, and in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart with thee; and thou hast kept for him this great kindness, that thou hast given him a son to sit on his throne, as it is this day. And now, O Lord my God, thou hast made thy servant king instead of David my father: and I am but a little child: I know not how to go out or come in. And thy servant is in the midst of thy people which thou hast chosen, a great people, that cannot be numbered nor counted for multitude. Give therefore thy servant an understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and bad: for who is able to judge this thy so great a people?”

And the speech pleased the Lord, that Solomon had asked this thing. And God said unto him,

“Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thyself long life; neither hast asked riches for thyself, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies; but hast asked for thyself understanding to discern judgment; Behold, I have done according to thy words: lo, I have given thee a wise and an understanding heart; so that there was none like thee before thee, neither after thee shall any arise like unto thee.

And I have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, both riches, and honour: so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto thee all thy days. And if thou wilt walk in my ways, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days.”

And Solomon awoke; and, behold, it was a dream. And he came to Jerusalem, and stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and offered up burnt offerings, and offered peace offerings, and made a feast to all his servants.

**The wisdom of Solomon surpasses that of all men (1 Kings 4:29-30, 34)**

And God gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the sea shore. And Solomon’s wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east country, and all the wisdom of Egypt. And there came of all people to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all kings of the earth, which had heard of his wisdom.

**Solomon begins building the temple (1 Kings 5:1-6; 1 Kings 6:1)**

And Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants unto Solomon; for he had heard that they had anointed him king in the room of his father: for Hiram was ever a lover of David. And Solomon sent to Hiram, saying,

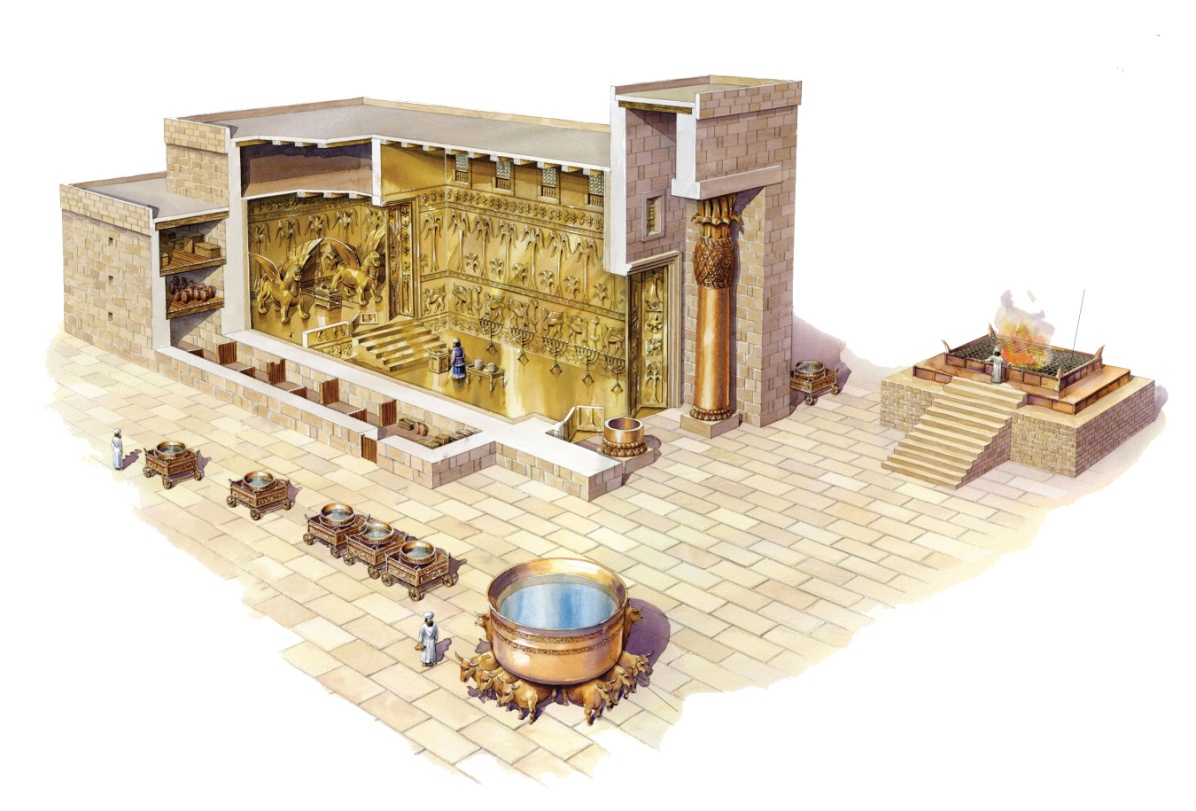
“Thou knowest how that David my father could not build an house unto the name of the Lord his God for the wars which were about him on every side, until the Lord put them under the soles of his feet. But now the Lord my God hath given me rest on every side, so that there is neither adversary nor evil occurrent. And, behold, I purpose to build an house unto the name of the Lord my God, as the Lord spake unto David my father, saying, Thy son, whom I will set upon thy throne in thy room, he shall build an house unto my name.

Now therefore command thou that they hew me cedar trees out of Lebanon; and my servants shall be with thy servants: and unto thee will I give hire for thy servants according to all that thou shalt appoint: for thou knowest that there is not among us any that can skill to hew timber like unto the Sidonians.”

And it came to pass in the four hundred and eightieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon’s reign over Israel, in the month Zif, which is the second month, that he began to build the house of the Lord.

**The detailed beauty of the temple described, taking 7 years to build**

**(See 1 Kings 6:14-38)**

****

**Solomon apostasy begins by building himself a house much larger and grander than even the temple (See 1 Kings 7:1-12)**

But Solomon was building his own house thirteen years, and he finished all his house. He built also the house of the forest of Lebanon; the length thereof was an hundred cubits, and the breadth thereof fifty cubits, and the height thereof thirty cubits, upon four rows of cedar pillars, with cedar beams upon the pillars. And it was covered with cedar above upon the beams, that lay on forty five pillars, fifteen in a row. And there were windows in three rows, and light was against light in three ranks. And all the doors and posts were square, with the windows: and light was against light in three ranks.

And he made a porch of pillars; the length thereof was fifty cubits, and the breadth thereof thirty cubits: and the porch was before them: and the other pillars and the thick beam were before them. Then he made a porch for the throne where he might judge, even the porch of judgment: and it was covered with cedar from one side of the floor to the other.

And his house where he dwelt had another court within the porch, which was of the like work. Solomon made also an house for Pharaoh’s daughter, whom he had taken to wife, like unto this porch.

All these were of costly stones, according to the measures of hewed stones, sawed with saws, within and without, even from the foundation unto the coping, and so on the outside toward the great court. And the foundation was of costly stones, even great stones, stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits. And above were costly stones, after the measures of hewed stones, and cedars. And the great court round about was with three rows of hewed stones, and a row of cedar beams, both for the inner court of the house of the Lord, and for the porch of the house.

**The temple finished, dedicated, and the glory of the Lord fills the temple**

**(See 1 Kings 8:1-61)**

**The Levites to work in the temple (1 Chron 23:24-32)**

These were the sons of Levi after the house of their fathers; even the chief of the fathers, as they were counted by number of names by their polls, that did the work for the service of the house of the Lord, from the age of twenty years and upward. For David said,

“The Lord God of Israel hath given rest unto his people, that they may dwell in Jerusalem for ever: And also unto the Levites; they shall no more carry the tabernacle, nor any vessels of it for the service thereof. For by the last words of David the Levites were numbered from twenty years old and above:

Because their office was to wait on the sons of Aaron for the service of the house of the Lord, in the courts, and in the chambers, and in the purifying of all holy things, and the work of the service of the house of God;

Both for the shewbread, and for the fine flour for meat offering, and for the unleavened cakes, and for that which is baked in the pan, and for that which is fried, and for all manner of measure and size;

And to stand every morning to thank and praise the Lord, and likewise at even; And to offer all burnt sacrifices unto the Lord in the sabbaths, in the new moons, and on the set feasts, by number, according to the order commanded unto them, continually before the Lord: And that they should keep the charge of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the charge of the holy place, and the charge of the sons of Aaron their brethren, in the service of the house of the Lord.”

**The Lord appears to Solomon, promises great blessings to Israel if obedient, curses if they forsake Him (1 Kings 9:1-9)**

And it came to pass, when Solomon had finished the building of the house of the Lord, and the king’s house, and all Solomon’s desire which he was pleased to do, That the Lord appeared to Solomon the second time, as he had appeared unto him at Gibeon. And the Lord said unto him,

“I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication, that thou hast made before me: I have hallowed this house, which thou hast built, to put my name there forever; and mine eyes and mine heart shall be there perpetually. And if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and my judgments: Then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying,

‘There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel.’

“But if ye shall at all turn from following me, ye or your children, and will not keep my commandments and my statutes which I have set before you, but go and serve other gods, and worship them: Then will I cut off Israel out of the land which I have given them; and this house, which I have hallowed for my name, will I cast out of my sight; and Israel shall be a proverb and a byword among all people: And at this house, which is high, every one that passeth by it shall be astonished, and shall hiss; and they shall say, Why hath the Lord done thus unto this land, and to this house? And they shall answer,

‘Because they forsook the Lord their God, who brought forth their fathers out of the land of Egypt, and have taken hold upon other gods, and have worshipped them, and served them.’

“Therefore hath the Lord brought upon them all this evil.”

**Solomon exceeds every person alive in riches and wisdom (1 Kings 10:21-23)**

And all king Solomon’s drinking vessels were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of pure gold; none were of silver: it was nothing accounted of in the days of Solomon. For the king had at sea a navy of Tharshish with the navy of Hiram: once in three years came the navy of Tharshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks. So king Solomon exceeded all the kings of the earth for riches and for wisdom.

**Solomon goes apostate, marrying over 1000 women, worships false gods (1 Kings 11:1-8)**

But King Solomon loved many strange women, together with the daughter of Pharaoh, women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Zidonians, and Hittites; Of the nations concerning which the Lord said unto the children of Israel, Ye shall not go in to them, neither shall they come in unto you: for surely they will turn away your heart after their gods: Solomon clave unto these in love. And he had seven hundred wives, princesses, and three hundred concubines: and his wives turned away his heart.

For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods: and his heart was not perfect with the Lord his God, as was the heart of David his father. For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, and after Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. And Solomon did evil in the sight of the Lord, and went not fully after the Lord, as did David his father. Then did Solomon build an high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, in the hill that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the children of Ammon. And likewise did he for all his strange wives, which burnt incense and sacrificed unto their gods.

**The Lord is angry with Solomon, promises to divide the Kingdom of Israel (1 Kings 11:9-13)**

And the Lord was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned from the Lord God of Israel, which had appeared unto him twice, And had commanded him concerning this thing, that he should not go after other gods: but he kept not that which the Lord commanded. Wherefore the Lord said unto Solomon,

“Forasmuch as this is done of thee, and thou hast not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee, and will give it to thy servant. Notwithstanding in thy days I will not do it for David thy father’s sake: but I will rend it out of the hand of thy son. Howbeit I will not rend away all the kingdom; but will give one tribe to thy son for David my servant’s sake, and for Jerusalem’s sake which I have chosen.”

**The Kingdom is in disarray (1 Kings 11:14-25)**

And the Lord stirred up an adversary unto Solomon, Hadad the Edomite: he was of the king’s seed in Edom. For it came to pass, when David was in Edom, and Joab the captain of the host was gone up to bury the slain, after he had smitten every male in Edom; (For six months did Joab remain there with all Israel, until he had cut off every male in Edom:) That Hadad fled, he and certain Edomites of his father’s servants with him, to go into Egypt; Hadad being yet a little child.

And they arose out of Midian, and came to Paran: and they took men with them out of Paran, and they came to Egypt, unto Pharaoh king of Egypt; which gave him an house, and appointed him victuals, and gave him land. And Hadad found great favour in the sight of Pharaoh, so that he gave him to wife the sister of his own wife, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.

And the sister of Tahpenes bare him Genubath his son, whom Tahpenes weaned in Pharaoh’s house: and Genubath was in Pharaoh’s household among the sons of Pharaoh. And when Hadad heard in Egypt that David slept with his fathers, and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh,

“Let me depart, that I may go to mine own country.”

Then Pharaoh said unto him,

“But what hast thou lacked with me, that, behold, thou seekest to go to thine own country?”

And he answered,

“Nothing: howbeit let me go in any wise.”

And God stirred him up another adversary, Rezon the son of Eliadah, which fled from his lord Hadadezer king of Zobah: And he gathered men unto him, and became captain over a band, when David slew them of Zobah: and they went to Damascus, and dwelt therein, and reigned in Damascus. And he was an adversary to Israel all the days of Solomon, beside the mischief that Hadad did: and he abhorred Israel, and reigned over Syria.

**The Prophet, Ahijah, promises that Jeroboam will rule over 10 of the 12 tribes of Israel, the others to Solomon’s son, Rehoboam (1 Kings 11:26-39)**

And Jeroboam the son of Nebat, an Ephrathite of Zereda, Solomon’s servant, whose mother’s name was Zeruah, a widow woman, even he lifted up his hand against the king. And this was the cause that he lifted up his hand against the king: Solomon built Millo, and repaired the breaches of the city of David his father.

And the man Jeroboam was a mighty man of valour: and Solomon seeing the young man that he was industrious, he made him ruler over all the charge of the house of Joseph. And it came to pass at that time when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, that the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him in the way; and he had clad himself with a new garment; and they two were alone in the field: And Ahijah caught the new garment that was on him, and rent it in twelve pieces: And he said to Jeroboam,

“Take thee ten pieces: for thus saith the Lord, the God of Israel,

‘Behold, I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give ten tribes to thee:

(But he shall have one tribe for my servant David’s sake, and for Jerusalem’s sake, the city which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel:) Because that they have forsaken me, and have worshipped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, Chemosh the god of the Moabites, and Milcom the god of the children of Ammon, and have not walked in my ways, to do that which is right in mine eyes, and to keep my statutes and my judgments, as did David his father.

‘Howbeit I will not take the whole kingdom out of his hand: but I will make him prince all the days of his life for David my servant’s sake, whom I chose, because he kept my commandments and my statutes: But I will take the kingdom out of his son’s hand, and will give it unto thee, even ten tribes. And unto his son will I give one tribe, that David my servant may have a light alway before me in Jerusalem, the city which I have chosen me to put my name there.

‘And I will take thee, and thou shalt reign according to all that thy soul desireth, and shalt be king over Israel. And it shall be, if thou wilt hearken unto all that I command thee, and wilt walk in my ways, and do that is right in my sight, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as David my servant did; that I will be with thee, and build thee a sure house, as I built for David, and will give Israel unto thee. And I will for this afflict the seed of David, but not for ever.”

***Just…Because.***

The Lord says that he chose David to reign because “he kept my commandment and statutes (1 Kings 11:34). He also further states that He chose Jerusalem as the city to put his name in before all of Israel. He doesn’t say why, only that He did. It was simply God choosing what He wanted to do. And He wanted to single Jerusalem out for no other reason that He simply chose so to do (1 Kings 11:36).

***3.7***

***THE REIGN OF KINGS:***

***THE KINGDOM SPLIT IN TWO***

***-APPROX 930 B.C.-***

**Solomon continuing his apostasy in his old age, attempts to murder Jeroboam (1 Kings 11:40)**

Solomon sought therefore to kill Jeroboam. And Jeroboam arose, and fled into Egypt, unto Shishak king of Egypt, and was in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

**Solomon dies after reigning for 40 years; His son, Rehoboam reigns (1 Kings 11:42-43)**

And the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel was forty years. And Solomon slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

**Civil war and apostasy take place among Israel’s kings and the tribes of Israel as they worship false gods**

**(See 1 Kings 12-16)**

**The Prophet, Ahijah, prophesies to Jeroboam of the scattering of Israel because of his and their worship of false gods**

**(1 Kings 14:5-16)**

And the Lord said unto Ahijah,

“Behold, the wife of Jeroboam cometh to ask a thing of thee for her son; for he is sick: thus and thus shalt thou say unto her:

‘for it shall be, when she cometh in, that she shall feign herself to be another woman.”

And it was so, when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet, as she came in at the door, that he said,

“Come in, thou wife of Jeroboam; why feignest thou thyself to be another? For I am sent to thee with heavy tidings. Go, tell Jeroboam, Thus saith the Lord God of Israel,

‘Forasmuch as I exalted thee from among the people, and made thee prince over my people Israel, And rent the kingdom away from the house of David, and gave it thee: and yet thou hast not been as my servant David, who kept my commandments, and who followed me with all his heart, to do that only which was right in mine eyes; But hast done evil above all that were before thee: for thou hast gone and made thee other gods, and molten images, to provoke me to anger, and hast cast me behind thy back: Therefore, behold, I will bring evil upon the house of Jeroboam, and will cut off from Jeroboam him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel, and will take away the remnant of the house of Jeroboam, as a man taketh away dung, till it be all gone.

‘Him that dieth of Jeroboam in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat: for the Lord hath spoken it. Arise thou therefore, get thee to thine own house: and when thy feet enter into the city, the child shall die. And all Israel shall mourn for him, and bury him: for he only of Jeroboam shall come to the grave, because in him there is found some good thing toward the Lord God of Israel in the house of Jeroboam. Moreover the Lord shall raise him up a king over Israel, who shall cut off the house of Jeroboam that day: but what? even now. For the Lord shall smite Israel, as a reed is shaken in the water, and he shall root up Israel out of this good land, which he gave to their fathers, and shall scatter them beyond the river, because they have made their groves, provoking the Lord to anger. And he shall give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam, who did sin, and who made Israel to sin.”

**The descendants of Judah, led by Rehoboam, worship false gods (1 Kings 14:22-24)**

And Judah did evil in the sight of the Lord, and they provoked him to jealousy with their sins which they had committed, above all that their fathers had done. For they also built them high places, and images, and groves, on every high hill, and under every green tree. And there were also sodomites in the land: and they did according to all the abominations of the nations which the Lord cast out before the children of Israel.

**The Pharaoh invades Judah and takes away all the treasures of the Temple (1 Kings 14:25-26)**

And it came to pass in the fifth year of king Rehoboam, that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem: And he took away the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king’s house; he even took away all: and he took away all the shields of gold which Solomon had made.

**The kingdom of Israel becomes divided between Jeroboam and Rehoboam (2 Chron 10:1-19)**

And Rehoboam went to Shechem: for to Shechem were all Israel come to make him king. And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who was in Egypt, whither he had fled from the presence of Solomon the king, heard it, that Jeroboam returned out of Egypt. And they sent and called him. So Jeroboam and all Israel came and spake to Rehoboam, saying,

“Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore ease thou somewhat the grievous servitude of thy father, and his heavy yoke that he put upon us, and we will serve thee.”

And [Rehoboam] said unto them,

“Come again unto me after three days.”

And the people departed. And king Rehoboam took counsel with the old men that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying,

“What counsel give ye me to return answer to this people?”

And they spake unto him, saying,

“If thou be kind to this people, and please them, and speak good words to them, they will be thy servants forever.”

But he forsook the counsel which the old men gave him, and took counsel with the young men that were brought up with him, that stood before him. And he said unto them,

“What advice give ye that we may return answer to this people, which have spoken to me, saying,

‘Ease somewhat the yoke that thy father did put upon us?”

And the young men that were brought up with him spake unto him, saying,

“Thus shalt thou answer the people that spake unto thee, saying,

‘Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou it somewhat lighter for us; thus shalt thou say unto them,

‘My little finger shall be thicker than my father’s loins. For whereas my father put a heavy yoke upon you, I will put more to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.”

So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king bade, saying,

“Come again to me on the third day.”

And the king answered them roughly; and king Rehoboam forsook the counsel of the old men, And answered them after the advice of the young men, saying,

“My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add thereto: my father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.”

So the king hearkened not unto the people: for the cause was of God, that the Lord might perform his word, which he spake by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat. And when all Israel saw that the king would not hearken unto them, the people answered the king, saying,

“What portion have we in David? And we have none inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to your tents, O Israel: and now, David, see to thine own house.”

So all Israel went to their tents. But as for the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them. Then king Rehoboam sent Hadoram that was over the tribute; and the children of Israel stoned him with stones, that he died. But king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem. And Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day.

**Jeroboam causes Israel worship false Idols (2 Chron 11:13-15)**

And the priests and the Levites that were in all Israel resorted to him out of all their coasts. For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession, and came to Judah and Jerusalem: for Jeroboam and his sons had cast them off from executing the priest’s office unto the Lord: And he ordained him priests for the high places, and for the devils, and for the calves which he had made.

**Rehoboam forsakes the Lord (2 Chron 12:1)**

And it came to pass, when Rehoboam had established the kingdom, and had strengthened himself, he forsook the law of the Lord, and all Israel with him.

**2 Kingdoms:**

Judah: Rehoboam------Abijam---------Asa-----------------------------------------------------------------------------Jehoshaphat

10 Tribes: Jeroboam----------------------------Nadab\* ----Baasha------Elah\*\*\*------------Zimri----Omri-------Ahab

3rd Parties: Baasha\*\* Zimri Omri/Tibni\*\*\*\*

\*(killed by Baasha after 2 yrs of being king)

\*\* Baasha (son of Ahijah… the prophet???—1 Kings 15:27)

-Baasha kills Nadab and then every member of the house of Jeroboam

\*\*\*Elah, son of Baasha, killed by his captain, Zimri.

-Zimri reigns as king, for only 7 days, and kills every member of the house of Baasha

-The people conspire against Zimri for killing Elah, and make Omri their king

-Omri and Zimri at war with each other

-Omri burns Zimri’s house down with Zimri inside, killing Zimri

\*\*\*\* the Kingdom of Israel was divided between 2 kings: Tibni and Omri…..Omri won and was recognized as king

-Omri was an extremely wicked king

-His son, Ahab, was even more wicked, marrying the murderous and idolatrous woman, Jezebel.

******

***CHAPTER 4:***

***ISRAEL FORSAKES THE LORD,***

***WORSHIPS FALSE GODS***

******

***4.1***

***OLD TESTAMENT AND BOOK OF MORMON PROPHECIES ABOUT***

***THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL BY BABYLON***

**Blessings or cursings pronounced upon Israel for her obedience or disobedience (Deut 11:26-28)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse; A blessing, if ye obey the commandments of the Lord your God, which I command you this day: And a curse, if ye will not obey the commandments of the Lord your God, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which ye have not known.”

**Cursings pronounced upon Israel if she rejects the Lord (Deut 28:15-68)**

[And Moses said unto the people,]

“But it shall come to pass, if thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to observe to do all his commandments and his statutes which I command thee this day; that all these curses shall come upon thee, and overtake thee: Cursed shalt thou be in the city, and cursed shalt thou be in the field. Cursed shall be thy basket and thy store. Cursed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy land, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep. Cursed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and cursed shalt thou be when thou goest out.

“The Lord shall send upon thee cursing, vexation, and rebuke, in all that thou settest thine hand unto for to do, until thou be destroyed, and until thou perish quickly; because of the wickedness of thy doings, whereby thou hast forsaken me. The Lord shall make the pestilence cleave unto thee, until he have consumed thee from off the land, whither thou goest to possess it. The Lord shall smite thee with a consumption, and with a fever, and with an inflammation, and with an extreme burning, and with the sword, and with blasting, and with mildew; and they shall pursue thee until thou perish. And thy heaven that is over thy head shall be brass, and the earth that is under thee shall be iron. The Lord shall make the rain of thy land powder and dust: from heaven shall it come down upon thee, until thou be destroyed.

“The Lord shall cause thee to be smitten before thine enemies: thou shalt go out one way against them, and flee seven ways before them: and shalt be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth. And thy carcase shall be meat unto all fowls of the air, and unto the beasts of the earth, and no man shall fray them away. The Lord will smite thee with the botch of Egypt, and with the emerods, and with the scab, and with the itch, whereof thou canst not be healed. The Lord shall smite thee with madness, and blindness, and astonishment of heart: And thou shalt grope at noonday, as the blind gropeth in darkness, and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways: and thou shalt be only oppressed and spoiled evermore, and no man shall save thee.

“Thou shalt betroth a wife, and another man shall lie with her: thou shalt build an house, and thou shalt not dwell therein: thou shalt plant a vineyard, and shalt not gather the grapes thereof. Thine ox shall be slain before thine eyes, and thou shalt not eat thereof: thine ass shall be violently taken away from before thy face, and shall not be restored to thee: thy sheep shall be given unto thine enemies, and thou shalt have none to rescue them. Thy sons and thy daughters shall be given unto another people, and thine eyes shall look, and fail with longing for them all the day long: and there shall be no might in thine hand.

The fruit of thy land, and all thy labours, shall a nation which thou knowest not eat up; and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed alway:

“So that thou shalt be mad for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see. The Lord shall smite thee in the knees, and in the legs, with a sore botch that cannot be healed, from the sole of thy foot unto the top of thy head. The Lord shall bring thee, and thy king which thou shalt set over thee, unto a nation which neither thou nor thy fathers have known; and there shalt thou serve other gods, wood and stone. And thou shalt become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword, among all nations whither the Lord shall lead thee.

Thou shalt carry much seed out into the field, and shalt gather but little in; for the locust shall consume it.

“Thou shalt plant vineyards, and dress them, but shalt neither drink of the wine, nor gather the grapes; for the worms shall eat them. Thou shalt have olive trees throughout all thy coasts, but thou shalt not anoint thyself with the oil; for thine olive shall cast his fruit. Thou shalt beget sons and daughters, but thou shalt not enjoy them; for they shall go into captivity. All thy trees and fruit of thy land shall the locust consume.

The stranger that is within thee shall get up above thee very high; and thou shalt come down very low.

He shall lend to thee, and thou shalt not lend to him: he shall be the head, and thou shalt be the tail.

Moreover all these curses shall come upon thee, and shall pursue thee, and overtake thee, till thou be destroyed; because thou hearkenedst not unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to keep his commandments and his statutes which he commanded thee:

“And they shall be upon thee for a sign and for a wonder, and upon thy seed for ever. Because thou servedst not the Lord thy God with joyfulness, and with gladness of heart, for the abundance of all things;

Therefore shalt thou serve thine enemies which the Lord shall send against thee, in hunger, and in thirst, and in nakedness, and in want of all things: and he shall put a yoke of iron upon thy neck, until he have destroyed thee. The Lord shall bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as swift as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand; A nation of fierce countenance, which shall not regard the person of the old, nor shew favour to the young: And he shall eat the fruit of thy cattle, and the fruit of thy land, until thou be destroyed: which also shall not leave thee either corn, wine, or oil, or the increase of thy kine, or flocks of thy sheep, until he have destroyed thee.

“And he shall besiege thee in all thy gates, until thy high and fenced walls come down, wherein thou trustedst, throughout all thy land: and he shall besiege thee in all thy gates throughout all thy land, which the Lord thy God hath given thee. And thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own body, the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters, which the Lord thy God hath given thee, in the siege, and in the straitness, wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee: So that the man that is tender among you, and very delicate, his eye shall be evil toward his brother, and toward the wife of his bosom, and toward the remnant of his children which he shall leave: So that he will not give to any of them of the flesh of his children whom he shall eat: because he hath nothing left him in the siege, and in the straitness, wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee in all thy gates.

“The tender and delicate woman among you, which would not adventure to set the sole of her foot upon the ground for delicateness and tenderness, her eye shall be evil toward the husband of her bosom, and toward her son, and toward her daughter, And toward her young one that cometh out from between her feet, and toward her children which she shall bear: for she shall eat them for want of all things secretly in the siege and straitness, wherewith thine enemy shall distress thee in thy gates. If thou wilt not observe to do all the words of this law that are written in this book, that thou mayest fear this glorious and fearful name, THE LORD THY GOD; Then the Lord will make thy plagues wonderful, and the plagues of thy seed, even great plagues, and of long continuance, and sore sicknesses, and of long continuance. Moreover he will bring upon thee all the diseases of Egypt, which thou wast afraid of; and they shall cleave unto thee.

“Also every sickness, and every plague, which is not written in the book of this law, them will the Lord bring upon thee, until thou be destroyed. And ye shall be left few in number, whereas ye were as the stars of heaven for multitude; because thou wouldest not obey the voice of the Lord thy God. And it shall come to pass, that as the Lord rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you; so the Lord will rejoice over you to destroy you, and to bring you to nought; and ye shall be plucked from off the land whither thou goest to possess it. And the Lord shall scatter thee among all people, from the one end of the earth even unto the other; and there thou shalt serve other gods, which neither thou nor thy fathers have known, even wood and stone.

“And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest: but the Lord shall give thee there a trembling heart, and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind: And thy life shall hang in doubt before thee; and thou shalt fear day and night, and shalt have none assurance of thy life:

In the morning thou shalt say, Would God it were even! And at even thou shalt say, Would God it were morning! for the fear of thine heart wherewith thou shalt fear, and for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see. And the Lord shall bring thee into Egypt again with ships, by the way whereof I spake unto thee, Thou shalt see it no more again: and there ye shall be sold unto your enemies for bondmen and bondwomen, and no man shall buy you.”

**The Lord will scatter the people because they will forsake Him (Deut 29:21-29)**

[And Moses said unto the people,]

“And the Lord shall separate him unto evil out of all the tribes of Israel, according to all the curses of the covenant that are written in this book of the law: So that the generation to come of your children that shall rise up after you, and the stranger that shall come from a far land, shall say, when they see the plagues of that land, and the sicknesses which the Lord hath laid upon it; And that the whole land thereof is brimstone, and salt, and burning, that it is not sown, nor beareth, nor any grass groweth therein, like the overthrow of Sodom, and Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboim, which the Lord overthrew in his anger, and in his wrath:

Even all nations shall say,

‘Wherefore hath the Lord done thus unto this land? What meaneth the heat of this great anger?’

“Then men shall say,

‘Because they have forsaken the covenant of the Lord God of their fathers, which he made with them when he brought them forth out of the land of Egypt: For they went and served other gods, and worshipped them, gods whom they knew not, and whom he had not given unto them: And the anger of the Lord was kindled against this land, to bring upon it all the curses that are written in this book:

‘And the Lord rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as it is this day. The secret things belong unto the Lord our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.”

**Isaiah sees the scattering of Israel and of their return to Jerusalem (2 Ne 16:11-12)**

Then said I:

“Lord, how long [shall Israel be in bondage?]?”

And he said:

“Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate; And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land. But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.”

**Israel, though decreed to be scattered, will eventually return from Babylon (1 Ne 20:1-22/Isaiah 48)**

[And the Lord spake unto the people, saying]

“Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness. Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

“Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly. And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass; And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them. Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

“They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them. Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb. Nevertheless, for my name’s sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off. For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction. For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

“Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last. Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together. All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans. Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord,

‘Yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.’

“Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me. And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel;

‘I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.’

“O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea. Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me. Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob. And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out. And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.”

**The people of Israel to be scattered across the isles of the sea (1 Ne 21:1/Isaiah 49:1)**

[And the Lord said unto the people,]

“And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

**Lehi sees the abominations of the people (1 Ne 1:13)**

And he read, saying:

“Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.”

**Israel punished for rejecting the prophets,(1 Ne 3:17-18)**

For [God] knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people. For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

**Israel punished for rejecting the prophet, Jeremiah (1 Ne 7:14)**

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

**The people of Israel to be scattered all across the earth (1 Ne 22:3-4)**

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations. And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

**All destruction is foretold by Prophets before it comes to pass (2 Ne 25:9)**

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

***4.2***

***APOSTASY AND CIVIL WAR BEGIN TO TEAR ISRAEL APART:***

***THE PROPHECIES OF MANY PROPHETS***

***The Situation:***

A little over 70 years ago, the kingdom of Solomon had been split into two parts, following the death of Solomon: 10 Tribes following a servant of Solomon, Jeroboam. The son of Solomon, Rehoboam, getting the other two kingdoms. Both of these kingdoms not only made war with each other, but during the next 70 years, there was massive civil war, treason, and apostasy within each, particularly within the 10 tribes that followed Jeroboam and his successors. After these 70+ years, Ahab, a very wicked and idolatrous man, is king over the 10 Tribes, and is married to an even more wicked and idolatrous woman, Jezebel. As such, he has completely abandoned the God of Israel for the worship of Baal, and God sends Elijah to call Ahab, and Israel, to repentance.

Judah: ----Jehoshaphat--------Jehoram

10 Tribes: Ahab------Ahaziah

Prophets: Elijah-----Elisha----Hosea---Isaiah

***-APPROX 875 B.C.-***

**The Prophet Elijah prophesies of a great famine as a result of Ahab’s Baal worship (1 Kings 17:1; 1 Kings 18:1, 17-18)**

And Elijah the Tishbite, who was of the inhabitants of Gilead, said unto Ahab,

“As the Lord God of Israel liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word.”

…

And it came to pass after many days, that the word of the Lord came to Elijah in the third year [of the famine], saying,

“Go, shew thyself unto Ahab; and I will send rain upon the earth.”

And it came to pass, when Ahab saw Elijah, that Ahab said unto him,

“Art thou he that troubleth Israel?”

And [Elijah] answered,

“I have not troubled Israel; but thou, and thy father’s house, in that ye have forsaken the commandments of the Lord, and thou hast followed Baalim.”

**Elijah challenges the prophets of Baal against the God of Israel**

**(See 1 Kings 18:19-35)**

**Elijah’s Prayer is heard and answered by God (1 Kings 18:36-40)**

And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said,

“Lord God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that thou art God in Israel, and that I am thy servant, and that I have done all these things at thy word. Hear me, O Lord, hear me, that this people may know that thou art the Lord God, and that thou hast turned their heart back again.”

Then the fire of the Lord fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench. And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces: and they said,

“The Lord, he is the God; the Lord, he is the God.”

And Elijah said unto them,

“Take the prophets of Baal; let not one of them escape.”

And they took them: and Elijah brought them down to the brook Kishon, and slew them there.

**Elijah sent to anoint two new kings and his prophetic successor, Elisha (1 Kings 19:15-16)**

And the Lord said unto him,

“ Go, return on thy way to the wilderness of Damascus: and when thou comest, anoint Hazael to be king over Syria: And Jehu the son of Nimshi shalt thou anoint to be king over Israel: and Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abel-meholah shalt thou anoint to be prophet in thy room.”

**The Lord sends Elijah to curse Ahab and Jezebel for their idolatry and murders (1 Kings 21:17-29)**

But there was none like unto Ahab, which did sell himself to work wickedness in the sight of the Lord, whom Jezebel his wife stirred up. And he did very abominably in following idols, according to all things as did the Amorites, whom the Lord cast out before the children of Israel. And the word of the Lord came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

“Arise, go down to meet Ahab king of Israel, which is in Samaria: behold, he is in the vineyard of Naboth, whither he is gone down to possess it. And thou shalt speak unto him, saying,

‘Thus saith the Lord,

‘Hast thou killed, and also taken possession? In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth shall dogs lick thy blood, even thine.”

And Ahab said to Elijah,

“Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?”

And [Elijah] answered,

“I have found thee: because thou hast sold thyself to work evil in the sight of the Lord. Behold, I will bring evil upon thee, and will take away thy posterity, and will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel, And will make thine house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah, for the provocation wherewith thou hast provoked me to anger, and made Israel to sin. And of Jezebel also spake the Lord, saying,

‘The dogs shall eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel.’

“Him that dieth of Ahab in the city the dogs shall eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat.”

And it came to pass, when Ahab heard those words, that he rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly. And the word of the Lord came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

“Seest thou how Ahab humbleth himself before me? Because he humbleth himself before me, I will not bring the evil in his days: but in his son’s days will I bring the evil upon his house.”

**Following the death of Ahab in a bloody war, his son Ahaziah reigns as king (1 Kings 22:40)**

So Ahab slept with his fathers; and Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.

**Jehoshaphat, a righteous king, and great great grandson of Solomon, makes peace with the kingdom of the 10 tribes of Israel**

**(1 Kings 22:41-44)**

And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel.

Jehoshaphat was thirty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.

And he walked in all the ways of Asa his father; he turned not aside from it, doing that which was right in the eyes of the Lord: nevertheless the high places were not taken away; for the people offered and burnt incense yet in the high places.

And Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

**The son of Ahab, Ahaziah, reigns in wickedness over Judah (1 Kings 22:51-53; 2 Kings 8:25-27)**

Ahaziah the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned two years over Israel. And he did evil in the sight of the Lord, and walked in the way of his father, and in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin: For he served Baal, and worshipped him, and provoked to anger the Lord God of Israel, according to all that his father had done.

In the twelfth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel did Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah begin to reign.

Two and twenty years old was Ahaziah when he began to reign; and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Athaliah, the daughter of Omri king of Israel. And he walked in the way of the house of Ahab, and did evil in the sight of the Lord, as did the house of Ahab: for he was the son in law of the house of Ahab.

**Elisha witnesses Elijah taken up to heaven; succeeds him as prophet (2 Kings 2:6-14)**

And Elijah said unto [Elisha],

“Tarry, I pray thee, here; for the Lord hath sent me to Jordan.”

And [Elisha replied],

“As the Lord liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee.”

And they two went on. And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went, and stood to view afar off: and they two stood by Jordan. And Elijah took his mantle, and wrapped it together, and smote the waters, and they were divided hither and thither, so that they two went over on dry ground. And it came to pass, when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha,

“Ask what I shall do for thee, before I be taken away from thee.”

And Elisha said,

“I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me.”

And [Elijah] said,

“Thou hast asked a hard thing: nevertheless, if thou see me when I am taken from thee, it shall be so unto thee; but if not, it shall not be so.”

And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven. And Elisha saw it, and he cried,

“My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof.]

And he saw him no more: and he took hold of his own clothes, and rent them in two pieces. He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of Jordan; And he took the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and smote the waters, and said, Where is the Lord God of Elijah? And when he also had smitten the waters, they parted hither and thither: and Elisha went over.

**Various miracles performed by Elisha**

**(See 2 Kings 4-7)**

**Elisha sends a prophet to anoint Jehu king over Israel and to afflict the house of Jezebel (2 Kings 9:1-10)**

And Elisha the prophet called one of the children of the prophets, and said unto him,

“Gird up thy loins, and take this box of oil in thine hand, and go to Ramoth-gilead: And when thou comest thither, look out there Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi, and go in, and make him arise up from among his brethren, and carry him to an inner chamber; Then take the box of oil, and pour it on his head, and say, Thus saith the Lord,

‘I have anointed thee king over Israel. Then open the door, and flee, and tarry not.’

So the young man, even the young man, the prophet, went to Ramoth-gilead. And when he came, behold, the captains of the host were sitting; and he said,

“I have an errand to thee, O captain.”

And Jehu said,

“Unto which of all us?”

And [the prophet] said,

“To thee, O captain.”

And [the prophet] arose, and went into the house; and he poured the oil on [the Captain’s] head, and said unto him,

“Thus saith the Lord God of Israel,

‘I have anointed thee king over the people of the Lord, even over Israel. And thou shalt smite the house of Ahab thy master, that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of the Lord, at the hand of Jezebel. For the whole house of Ahab shall perish: and I will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel: And I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah: And the dogs shall eat Jezebel in the portion of Jezreel, and there shall be none to bury her. And he opened the door, and fled.”

**Jehu makes war with Jezebel, who dies, fulfilling the prophecy of Elijah (2 Kings 9:30-37)**

And when Jehu was come to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it; and she painted her face, and [turned] her head, and looked out…a window. And as Jehu entered in at the gate, she said,

“Had Zimri peace, who slew his master?”

And [Jehu] lifted up his face to the window, and said,

“Who is on my side? Who?”

And there looked out to him two or three eunuchs. And [Jehu] said,

“Throw her down. So they threw her down: and some of her blood was sprinkled on the wall, and on the horses: and he trode her under foot.”

And when [Jehu] was come in, he did eat and drink, and said,

“Go, see now this cursed woman, and bury her: for she is a king’s daughter.”

And they went to bury her: but they found no more of her than the skull, and the feet, and the palms of her hands.

Wherefore they came again, and told him. And he said,

“This is the word of the Lord, which he spake by his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

‘In the portion of Jezreel shall dogs eat the flesh of Jezebel: And the carcase of Jezebel shall be as dung upon the face of the field in the portion of Jezreel; so that they shall not say, This is Jezebel.”

**Jehu destroys all worshippers and images of Baal (2 Kings 10:18-28)**

And Jehu gathered all the people together, and said unto them,

“Ahab served Baal a little; but Jehu shall serve him much. Now therefore call unto me all the prophets of Baal, all his servants, and all his priests; let none be wanting: for I have a great sacrifice to do to Baal; whosoever shall be wanting, he shall not live.”

But Jehu did it in subtilty, to the intent that he might destroy the worshippers of Baal. And Jehu said,

“Proclaim a solemn assembly for Baal.”

And they proclaimed it. And Jehu sent through all Israel: and all the worshippers of Baal came, so that there was not a man left that came not. And they came into the house of Baal; and the house of Baal was full from one end to another. And he said unto him that was over the vestry,

“Bring forth vestments for all the worshippers of Baal.”

And he brought them forth vestments. And Jehu went, and Jehonadab the son of Rechab, into the house of Baal, and said unto the worshippers of Baal,

“Search, and look that there be here with you none of the servants of the Lord, but the worshippers of Baal only.”

And when they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings, Jehu appointed fourscore men without, and said,

“If any of the men whom I have brought into your hands escape, he that letteth him go, his life shall be for the life of him.”

And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, that Jehu said to the guard and to the captains,

“Go in, and slay them; let none come forth.”

And they smote them with the edge of the sword; and the guard and the captains cast them out, and went to the city of the house of Baal. And they brought forth the images out of the house of Baal, and burned them. And they brake down the image of Baal, and brake down the house of Baal, and made it a draught house unto this day. Thus Jehu destroyed Baal out of Israel.

**Jehu rejecting the promises of the Lord, worships other false gods, causing the Lord to curse Israel (2 Kings 10:29-36)**

Howbeit from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin, Jehu departed not from after them, to wit, the golden calves that were in Beth-el, and that were in Dan. And the Lord said unto Jehu,

“Because thou hast done well in executing that which is right in mine eyes, and hast done unto the house of Ahab according to all that was in mine heart, thy children of the fourth generation shall sit on the throne of Israel.”

But Jehu took no heed to walk in the law of the Lord God of Israel with all his heart: for he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam, which made Israel to sin. In those days the Lord began to cut Israel short: and Hazael smote them in all the coasts of Israel; From Jordan eastward, all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites, from Aroer, which

is by the river Arnon, even Gilead and Bashan. Now the rest of the acts of Jehu, and all that he did, and all his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And Jehu slept with his fathers: and they buried him in Samaria. And Jehoahaz his son reigned in his stead. And the time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty and eight years.

**Amos called as a prophet, prophesies of the captivity of Israel (Amos 7:14-17)**

Then answered Amos, and said to Amaziah,

“I was no prophet, neither was I a prophet’s son; but I was an herdman, and a gatherer of sycomore fruit:

And the Lord took me as I followed the flock, and the Lord said unto me,

‘Go, prophesy unto my people Israel.’

“Now therefore hear thou the word of the Lord:

‘Thou sayest, Prophesy not against Israel, and drop not thy word against the house of Isaac…Thy wife shall be an harlot in the city, and thy sons and thy daughters shall fall by the sword, and thy land shall be divided by line; and thou shalt die in a polluted land: and Israel shall surely go into captivity forth of his land.”

**The Lord decrees judgments upon Israel for her transgressions (Amos 2:4-8)**

Thus saith the Lord;

“For three transgressions of Judah, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they have despised the law of the Lord, and have not kept his commandments, and their lies caused them to err, after the which their fathers have walked: But I will send a fire upon Judah, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem.

“For three transgressions of Israel, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they sold the righteous for silver, and the poor for a pair of shoes; That pant after the dust of the earth on the head of the poor, and turn aside the way of the meek: and a man and his father will go in unto the same maid, to profane my holy name.”

And they lay themselves down upon clothes laid to pledge by every altar, and they drink the wine of the condemned in the house of their god.

**The Lord is angry because Israel has worshipped false gods, declares captivity upon them (Amos 5:21-27)**

[And the Lord said unto the people,]

“I hate, I despise your feast days, and I will not smell in your solemn assemblies. Though ye offer me burnt offerings and your meat offerings, I will not accept them: neither will I regard the peace offerings of your fat beasts. Take thou away from me the noise of thy songs; for I will not hear the melody of thy viols. But let judgment run down as waters, and righteousness as a mighty stream. Have ye offered unto me sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years, O house of Israel? But ye have borne the tabernacle of your Moloch and Chiun your images, the star of your god, which ye made to yourselves. Therefore will I cause you to go into captivity beyond Damascus, saith the Lord, whose name is The God of hosts.”

**Amos prophesies of the scattering of Israel (Amos 9:1-10)**

I saw the Lord standing upon the altar: and he said,

“Smite the lintel of the door, that the posts may shake: and cut them in the head, all of them; and I will slay the last of them with the sword: he that fleeth of them shall not flee away, and he that escapeth of them shall not be delivered. Though they dig into hell, thence shall mine hand take them; though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down: And though they hide themselves in the top of Carmel, I will search and take them out thence; and though they be hid from my sight in the bottom of the sea, thence will I command the serpent, and he shall bite them:

“And though they go into captivity before their enemies, thence will I command the sword, and it shall slay them: and I will set mine eyes upon them for evil, and not for good. And the Lord God of hosts is he that toucheth the land, and it shall melt, and all that dwell therein shall mourn: and it shall rise up wholly like a flood; and shall be drowned, as by the flood of Egypt. It is he that buildeth his stories in the heaven, and hath founded his troop in the earth; he that calleth for the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The Lord is his name.

“Are ye not as children of the Ethiopians unto me, O children of Israel? Have not I brought up Israel out of the land of Egypt? And the Philistines from Caphtor, and the Syrians from Kir? Behold, the eyes of the Lord God are upon the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from off the face of the earth; saving that I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob. For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth. All the sinners of my people shall die by the sword, which say, The evil shall not overtake nor prevent us.”

**From the temple, the prophet Micah prophesies of the coming destruction of Jerusalem (Micah 1:1-12)**

The word of the Lord that came to Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem.

“Hear, all ye people; hearken, O earth, and all that therein is: and let the Lord God be witness against you, the Lord from his holy temple. For, behold, the Lord cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and tread upon the high places of the earth. And the mountains shall be molten under him, and the valleys shall be cleft, as wax before the fire, and as the waters that are poured down a steep place. For the transgression of Jacob is all this, and for the sins of the house of Israel. What is the transgression of Jacob? is it not Samaria? And what are the high places of Judah? are they not Jerusalem?

“Therefore I will make Samaria as an heap of the field, and as plantings of a vineyard: and I will pour down the stones thereof into the valley, and I will discover the foundations thereof. And all the graven images thereof shall be beaten to pieces, and all the hires thereof shall be burned with the fire, and all the idols thereof will I lay desolate: for she gathered it of the hire of an harlot, and they shall return to the hire of an harlot. Therefore I will wail and howl, I will go stripped and naked: I will make a wailing like the dragons, and mourning as the owls. For her wound is incurable; for it is come unto Judah; he is come unto the gate of my people, even to Jerusalem.

“Declare ye it not at Gath, weep ye not at all: in the house of Aphrah roll thyself in the dust. Pass ye away, thou inhabitant of Saphir, having thy shame naked: the inhabitant of Zaanan came not forth in the mourning of Beth-ezel; he shall receive of you his standing. For the inhabitant of Maroth waited carefully for good: but evil came down from the Lord unto the gate of Jerusalem.”

**Micah prophesies of the return of the Jews (Micah 2:7-13)**

[And Micah prophesied, saying,]

“O thou that art named the house of Jacob, is the spirit of the Lord straitened? Are these his doings? do not my words do good to him that walketh uprightly? Even of late my people is risen up as an enemy: ye pull off the robe with the garment from them that pass by securely as men averse from war. The women of my people have ye cast out from their pleasant houses; from their children have ye taken away my glory for ever. Arise ye, and depart; for this is not your rest: because it is polluted, it shall destroy you, even with a sore destruction.

“If a man walking in the spirit and falsehood do lie, saying, I will prophesy unto thee of wine and of strong drink; he shall even be the prophet of this people. I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of thee; I will surely gather the remnant of Israel; I will put them together as the sheep of Bozrah, as the flock in the midst of their fold: they shall make great noise by reason of the multitude of men. The breaker is come up before them: they have broken up, and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it: and their king shall pass before them, and the Lord on the head of them.”

**Jehoash, the other king of Israel, reigns in righteousness for 40 years, but allows the worship of false gods**

**(2 Kings 12:1-3)**

In the seventh year of Jehu Jehoash began to reign; and forty years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Zibiah of Beer-sheba. And Jehoash did that which was right in the sight of the Lord all his days wherein Jehoiada the priest instructed him. But the high places were not taken away: the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.

**Jehoash is killed, his son Amaziah succeeds him (2 Kings 12:19-21)**

And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And his servants arose, and made a conspiracy, and slew Joash in the house of Millo, which goeth down to Silla. For Jozachar the son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad the son of Shomer, his servants, smote him, and he died; and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David: and Amaziah his son reigned in his stead.

**The descendants of Ahaziah reign in wickedness over Israel**

**(See 2 Kings 13)**

**Both the kingdom of Judah and the Kingdom of Israel war with each other, many of their kings reign in wickedness**

**(See 2 Kings 14-15)**

***4.3***

***RIPPING AT THE SEAMS:***

***THE APOSTASY OF ISRAEL &***

***THE PROPHECIES OF ISAIAH***

***-APPROX 750 B.C.-***

**King Ahaz is extremely wicked, offers one of his sons as heathen sacrifice, blasphemes temple worship, dies, and is succeeded by Hezekiah (2 Kings 16:1-3, 10-18, 20)**

In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah Ahaz the son of Jotham king of Judah began to reign. Twenty years old was Ahaz when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem, and did not that which was right in the sight of the Lord his God, like David his father. But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, yea, and made his son to pass through the fire, according to the abominations of the heathen, whom the Lord cast out from before the children of Israel.

And king Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria, and saw an altar that was at Damascus: and king Ahaz sent to Urijah the priest the fashion of the altar, and the pattern of it, according to all the workmanship thereof.

And Urijah the priest built an altar according to all that king Ahaz had sent from Damascus: so Urijah the priest made it against king Ahaz came from Damascus. And when the king was come from Damascus, the king saw the altar: and the king approached to the altar, and offered thereon. And he burnt his burnt offering and his meat offering, and poured his drink offering, and sprinkled the blood of his peace offerings, upon the altar.

And he brought also the brasen altar, which was before the Lord, from the forefront of the house, from between the altar and the house of the Lord, and put it on the north side of the altar. And king Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest, saying, Upon the great altar burn the morning burnt offering, and the evening meat offering, and the king’s burnt sacrifice, and his meat offering, with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their meat offering, and their drink offerings; and sprinkle upon it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice: and the brasen altar shall be for me to inquire by.

Thus did Urijah the priest, according to all that king Ahaz commanded. And king Ahaz cut off the borders of the bases, and removed the laver from off them; and took down the sea from off the brasen oxen that were under it, and put it upon a pavement of stones. And the covert for the Sabbath that they had built in the house, and the king’s entry without, turned he from the house of the Lord for the king of Assyria. And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and was buried with his father’s in the city of David: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

**Israel is rejected for her sins, will be scattered (Isaiah 1:1-9, 25; Isaiah 17:1-8; Isaiah 30:1-14; Isaiah 59:1-15; Isaiah 65:1-7)**

The vision[s] of Isaiah the son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

“Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the Lord hath spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me. The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master’s crib: but Israel doth not know, my people doth not consider. Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters: they have forsaken the Lord, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel unto anger, they are gone away backward. Why should ye be stricken anymore? Ye will revolt more and more: the whole head is sick, and the whole heart faint. From the sole of the foot even unto the head there is no soundness in it; but wounds, and bruises, and putrifying sores: they have not been closed, neither bound up, neither mollified with ointment.

“Your country is desolate, your cities are burned with fire: your land, strangers devour it in your presence, and it is desolate, as overthrown by strangers. And the daughter of Zion is left as a cottage in a vineyard, as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, as a besieged city. Except the Lord of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah. And I will turn my hand upon thee, and purely purge away thy dross, and take away all thy tin.

The burden of Damascus.

“Behold, Damascus is taken away from being a city, and it shall be a ruinous heap. The cities of Aroer are forsaken: they shall be for flocks, which shall lie down, and none shall make them afraid. The fortress also shall cease from Ephraim, and the kingdom from Damascus, and the remnant of Syria: they shall be as the glory of the children of Israel, saith the Lord of hosts. And in that day it shall come to pass, that the glory of Jacob shall be made thin, and the fatness of his flesh shall wax lean.

“And it shall be as when the harvestman gathereth the corn, and reapeth the ears with his arm; and it shall be as he that gathereth ears in the valley of Rephaim. Yet gleaning grapes shall be left in it, as the shaking of an olive tree, two or three berries in the top of the uppermost bough, four or five in the outmost fruitful branches thereof, saith the Lord God of Israel. At that day shall a man look to his Maker, and his eyes shall have respect to the Holy One of Israel. And he shall not look to the altars, the work of his hands, neither shall respect that which his fingers have made, either the groves, or the images.

“Woe to the rebellious children, saith the Lord, that take counsel, but not of me; and that cover with a covering, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin: That walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt! Therefore shall the strength of Pharaoh be your shame, and the trust in the shadow of Egypt, your confusion. For his princes were at Zoan, and his ambassadors came to Hanes. They were all ashamed of a people that could not profit them, nor be an help nor profit, but a shame, and also a reproach.

“The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence come the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them. For the Egyptians shall help in vain, and to no purpose: therefore have I cried concerning this, Their strength is to sit still.

Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book, that it may be for the time to come forever and ever:

“That this is a rebellious people, lying children, children that will not hear the law of the Lord:

Which say to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophesy not unto us right things, speak unto us smooth things, prophesy deceits: Get you out of the way, turn aside out of the path, cause the Holy One of Israel to cease from before us. Wherefore thus saith the Holy One of Israel, Because ye despise this word, and trust in oppression and perverseness, and stay thereon: Therefore this iniquity shall be to you as a breach ready to fall, swelling out in a high wall, whose breaking cometh suddenly at an instant. And he shall break it as the breaking of the potters’ vessel that is broken in pieces; he shall not spare: so that there shall not be found in the bursting of it a sherd to take fire from the hearth, or to take water withal out of the pit.

“Behold, the Lord’s hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear:

But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear. For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity; your lips have spoken lies, your tongue hath muttered perverseness. None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity. They hatch cockatrice’ eggs, and weave the spider’s web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper.

“Their webs shall not become garments, neither shall they cover themselves with their works: their works are works of iniquity, and the act of violence is in their hands. Their feet run to evil, and they make haste to shed innocent blood: their thoughts are thoughts of iniquity; wasting and destruction are in their paths. The way of peace they know not; and there is no judgment in their goings: they have made them crooked paths: whosoever goeth therein shall not know peace. Therefore is judgment far from us, neither doth justice overtake us: we wait for light, but behold obscurity; for brightness, but we walk in darkness.

“We grope for the wall like the blind, and we grope as if we had no eyes: we stumble at noonday as in the night; we are in desolate places as dead men. We roar all like bears, and mourn sore like doves: we look for judgment, but there is none; for salvation, but it is far off from us. For our transgressions are multiplied before thee, and our sins testify against us: for our transgressions are with us; and as for our iniquities, we know them; In transgressing and lying against the Lord, and departing away from our God, speaking oppression and revolt, conceiving and uttering from the heart words of falsehood. And judgment is turned away backward, and justice standeth afar off: for truth is fallen in the street, and equity cannot enter.

Yea, truth faileth; and he that departeth from evil maketh himself a prey: and the Lord saw it, and it displeased him that there was no judgment.

“I am sought of them that asked not for me; I am found of them that sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation that was not called by my name. I have spread out my hands all the day unto a rebellious people, which walketh in a way that was not good, after their own thoughts; A people that provoketh me to anger continually to my face; that sacrificeth in gardens, and burneth incense upon altars of brick; Which remain among the graves, and lodge in the monuments, which eat swine’s flesh, and broth of abominable things is in their vessels;

“Which say, Stand by thyself, come not near to me; for I am holier than thou. These are a smoke in my nose, a fire that burneth all the day. Behold, it is written before me: I will not keep silence, but will recompense, even recompense into their bosom, Your iniquities, and the iniquities of your fathers together, saith the Lord, which have burned incense upon the mountains, and blasphemed me upon the hills: therefore will I measure their former work into their bosom.”

**The Lord promises to redeem Israel after being scattered (Isaiah 1:26-27; Isaiah 43:1-7)**

[And the Lord said unto the people,]

“And I will restore thy judges as at the first, and thy counsellors as at the beginning: afterward thou shalt be called, The city of righteousness, the faithful city. Zion shall be redeemed with judgment, and her converts with righteousness. But now thus saith the Lord that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine. When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee.

“For I am the Lord thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt for thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee. Since thou wast precious in my sight, thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee: therefore will I give men for thee, and people for thy life. Fear not: for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather thee from the west; I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth; Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.”

**Judah and Jerusalem to be punished for their disobedience (Isaiah 3:1-11)**

[And the Lord said unto the people,]

“For, behold, the Lord, the Lord of hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem and from Judah the stay and the staff, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water, The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient, The captain of fifty, and the honourable man, and the counsellor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator. And I will give children to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them. And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honourable. When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, saying,

‘Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let this ruin be under thy hand:’

“In that day shall he swear, saying,

‘I will not be an healer; for in my house is neither bread nor clothing: make me not a ruler of the people.’

“For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings are against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory. The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! for they have rewarded evil unto themselves.

Say ye to the righteous, that it shall be well with him: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings. Woe unto the wicked! it shall be ill with him: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.”

**Isaiah prophesies of the coming attack on Jerusalem (Isaiah 22:1-19)**

The burden of the valley of vision.

“What aileth thee now, that thou art wholly gone up to the housetops? Thou that art full of stirs, a tumultuous city, a joyous city: thy slain men are not slain with the sword, nor dead in battle. All thy rulers are fled together, they are bound by the archers: all that are found in thee are bound together, which have fled from far. Therefore said I, Look away from me; I will weep bitterly, labour not to comfort me, because of the spoiling of the daughter of my people. For it is a day of trouble, and of treading down, and of perplexity by the Lord God of hosts in the valley of vision, breaking down the walls, and of crying to the mountains.

“And Elam bare the quiver with chariots of men and horsemen, and Kir uncovered the shield. And it shall come to pass, that thy choicest valleys shall be full of chariots, and the horsemen shall set themselves in array at the gate. And he discovered the covering of Judah, and thou didst look in that day to the armour of the house of the forest. Ye have seen also the breaches of the city of David, that they are many: and ye gathered together the waters of the lower pool. And ye have numbered the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses have ye broken down to fortify the wall.

“Ye made also a ditch between the two walls for the water of the old pool: but ye have not looked unto the maker thereof, neither had respect unto him that fashioned it long ago. And in that day did the Lord God of hosts call to weeping, and to mourning, and to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth:

And behold joy and gladness, slaying oxen, and killing sheep, eating flesh, and drinking wine: let us eat and drink; for to morrow we shall die. And it was revealed in mine ears by the Lord of hosts, Surely this iniquity shall not be purged from you till ye die, saith the Lord God of hosts. Thus saith the Lord God of hosts,

‘Go, get thee unto this treasurer, even unto Shebna, which is over the house, and say,

‘What hast thou here? And whom hast thou here, that thou hast hewed thee out a sepulchre here, as he that heweth him out a sepulchre on high, and that graveth an habitation for himself in a rock?’

“Behold, the Lord will carry thee away with a mighty captivity, and will surely cover thee. He will surely violently turn and toss thee like a ball into a large country: there shalt thou die, and there the chariots of thy glory shall be the shame of thy lord’s house. And I will drive thee from thy station, and from thy state shall he pull thee down.”

**Isaiah prophesies that the Jews will reject Christ (Isaiah 6:9-12)**

And [The Lord spake unto me, saying,]

“Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.”

Then said I,

“Lord, how long?”

And he answered,

“Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate, And the Lord have removed men far away, and there be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.”

**The Prophet Isaiah, prophesies before Hezekiah, promises deliverance from Israel’s enemies (2 Kings 19:20-24)**

Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent to Hezekiah, saying,

“Thus saith the Lord God of Israel,

‘That which thou hast prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria I have heard.’

“This is the word that the Lord hath spoken concerning him;

‘The virgin the daughter of Zion hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee. Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? And against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? even against the Holy One of Israel.

‘By thy messengers thou hast reproached the Lord, and hast said, With the multitude of my chariots I am come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon, and will cut down the tall cedar trees thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the lodgings of his borders, and into the forest of his Carmel. I have digged and drunk strange waters, and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of besieged places.”

**An angel destroys 185,000 Assyrians in one night (2 Kings 19:35)**

And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the Lord went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

**The Lord declares, through Isaiah, “Beside me there is no savior.” (Isaiah 43:10-13)**

[And the Lord spake unto the people, saying]

“Ye are my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me. I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no saviour. I have declared, and have saved, and I have shewed, when there was no strange god among you: therefore ye are my witnesses, saith the Lord, that I am God. Yea, before the day was I am he; and there is none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who shall let it?

**Isaiah prophesies to Hezekiah of the coming Babylonian captivity of Judah (2 Kings 20:14-19; Isaiah 39:3-8)**

Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him,

“What said these men? And from whence came they unto thee?”

And Hezekiah said,

“They are come from a far country, even from Babylon.”

And [Isaiah] said,

“What have they seen in thine house?”

And Hezekiah answered,

“All the things that are in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not shewed them.”

And Isaiah said unto Hezekiah,

“Hear the word of the Lord. Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store unto this day, shall be carried into Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the Lord. And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.”

Then said Hezekiah to Isaiah,

“Good is the word of the Lord which thou hast spoken. For there shall be peace and truth in my days.”

**The Lord promises to gather, bless and redeem Israel and rebuild Jerusalem after it is destroyed (Isaiah 44:21-28)**

[And the Lord spake unto the people,]

“Remember these, O Jacob and Israel; for thou art my servant: I have formed thee; thou art my servant: O Israel, thou shalt not be forgotten of me. I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and, as a cloud, thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed thee. Sing, O ye heavens; for the Lord hath done it: shout, ye lower parts of the earth: break forth into singing, ye mountains, O forest, and every tree therein: for the Lord hath redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel. Thus saith the Lord, thy redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb,

‘I am the Lord that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself; That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish; That confirmeth the word of his servant, and performeth the counsel of his messengers; that saith to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be inhabited; and to the cities of Judah, Ye shall be built, and I will raise up the decayed places thereof: That saith to the deep,

‘Be dry, and I will dry up thy rivers:’

‘That saith of Cyrus,

‘He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.”

***4.4***

***ISRAEL’S TUG OF WAR BETWEEN RIGHTEOUS AND WICKED KINGS***

***-APPROX 725 B.C.-***

**Hoshea reigns in wickedness over Israel (2 Kings 17:1-2)**

In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah began Hoshea the son of Elah to reign in Samaria over Israel nine years.

And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, but not as the kings of Israel that were before him.

**Israel completely forsakes the Lord in favor of Baal (2 Kings 17:6-17)**

In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes. For so it was, that the children of Israel had sinned against the Lord their God, which had brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and had feared other gods, And walked in the statutes of the heathen, whom the Lord cast out from before the children of Israel, and of the kings of Israel, which they had made.

And the children of Israel did secretly those things that were not right against the Lord their God, and they built them high places in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city. And they set them up images and groves in every high hill, and under every green tree: And there they burnt incense in all the high places, as did the heathen whom the Lord carried away before them; and wrought wicked things to provoke the Lord to anger: For they served idols, whereof the Lord had said unto them, Ye shall not do this thing.

Yet the Lord testified against Israel, and against Judah, by all the prophets, and by all the seers, saying,

“Turn ye from your evil ways, and keep my commandments and my statutes, according to all the law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by my servants the prophets.”

Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers, that did not believe in the Lord their God. And they rejected his statutes, and his covenant that he made with their fathers, and his testimonies which he testified against them; and they followed vanity, and became vain, and went after the heathen that were round about them, concerning whom the Lord had charged them, that they should not do like them. And they left all the commandments of the Lord their God, and made them molten images, even two calves, and made a grove, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served Baal. And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the Lord, to provoke him to anger.

**As a result of Israel’s forsaking the Lord, 10 of the Tribes are taken captive (2 Kings 17:18)**

Therefore the Lord was very angry with Israel, and removed them out of his sight: there was none left but the tribe of Judah only.

**The remaining tribe of Judah also reject the Lord, are rejected of him and taken captive by their enemies**

**(2 Kings 17:19-23)**

Also Judah kept not the commandments of the Lord their God, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they made.

And the Lord rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until he had cast them out of his sight. For he rent Israel from the house of David; and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king: and Jeroboam drave Israel from following the Lord, and made them sin a great sin. For the children of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam which he did; they departed not from them; Until the Lord removed Israel out of his sight, as he had said by all his servants the prophets. So was Israel carried away out of their own land to Assyria unto this day.

**Hezekiah, son of Ahaz, reigns in righteousness, restores Temple worship (2 Kings 18:1-8; 2 Chron 29:1-3)**

Now it came to pass in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign. Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. His mother’s name also was Abi, the daughter of Zachariah. And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, according to all that David his father did. He removed the high places, and brake the images, and cut down the groves, and brake in pieces the brasen serpent that Moses had made: for unto those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it: and he called it Nehushtan. He trusted in the Lord God of Israel; so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor any that were before him. For he clave to the Lord, and departed not from following him, but kept his commandments, which the Lord commanded Moses. And the Lord was with him; and he prospered whithersoever he went forth: and he rebelled against the king of Assyria, and served him not. He smote the Philistines, even unto Gaza, and the borders thereof, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city.

Hezekiah began to reign when he was five and twenty years old, and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, according to all that David his father had done. He in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the house of the Lord, and repaired them.

**Ephraim marries outside of Israel, worships false gods, and rejects the Lord (Hosea 7:1-10; Hosea 11:1-4; Hosea 12:14; Hosea 13:1-3)**

[And the Lord spake unto Israel, saying]

“When I would have healed Israel, then the iniquity of Ephraim was discovered, and the wickedness of Samaria: for they commit falsehood; and the thief cometh in, and the troop of robbers spoileth without. And they consider not in their hearts that I remember all their wickedness: now their own doings have beset them about; they are before my face. They make the king glad with their wickedness, and the princes with their lies. They are all adulterers, as an oven heated by the baker, who ceaseth from raising after he hath kneaded the dough, until it be leavened. In the day of our king the princes have made him sick with bottles of wine; he stretched out his hand with scorners.

“For they have made ready their heart like an oven, whiles they lie in wait: their baker sleepeth all the night; in the morning it burneth as a flaming fire. They are all hot as an oven, and have devoured their judges; all their kings are fallen: there is none among them that calleth unto me. Ephraim, he hath mixed himself among the people; Ephraim is a cake not turned. Strangers have devoured his strength, and he knoweth it not: yea, gray hairs are here and there upon him, yet he knoweth not. And the pride of Israel testifieth to his face: and they do not return to the Lord their God, nor seek him for all this.

“When Israel was a child, then I loved him, and called my son out of Egypt. As they called them, so they went from them: they sacrificed unto Baalim, and burned incense to graven images. I taught Ephraim also to go, taking them by their arms; but they knew not that I healed them. I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love: and I was to them as they that take off the yoke on their jaws, and I laid meat unto them. Ephraim provoked him to anger most bitterly: therefore shall he leave his blood upon him, and his reproach shall his Lord return unto him.

“When Ephraim spake trembling, he exalted himself in Israel; but when he offended in Baal, he died.

And now they sin more and more, and have made them molten images of their silver, and idols according to their own understanding, all of it the work of the craftsmen: they say of them, Let the men that sacrifice kiss the calves. Therefore they shall be as the morning cloud, and as the early dew that passeth away, as the chaff that is driven with the whirlwind out of the floor, and as the smoke out of the chimney.”

**Manasseh, son of Hezekiah reigns in wickedness, worships Baal (2 Kings 20:21; 21:1-9)**

And Hezekiah slept with his fathers: and Manasseh his son reigned in his stead. Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign, and reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Hephzi-bah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, after the abominations of the heathen, whom the Lord cast out before the children of Israel.

For he built up again the high places which Hezekiah his father had destroyed; and he reared up altars for Baal, and made a grove, as did Ahab king of Israel; and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them.

And he built altars in the house of the Lord, of which the Lord said, In Jerusalem will I put my name. And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the Lord. And he made his son pass through the fire, and observed times, and used enchantments, and dealt with familiar spirits and wizards: he wrought much wickedness in the sight of the Lord, to provoke him to anger. And he set a graven image of the grove that he had made in the house, of which the Lord said to David, and to Solomon his son,

“In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever:

Neither will I make the feet of Israel move any more out of the land which I gave their fathers; only if they will observe to do according to all that I have commanded them, and according to all the law that my servant Moses commanded them.”

But they hearkened not: and Manasseh seduced them to do more evil than did the nations whom the Lord destroyed before the children of Israel.

**The Lord reveals to prophets that Judah and Jerusalem will be destroyed because of their wickedness (2 Kings 21:10-16)**

And the Lord spake by his servants the prophets, saying,

“Because Manasseh king of Judah hath done these abominations, and hath done wickedly above all that the Amorites did, which were before him, and hath made Judah also to sin with his idols: Therefore thus saith the Lord God of Israel, Behold, I am bringing such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah, that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle. And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab: and I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it, and turning it upside down.

“And I will forsake the remnant of mine inheritance, and deliver them into the hand of their enemies; and they shall become a prey and a spoil to all their enemies; Because they have done that which was evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their fathers came forth out of Egypt, even unto this day. Moreover Manasseh shed innocent blood very much, till he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another; beside his sin wherewith he made Judah to sin, in doing that which was evil in the sight of the Lord.”

**Amnon, son of Manasseh, rejects the Lord (2 Kings 21:19-26)**

Amon was twenty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Meshullemeth, the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, as his father Manasseh did. And he walked in all the way that his father walked in, and served the idols that his father served, and worshipped them: And he forsook the Lord God of his fathers, and walked not in the way of the Lord. And the servants of Amon conspired against him, and slew the king in his own house. And the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead. Now the rest of the acts of Amon which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And he was buried in his sepulchre in the garden of Uzza: and Josiah his son reigned in his stead.

**Josiah, son of Amnon, reigns in righteousness, repairs the Temple, worships the Lord (2 Kings 22:1-7)**

Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned thirty and one years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Jedidah, the daughter of Adaiah of Boscath. And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, and walked in all the way of David his father, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left. And it came to pass in the eighteenth year of king Josiah, that the king sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, the son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of the Lord, saying,

“Go up to Hilkiah the high priest, that he may sum the silver which is brought into the house of the Lord, which the keepers of the door have gathered of the people: And let them deliver it into the hand of the doers of the work, that have the oversight of the house of the Lord: and let them give it to the doers of the work which is in the house of the Lord, to repair the breaches of the house, Unto carpenters, and builders, and masons, and to buy timber and hewn stone to repair the house”

Howbeit there was no reckoning made with them of the money that was delivered into their hand, because they dealt faithfully.

**Josiah removes all Baal worship, Israel serves the Lord**

**(See 2 Kings 23:1-25; 2 Chron 34:1-3)**

**Despite the righteousness of Josiah, Israel’s collective day of repentance had past, the Lord pronounces curses upon them**

**(2 Kings 23:26-27)**

Notwithstanding the Lord turned not from the fierceness of his great wrath, wherewith his anger was kindled against Judah, because of all the provocations that Manasseh had provoked him withal. And the Lord said,

“I will remove Judah also out of my sight, as I have removed Israel, and will cast off this city Jerusalem which I have chosen, and the house of which I said, My name shall be there.”

**Following the death of Josiah in battle, his son Jehoiakim succeeds him and reigns in wickedness (2 Kings 23:36-37)**

Jehoiakim was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Zebudah, the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, according to all that his fathers had done.

**Jehoiakim and his son, rebel against his ally, the King of Babylon, King Nebuchadnezzar. As a result, Jerusalem is invaded, many in Judah are taken captive, and the temple is defiled and robbed. (2 Kings 24:1-16)**

In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years: then he turned and rebelled against him. And the Lord sent against him bands of the Chaldees, and bands of the Syrians, and bands of the Moabites, and bands of the children of Ammon, and sent them against Judah to destroy it, according to the word of the Lord, which he spake by his servants the prophets. Surely at the commandment of the Lord came this upon Judah, to remove them out of his sight, for the sins of Manasseh, according to all that he did;

And also for the innocent blood that he shed: for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood; which the Lord would not pardon. Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? So Jehoiakim slept with his fathers: and Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead.

And the king of Egypt came not again any more out of his land: for the king of Babylon had taken from the river of Egypt unto the river Euphrates all that pertained to the king of Egypt. Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months. And his mother’s name was Nehushta, the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem.

And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, according to all that his father had done. At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against Jerusalem, and the city was besieged. And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against the city, and his servants did besiege it.

And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his officers: and the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign. And he carried out thence all the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king’s house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold which Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of the Lord, as the Lord had said. And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths: none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land. And he carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon, and the king’s mother, and the king’s wives, and his officers, and the mighty of the land, those carried he into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon. And all the men of might, even seven thousand, and craftsmen and smiths a thousand, all that were strong and apt for war, even them the king of Babylon brought captive to Babylon.

******

***CHAPTER 5:***

***THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL***

******

***5.1***

***THE BEGINNING OF ZEDEKIAH’S REIGN:***

***JEREMIAH REJECTED,***

***THE FIRST 9 YEARS, PT 1***

***-APPROX 600 B.C.-***

**Nebuchadnezzar makes his uncle, Zedekiah, the king of Jerusalem (2 Kings 24:17-18)**

And the king of Babylon made Mattaniah his father’s brother king in his stead, and changed his name to Zedekiah. Zedekiah was twenty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

**Israel grossly condemned for rejecting the Lord in favor of idol worship**

**(See Jer 2-Jer 3:11)**

**Judgments poured out upon Israel because of her sins**

**(See Jer 5:1-31)**

**Jerusalem will be destroyed because of Israel’s sins and invaded by a cruel people from the North (Jer 6:1-23)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied before the people, saying]

“O ye children of Benjamin, gather yourselves to flee out of the midst of Jerusalem, and blow the trumpet in Tekoa, and set up a sign of fire in Beth-haccerem: for evil appeareth out of the north, and great destruction.

I have likened the daughter of Zion to a comely and delicate woman. The shepherds with their flocks shall come unto her; they shall pitch their tents against her round about; they shall feed every one in his place.

Prepare ye war against her; arise, and let us go up at noon. Woe unto us! For the day goeth away, for the shadows of the evening are stretched out. Arise, and let us go by night, and let us destroy her palaces. For thus hath the Lord of hosts said,

‘Hew ye down trees, and cast a mount against Jerusalem: this is the city to be visited; she is wholly oppression in the midst of her.’

“As a fountain casteth out her waters, so she casteth out her wickedness: violence and spoil is heard in her; before me continually is grief and wounds. Be thou instructed, O Jerusalem, lest my soul depart from thee; lest I make thee desolate, a land not inhabited. Thus saith the Lord of hosts,

‘They shall throughly glean the remnant of Israel as a vine: turn back thine hand as a grapegatherer into the baskets. To whom shall I speak, and give warning, that they may hear? Behold, their ear is uncircumcised, and they cannot hearken: behold, the word of the Lord is unto them a reproach; they have no delight in it. Therefore I am full of the fury of the Lord; I am weary with holding in: I will pour it out upon the children abroad, and upon the assembly of young men together: for even the husband with the wife shall be taken, the aged with him that is full of days.

And their houses shall be turned unto others, with their fields and wives together: for I will stretch out my hand upon the inhabitants of the land,’

“saith the Lord. For from the least of them even unto the greatest of them every one is given to covetousness; and from the prophet even unto the priest every one dealeth falsely. They have healed also the hurt of the daughter of my people slightly, saying,

‘Peace, peace;’

“when there is no peace. Were they ashamed when they had committed abomination? Nay, they were not at all ashamed, neither could they blush: therefore they shall fall among them that fall: at the time that I visit them they shall be cast down, saith the Lord. Thus saith the Lord,

‘Stand ye in the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, where is the good way, and walk therein, and ye shall find rest for your souls. But they said,

‘We will not walk therein.’

‘Also I set watchmen over you, saying,

‘Hearken to the sound of the trumpet.’

‘But they said,

‘We will not hearken.’

“Therefore hear, ye nations, and know, O congregation, what is among them. Hear, O earth: behold, I will bring evil upon this people, even the fruit of their thoughts, because they have not hearkened unto my words, nor to my law, but rejected it. To what purpose cometh there to me incense from Sheba, and the sweet cane from a far country? your burnt offerings are not acceptable, nor your sacrifices sweet unto me.

Therefore thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will lay stumbling blocks before this people, and the fathers and the sons together shall fall upon them; the neighbour and his friend shall perish. Thus saith the Lord,

‘Behold, a people cometh from the north country, and a great nation shall be raised from the sides of the earth. They shall lay hold on bow and spear; they are cruel, and have no mercy; their voice roareth like the sea; and they ride upon horses, set in array as men for war against thee, O daughter of Zion.”

**Israel condemned for her sins: the temple defiled, idolatry, and children offered in sacrifice to heathen gods**

**(See Jer 7:8-31)**

**Jerusalem will be left desolate (Jer 7:32-34)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying, thus said the Lord]

“Therefore, behold, the days come…that it shall no more be called Tophet, nor the valley of the son of Hinnom, but the valley of slaughter: for they shall bury in Tophet, till there be no place. And the carcases of this people shall be meat for the fowls of the heaven, and for the beasts of the earth; and none shall fray them away. Then will I cause to cease from the cities of Judah, and from the streets of Jerusalem, the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride: for the land shall be desolate.

**The time for repentance has passed the inhabitants of Jerusalem**

**(See Jer 8)**

**Many in Jerusalem to be completely destroyed (Jer 9:17-22)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts,

‘Consider ye, and call for the mourning women, that they may come; and send for cunning women, that they may come: And let them make haste, and take up a wailing for us, that our eyes may run down with tears, and our eyelids gush out with waters. For a voice of wailing is heard out of Zion, How are we spoiled! we are greatly confounded, because we have forsaken the land, because our dwellings have cast us out.

‘Yet hear the word of the Lord, O ye women, and let your ear receive the word of his mouth, and teach your daughters wailing, and everyone her neighbour lamentation. For death is come up into our windows, and is entered into our palaces, to cut off the children from without, and the young men from the streets. Speak, even the carcases of men shall fall as dung upon the open field, and as the handful after the harvestman, and none shall gather them.”

**Those not killed in the invasion of Jerusalem to be scattered among the nations (Jer 9:23-26)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“Thus saith the Lord,

‘Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty man glory in his might, let not the rich man glory in his riches: But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I am the Lord which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these things I delight, saith the Lord. Behold, the days come… that I will punish all them which are circumcised with the uncircumcised; Egypt, and Judah, and Edom, and the children of Ammon, and Moab, and all that are in the utmost corners, that dwell in the wilderness: for all these nations are uncircumcised, and all the house of Israel are uncircumcised in the heart.”

**The Jews are cursed for breaking their covenants and God will not hear their prayers**

**(See Jer 11)**

**Jeremiah prophesies of the utter destruction of Jerusalem and her inhabitants for worshipping false gods**

**(See Jer 15-16:13)**

**Israel’s sins are so great that they can’t be blotted out (Jer 17:1-4)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“The sin of Judah is written with a pen of iron, and with the point of a diamond: it is graven upon the table of their heart, and upon the horns of your altars; Whilst their children remember their altars and their groves by the green trees upon the high hills. O my mountain in the field, I will give thy substance and all thy treasures to the spoil, and thy high places for sin, throughout all thy borders.

And thou, even thyself, shalt discontinue from thine heritage that I gave thee; and I will cause thee to serve thine enemies in the land which thou knowest not: for ye have kindled a fire in mine anger, which shall burn forever.”

**Israel rejected the Sabbath so the Lord rejected them (Jer 17:19-27)**

Thus said the Lord unto me;

“Go and stand in the gate of the children of the people, whereby the kings of Judah come in, and by the which they go out, and in all the gates of Jerusalem; And say unto them,

‘Hear ye the word of the Lord, ye kings of Judah, and all Judah, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, that enter in by these gates: Thus saith the Lord;’

“Take heed to yourselves, and bear no burden on the Sabbath day, nor bring it in by the gates of Jerusalem;

Neither carry forth a burden out of your houses on the Sabbath day, neither do ye any work, but hallow ye the sabbath day, as I commanded your fathers. But they obeyed not, neither inclined their ear, but made their neck stiff, that they might not hear, nor receive instruction.

“And it shall come to pass, if ye diligently hearken unto me, saith the Lord, to bring in no burden through the gates of this city on the sabbath day, but hallow the sabbath day, to do no work therein; Then shall there enter into the gates of this city kings and princes sitting upon the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses, they, and their princes, the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: and this city shall remain forever.

“And they shall come from the cities of Judah, and from the places about Jerusalem, and from the land of Benjamin, and from the plain, and from the mountains, and from the south, bringing burnt offerings, and sacrifices, and meat offerings, and incense, and bringing sacrifices of praise, unto the house of the Lord.

But if ye will not hearken unto me to hallow the sabbath day, and not to bear a burden, even entering in at the gates of Jerusalem on the sabbath day; then will I kindle a fire in the gates thereof, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem, and it shall not be quenched.”

**Israel condemned for rejecting the Prophet, Jeremiah; Punishments pronounced upon them (Jer 18:18-23)**

Then said they,

“Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words.

[Then Jeremiah cried unto the Lord, saying]

“Give heed to me, O Lord, and hearken to the voice of them that contend with me. Shall evil be recompensed for good? for they have digged a pit for my soul. Remember that I stood before thee to speak good for them, and to turn away thy wrath from them. Therefore deliver up their children to the famine, and pour out their blood by the force of the sword; and let their wives be bereaved of their children, and be widows; and let their men be put to death; let their young men be slain by the sword in battle.

“Let a cry be heard from their houses, when thou shalt bring a troop suddenly upon them: for they have digged a pit to take me, and hid snares for my feet. Yet, Lord, thou knowest all their counsel against me to slay me: forgive not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before thee; deal thus with them in the time of thine anger.”

**Israel condemned for sacrificing their children to false gods; Great punishments pronounced upon them (Jer 19:1-15)**

Thus saith the Lord,

“Go and get a potter’s earthen bottle, and take of the ancients of the people, and of the ancients of the priests; And go forth unto the valley of the son of Hinnom, which is by the entry of the east gate, and proclaim there the words that I shall tell thee, And say,

‘Hear ye the word of the Lord, O kings of Judah, and inhabitants of Jerusalem; Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel;’

“Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, the which whosoever heareth, his ears shall tingle. Because they have forsaken me, and have estranged this place, and have burned incense in it unto other gods, whom neither they nor their fathers have known, nor the kings of Judah, and have filled this place with the blood of innocents; They have built also the high places of Baal, to burn their sons with fire for burnt offerings unto Baal, which I commanded not, nor spake it, neither came it into my mind: Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that this place shall no more be called Tophet, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of slaughter.

“And I will make void the counsel of Judah and Jerusalem in this place; and I will cause them to fall by the sword before their enemies, and by the hands of them that seek their lives: and their carcases will I give to be meat for the fowls of the heaven, and for the beasts of the earth. And I will make this city desolate, and an hissing; every one that passeth thereby shall be astonished and hiss because of all the plagues thereof.

And I will cause them to eat the flesh of their sons and the flesh of their daughters, and they shall eat every one the flesh of his friend in the siege and straitness, wherewith their enemies, and they that seek their lives, shall straiten them. Then shalt thou break the bottle in the sight of the men that go with thee, And shalt say unto them,

‘Thus saith the Lord of hosts;’

“Even so will I break this people and this city, as one breaketh a potter’s vessel, that cannot be made whole again: and they shall bury them in Tophet, till there be no place to bury. Thus will I do unto this place, saith the Lord, and to the inhabitants thereof, and even make this city as Tophet: And the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses of the kings of Judah, shall be defiled as the place of Tophet, because of all the houses upon whose roofs they have burned incense unto all the host of heaven, and have poured out drink offerings unto other gods.”

Then came Jeremiah from Tophet, whither the Lord had sent him to prophesy; and he stood in the court of the Lord’s house; and said to all the people,

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel;

‘Behold, I will bring upon this city and upon all her towns all the evil that I have pronounced against it, because they have hardened their necks, that they might not hear my words.”

**Jeremiah put in jail (Jer 20:1-2)**

Now Pashur the son of Immer the priest, who was also chief governor in the house of the Lord, heard that Jeremiah prophesied these things. Then Pashur smote Jeremiah the prophet, and put him in the stocks that were in the high gate of Benjamin, which was by the house of the Lord.

***5.2***

***ZEDEKIAH PROVOKES GOD’S ANGER AGAINST ISRAEL,***

***THE FIRST 9 YEARS, PT 2***

***-APPROX 600 B.C.-***

**Zedekiah refuses to serve the Lord (597 BC) (2 Kings 24:18-19; 2 Chron 36:11-13)**

Zedekiah was twenty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, according to all that Jehoiakim had done. Zedekiah was one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord his God, and humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet speaking from the mouth of the Lord. And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God: but he stiffened his neck, and hardened his heart from turning unto the Lord God of Israel.

**Jeremiah prophesies from jail of the coming invasion of Jerusalem (Jer 20:1-14)**

Now Pashur the son of Immer the priest, who was also chief governor in the house of the Lord, heard that Jeremiah prophesied these things. Then Pashur smote Jeremiah the prophet, and put him in the stocks that were in the high gate of Benjamin, which was by the house of the Lord. And it came to pass on the morrow, that Pashur brought forth Jeremiah out of the stocks. Then said Jeremiah unto him,

“The Lord hath not called thy name Pashur, but Magor-missabib. For thus saith the Lord,

‘Behold, I will make thee a terror to thyself, and to all thy friends: and they shall fall by the sword of their enemies, and thine eyes shall behold it: and I will give all Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall carry them captive into Babylon, and shall slay them with the sword.

Moreover I will deliver all the strength of this city, and all the labours thereof, and all the precious things thereof, and all the treasures of the kings of Judah will I give into the hand of their enemies, which shall spoil them, and take them, and carry them to Babylon.

‘And thou, Pashur, and all that dwell in thine house shall go into captivity: and thou shalt come to Babylon, and there thou shalt die, and shalt be buried there, thou, and all thy friends, to whom thou hast prophesied lies.’

“O Lord, thou hast deceived me, and I was deceived: thou art stronger than I, and hast prevailed: I am in derision daily, every one mocketh me. For since I spake, I cried out, I cried violence and spoil; because the word of the Lord was made a reproach unto me, and a derision, daily…I will not make mention of him, nor speak any more in his name. But his word was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not stay. For I heard the defaming of many, fear on every side. Report, say they, and we will report it. All my familiars watched for my halting, saying, Peradventure he will be enticed, and we shall prevail against him, and we shall take our revenge on him.

“But the Lord is with me as a mighty terrible one: therefore my persecutors shall stumble, and they shall not prevail: they shall be greatly ashamed; for they shall not prosper: their everlasting confusion shall never be forgotten. But, O Lord of hosts, that triest the righteous, and seest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto thee have I opened my cause. Sing unto the Lord, praise ye the Lord: for he hath delivered the soul of the poor from the hand of evildoers. Cursed be the day wherein I was born: let not the day wherein my mother bare me be blessed.”

**Zedekiah and the Jews to be cursed and scattered (Jer 24:1-10)**

[And Jeremiah spake, saying]

“The Lord shewed me, and, behold, two baskets of figs were set before the temple of the Lord, after that Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon had carried away captive Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, and the princes of Judah, with the carpenters and smiths, from Jerusalem, and had brought them to Babylon.

One basket had very good figs, even like the figs that are first ripe: and the other basket had very naughty figs, which could not be eaten, they were so bad.

“Then said the Lord unto me,

‘What seest thou, Jeremiah?’

“And I said,

‘Figs; the good figs, very good; and the evil, very evil, that cannot be eaten, they are so evil.’

Again the word of the Lord came unto me, saying,

“Thus saith the Lord, the God of Israel; Like these good figs, so will I acknowledge them that are carried away captive of Judah, whom I have sent out of this place into the land of the Chaldeans for their good.

For I will set mine eyes upon them for good, and I will bring them again to this land: and I will build them, and not pull them down; and I will plant them, and not pluck them up. And I will give them an heart to know me, that I am the Lord: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God: for they shall return unto me with their whole heart.

“And as the evil figs, which cannot be eaten, they are so evil; So will I give Zedekiah the king of Judah, and his princes, and the residue of Jerusalem, that remain in this land, and them that dwell in the land of Egypt:

And I will deliver them to be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth for their hurt, to be a reproach and a proverb, a taunt and a curse, in all places whither I shall drive them. And I will send the sword, the famine, and the pestilence, among them, till they be consumed from off the land that I gave unto them and to their fathers.”

**Jeremiah prophesies of the seventy years of captivity of Israel for worshipping false gods (Jer 25:4-11; Jer 29:4-10)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“And the Lord hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear. They said, Turn ye again now everyone from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the Lord hath given unto you and to your fathers forever and ever: And go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt. Yet ye have not hearkened unto me, saith the Lord; that ye might provoke me to anger with the works of your hands to your own hurt. Therefore thus saith the Lord of hosts; Because ye have not heard my words,

“Behold, I will send and take all the families of the north, saith the Lord, and Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will bring them against this land, and against the inhabitants thereof, and against all these nations round about, and will utterly destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and perpetual desolations. Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle. And this whole land shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel, unto all that are carried away captives, whom I have caused to be carried away from Jerusalem unto Babylon;

‘Build ye houses, and dwell in them; and plant gardens, and eat the fruit of them; Take ye wives, and beget sons and daughters; and take wives for your sons, and give your daughters to husbands, that they may bear sons and daughters; that ye may be increased there, and not diminished. And seek the peace of the city whither I have caused you to be carried away captives, and pray unto the Lord for it: for in the peace thereof shall ye have peace.

‘Let not your prophets and your diviners, that be in the midst of you, deceive you, neither hearken to your dreams which ye cause to be dreamed. For they prophesy falsely unto you in my name: I have not sent them… [Therefore] after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place.”

**Israel promised that they will return after seventy years in captivity (Jer 25:12-14)**

[And Jeremiah continued, saying]

‘And it shall come to pass, when seventy years are accomplished, that I will punish the king of Babylon, and that nation, saith the Lord, for their iniquity, and the land of the Chaldeans, and will make it perpetual desolations. And I will bring upon that land all my words which I have pronounced against it, even all that is written in this book, which Jeremiah hath prophesied against all the nations. For many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of them also: and I will recompense them according to their deeds, and according to the works of their own hands.’

**The people in the temple reject the prophesies of destruction by Jeremiah (Jer 26:4-9)**

[And the Lord spake unto Jeremiah, saying]

“And thou shalt say unto them,

‘Thus saith the Lord;

‘If ye will not hearken to me, to walk in my law, which I have set before you, To hearken to the words of my servants the prophets, whom I sent unto you, both rising up early, and sending them, but ye have not hearkened; Then will I make this house like Shiloh, and will make this city a curse to all the nations of the earth.”

So the priests and the prophets and all the people heard Jeremiah speaking these words in the house of the Lord.

Now it came to pass, when Jeremiah had made an end of speaking all that the Lord had commanded him to speak unto all the people, that the priests and the prophets and all the people took him, saying,

“Thou shalt surely die. Why hast thou prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying,

‘This house shall be like Shiloh, and this city shall be desolate without an inhabitant?’

And all the people were gathered against Jeremiah in the house of the Lord.

**Jeremiah prophesies of the scattering of the Jews throughout all the earth (Jer 34:12-22)**

Therefore the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah from the Lord, saying,

“Thus saith the Lord, the God of Israel;

‘I made a covenant with your fathers in the day that I brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondmen, saying,

‘At the end of seven years let ye go every man his brother an Hebrew, which hath been sold unto thee; and when he hath served thee six years, thou shalt let him go free from thee: but your fathers hearkened not unto me, neither inclined their ear. And ye were now turned, and had done right in my sight, in proclaiming liberty every man to his neighbour; and ye had made a covenant before me in the house which is called by my name:

‘But ye turned and polluted my name, and caused every man his servant, and every man his handmaid, whom ye had set at liberty at their pleasure, to return, and brought them into subjection, to be unto you for servants and for handmaids.’

“Therefore thus saith the Lord;

‘Ye have not hearkened unto me, in proclaiming liberty, every one to his brother, and every man to his neighbour: behold, I proclaim a liberty for you, saith the Lord, to the sword, to the pestilence, and to the famine; and I will make you to be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth. And I will give the men that have transgressed my covenant, which have not performed the words of the covenant which they had made before me, when they cut the calf in twain, and passed between the parts thereof, The princes of Judah, and the princes of Jerusalem, the eunuchs, and the priests, and all the people of the land, which passed between the parts of the calf;

‘I will even give them into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of them that seek their life: and their dead bodies shall be for meat unto the fowls of the heaven, and to the beasts of the earth. And Zedekiah king of Judah and his princes will I give into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of them that seek their life, and into the hand of the king of Babylon’s army, which are gone up from you. Behold, I will command…and cause them to return to this city; and they shall fight against it, and take it, and burn it with fire: and I will make the cities of Judah a desolation without an inhabitant.”

**Jeremiah is again cast into prison by Zedekiah (Jer 37:16; Jer 38:6)**

When Jeremiah was entered into the dungeon, and into the cabins, and Jeremiah had remained there many days;

Then took they Jeremiah, and cast him into the dungeon of Malchiah the son of Hammelech, that was in the court of the prison: and they let down Jeremiah with cords. And in the dungeon there was no water, but mire: so Jeremiah sunk in the mire.

**Ezekiel called as a prophet unto Israel (Ezekiel 2:1-5; 3:4-17)**

And [the Lord] said unto me,

“Son of man, stand upon thy feet, and I will speak unto thee. And the spirit entered into me when he spake unto me, and set me upon my feet, that I heard him that spake unto me…Son of man, I send thee to the children of Israel, to a rebellious nation that hath rebelled against me: they and their fathers have transgressed against me, even unto this very day. For they are impudent children and stiffhearted. I do send thee unto them; and thou shalt say unto them,

‘Thus saith the Lord God.’

And they, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear, (for they are a rebellious house,) yet shall know that there hath been a prophet among them.”

**The Prophet Ezekiel prophesies of the coming destruction of Jerusalem and scattering of Israel as a result of idolatry**

**(Ezekiel 11:4-12; Ezekiel 12:8-16; Ezekiel 24:6-14)**

**(See also Ezekiel 5-8; Ezekiel 16:1-59)**

[And the Lord commanded me, saying]

“Therefore prophesy against them, prophesy, O son of man.”

And the Spirit of the Lord fell upon me, and said unto me,

“Speak; Thus saith the Lord; Thus have ye said, O house of Israel: for I know the things that come into your mind, every one of them. Ye have multiplied your slain in this city, and ye have filled the streets thereof with the slain.

“Therefore thus saith the Lord God;

‘Your slain whom ye have laid in the midst of it, they are the flesh, and this city is the caldron: but I will bring you forth out of the midst of it. Ye have feared the sword; and I will bring a sword upon you. And I will bring you out of the midst thereof, and deliver you into the hands of strangers, and will execute judgments among you. Ye shall fall by the sword; I will judge you in the border of Israel; and ye shall know that I am the Lord.

‘This city shall not be your caldron, neither shall ye be the flesh in the midst thereof; but I will judge you in the border of Israel: And ye shall know that I am the Lord: for ye have not walked in my statutes, neither executed my judgments, but have done after the manners of the heathen that are round about you.’

“And in the morning came the word of the Lord unto me, saying,

‘Son of man, hath not the house of Israel, the rebellious house, said unto thee,

‘What doest thou?’

‘Say thou unto them,

‘Thus saith the Lord God;

‘This burden concerneth the prince in Jerusalem, and all the house of Israel that are among them.’

‘Say,

‘I am your sign: like as I have done, so shall it be done unto them: they shall remove and go into captivity. And the prince that is among them shall bear upon his shoulder in the twilight, and shall go forth: they shall dig through the wall to carry out thereby: he shall cover his face, that he see not the ground with his eyes. My net also will I spread upon him, and he shall be taken in my snare: and I will bring him to Babylon to the land of the Chaldeans; yet shall he not see it, though he shall die there.

‘And I will scatter toward every wind all that are about him to help him, and all his bands and I will draw out the sword after them. And they shall know that I am the Lord, when I shall scatter them among the nations, and disperse them in the countries. But I will leave a few men of them from the sword, from the famine, and from the pestilence; that they may declare all their abominations among the heathen whither they come; and they shall know that I am the Lord.

“Wherefore thus saith the Lord God;

‘Woe to the bloody city, to the pot whose scum is therein, and whose scum is not gone out of it! bring it out piece by piece; let no lot fall upon it. For her blood is in the midst of her; she set it upon the top of a rock; she poured it not upon the ground, to cover it with dust; That it might cause fury to come up to take vengeance; I have set her blood upon the top of a rock, that it should not be covered. Therefore thus saith the Lord God; Woe to the bloody city! I will even make the pile for fire great.

‘Heap on wood, kindle the fire, consume the flesh, and spice it well, and let the bones be burned.

Then set it empty upon the coals thereof, that the brass of it may be hot, and may burn, and that the filthiness of it may be molten in it, that the scum of it may be consumed. She hath wearied herself with lies, and her great scum went not forth out of her: her scum shall be in the fire. In thy filthiness is lewdness: because I have purged thee, and thou wast not purged, thou shalt not be purged from thy filthiness any more, till I have caused my fury to rest upon thee. I the Lord have spoken it: it shall come to pass, and I will do it; I will not go back, neither will I spare, neither will I repent; according to thy ways, and according to thy doings, shall they judge thee, saith the Lord God.’

**Israel has continually rejected the Lord since the days of deliverance from Egypt so he has now rejected them**

**(See Ezekiel 20:1-32)**

**Israel is rejected of God because they have rejected him (Hosea 4:1-19; Hosea 9:1-9)**

[And Hosea spake unto the people, saying]

“Hear the word of the Lord, ye children of Israel: for the Lord hath a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, because there is no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of God in the land. By swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and committing adultery, they break out, and blood toucheth blood. Therefore shall the land mourn, and every one that dwelleth therein shall languish, with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven; yea, the fishes of the sea also shall be taken away.

“Yet let no man strive, nor reprove another: for thy people are as they that strive with the priest. Therefore shalt thou fall in the day, and the prophet also shall fall with thee in the night, and I will destroy thy mother.

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children. As they were increased, so they sinned against me: therefore will I change their glory into shame.

“They eat up the sin of my people, and they set their heart on their iniquity. And there shall be, like people, like priest: and I will punish them for their ways, and reward them their doings. For they shall eat, and not have enough: they shall commit whoredom, and shall not increase: because they have left off to take heed to the Lord. Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart. My people ask counsel at their stocks, and their staff declareth unto them: for the spirit of whoredoms hath caused them to err, and they have gone a whoring from under their God.

“They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains, and burn incense upon the hills, under oaks and poplars and elms, because the shadow thereof is good: therefore your daughters shall commit whoredom, and your spouses shall commit adultery. I will not punish your daughters when they commit whoredom, nor your spouses when they commit adultery: for themselves are separated with whores, and they sacrifice with harlots: therefore the people that doth not understand shall fall. Though thou, Israel, play the harlot, yet let not Judah offend; and come not ye unto Gilgal, neither go ye up to Beth-aven, nor swear, The Lord liveth.

“For Israel slideth back as a backsliding heifer: now the Lord will feed them as a lamb in a large place.

Ephraim is joined to idols: let him alone. Their drink is sour: they have committed whoredom continually: her rulers with shame do love, Give ye. The wind hath bound her up in her wings, and they shall be ashamed because of their sacrifices. Rejoice not, O Israel, for joy, as other people: for thou hast gone a whoring from thy God, thou hast loved a reward upon every corn floor.

“The floor and the winepress shall not feed them, and the new wine shall fail in her. They shall not dwell in the Lord’s land; but Ephraim shall return to Egypt, and they shall eat unclean things in Assyria. They shall not offer wine offerings to the Lord, neither shall they be pleasing unto him: their sacrifices shall be unto them as the bread of mourners; all that eat thereof shall be polluted: for their bread for their soul shall not come into the house of the Lord.

“What will ye do in the solemn day, and in the day of the feast of the Lord? For, lo, they are gone because of destruction: Egypt shall gather them up, Memphis shall bury them: the pleasant places for their silver, nettles shall possess them: thorns shall be in their tabernacles. The days of visitation are come, the days of recompence are come; Israel shall know it: the prophet is a fool, the spiritual man is mad, for the multitude of thine iniquity, and the great hatred. The watchman of Ephraim was with my God: but the prophet is a snare of a fowler in all his ways, and hatred in the house of his God. They have deeply corrupted themselves as in the days of Gibeah: therefore he will remember their iniquity, he will visit their sins.”

***5.3***

***LEHI AND HIS FAMILY LEAVE JERUSALEM***

***-APPROX 592 B.C.-***

**The Mulekites came from Zedekiah; Left Jerusalem when Israel was scattered**

**(Omni 1:15)**

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

**Lehi and other prophets prophesied during the days of Zedekiah about the coming destruction of Jerusalem (1 Ne 1:4)**

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

**God commands Lehi to leave Jerusalem in order to preserve his life (1 Ne 2:1-4)**

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him:

“Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.”

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness. And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him. And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

**God’s promise to Nephi (Lehi’s family) to give them the Promised Land…of the Americas (1 Ne 2:19-20; 1 Ne 17:14)**

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying:

“Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands… And after ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.”

**Nephi blessed and his brothers to be cursed if they rebel against him (1 Ne 2:20-24)**

[And the Lord spake unto me, saying]

“And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands. And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren. For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also. And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.”

**Nephi’s desires to bring people to the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (1 Ne 6:4)**

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

**Laman and Lemuel to be cast off as a result of sin (1 Ne 8:36)**

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

**God commands Nephi and his brothers to go back for the Brass Plates (1 Ne 3:1-4, 19-20)**

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father. And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying:

“Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem. For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass. Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.”

[And I spake unto my brothers, saying]

“And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers; And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.”

**Nephi obtains the brass plates after killing Laban (1 Ne 4:7-24)**

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine. And when I came to him I found that it was Laban. And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel. And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart:

“Never at any time have I shed the blood of man.”

And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him. And the Spirit said unto me again:

“Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands.”

Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property. And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again:

“Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands; Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.”

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that:

“Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.”

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law. And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass. And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments. Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins. And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them. And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban. And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

**Lehi Prophesies About His Seed and the Brass Plates/Scriptures (1 Ne 5:17-19)**

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed— That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed. Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

**Lehi’s genealogy given (1 Ne 5:14-16; 1 Ne 6:2)**

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine. And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records. For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

**Lehi was a descendant of Manasseh (Alma 10:3)**

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

**The Lord commands Ishmael’s family to join with Lehi’s family; Lehi’s sons marry his daughters (1 Ne 7:1-5; 1 Ne 16:7-8)**

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord. And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

**Ishmael was a descendant of Ephraim**

-The Book of Mormon is sometimes referred to as the “stick of Joseph” ([Ezekiel 37:19](http://scriptures.lds.org/en/ezek/37/19#19)) or the “stick of Ephraim” ([D&C 27:5](http://scriptures.lds.org/en/dc/27/5#5)). Lehi was a descendant of Manasseh (see [Alma 10:3](http://scriptures.lds.org/en/alma/10/3#3)) and Ishmael was a descendant of Ephraim. The prophecies of Jacob (see [Genesis 48:16](http://scriptures.lds.org/en/gen/48/16#16); 49:22) were fulfilled as Ishmael’s family (Ephraim) came to the American continent with Lehi (Manasseh). Elder Erastus Snow (1818–88) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles discussed the importance of Ishmael’s lineage: “Whoever has read the Book of Mormon carefully will have learned that the remnants of the house of Joseph dwelt upon the American continent; and that Lehi learned by searching the records of his fathers that were written upon the plates of brass, that he was of the lineage of Manasseh. The Prophet Joseph informed us that the record of Lehi was contained on the 116 pages that were first translated and subsequently stolen, and of which an abridgment is given us in the first Book of Nephi, which is the record of Nephi individually, he himself being of the lineage of Manasseh; but that Ishmael was of the lineage of Ephraim, and that his sons married into Lehi’s family, and Lehi’s sons married Ishmael’s daughters, thus fulfilling the words of Jacob upon Ephraim and Manasseh in the 48th chapter of Genesis, which says: ‘And let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the land.’ Thus these descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim grew together upon this American continent” (in Daniel H. Ludlow, A Companion to Your Study of the Book of Mormon [1976], 199).

**Lehi’s family being led to the Promised Land is unto the fulfilling of the scattering of Israel throughout the earth (1 Ne 10:13)**

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

**Nephi commanded by God to build a ship to cross the sea; Nephi builds the ship and arrives in the Promised Land**

**(See 1 Ne 17-18)**

**Nephi writes specifically to the broken off branches of the House of Israel (1 Ne 19:19, 24)**

“Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things. Wherefore I spake unto them, saying:

‘Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.”

**Nephi, as Prophet, Birthright Lineage through Joseph of Egypt, and Acting King among His people, Built a Temple, Similar to Solomon’s, Enabling His People To Enter Into Covenants (2 Ne 5:16-18)**

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon’s temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine. And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands. And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

**Laman and His Followers, Rejecting Their Brother Nephi, Prophets, and Covenants, Were Cursed w/ a Skin of Darkness (2 Ne 5:19-23)**

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life. Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that:

“Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.”

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them. And thus saith the Lord God:

“I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities. And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.”

**Part of the scattering of Israel was taking Lehi and his descendants to the American continent (3 Ne 15:12-19)**

[And Jesus spake unto the multitude, saying]

“Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you. And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.  Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land. This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

‘That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.’

“And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them. But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.”

**Understanding the Lamanite Curse of “Darkness”**

**The issue of skin color is something that has caused countless disruptions thought world history. It is important that we approach the issue free of irrational emotion and bias and be open to be taught by the Spirit of God, which is the real teacher (John 14:26).**

**2 Nephi 5:21-25:**

**-21 The Lamanites hearts had become very hardened like unto a flint. A “skin of blackness” came upon the Lamanites as a mark of their unrighteous condition**

**-22 The Lamanites will not be blessed if they do not repent (1 Nephi 12:23, See also “Darkness, Spiritual” in the BOM index. Also study the blessings of Lehi to the “Lamanites,” 2 Nephi 4:3-9)**

**-23 The Lord forbids intermarriage between the Nephites and Lamanites (See Below)**

**-24 Because of their spiritual separation from God and their physical separation from Nephi, they became Nomadic**

**-25 When the Nephites are not righteous, God will allow the Lamanites will to wage wars, etc in order to humble them**

**It is apparent that the “skin of blackness” was a physical mark of their spiritual condition (See 2 Nephi 30:6 and “Darkness, Spiritual” in the BOM Index). God has done similar things in the past. Cain, for example, was cursed and God set a physical mark upon Cain to distinguish him from others (Genesis 4:11-16)**

**The Book of Mormon makes it clear that the mark set upon the Lamanites did NOT make the Lamanites of less worth or unequal in the eyes of God. Jacob rebuked some unrighteousness Nephites for this attitude (Jacob 3:5-9). The purpose of the mark set on the Lamanites is re-emphasized in alma 3. It was to distinguish the Nephites from the Lamanites (Alma 3:6-15). Also it is apparent that this curse was NOT attached to skin color. The Amlicites, an apostate group of Nephites, marked themselves with red on their foreheads, thus fulfilling prophecy. Because of the Amlicites rebellious and apostate actions “it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them (Alma 3:18-19).” A careful reading of 2 Nephi 5:19-21 will show that the curse was that they were “cut off from the presence of the Lord (2 Nephi 5:20).” This separation was both physical and spiritual. The curse could be lifted upon conditions of repentance (2 Nephi 5:22).**

**There are many examples where some Lamanites repented and enjoyed the same blessings (See Alma 19:7-10, 19:16-17, 35-36, 23:5-7, 26:26-37; Helaman 6:1-3, 15:4-11). The Book of Mormon clearly teaches that the idea that a select few are saved and others cannot be saved is categorically false (Alma 31, 2 Nephi 26:26-33). A few times the word “curse” is associated with the mark of the changed in skin color. (3 Nephi 2:15, Alma 23:18). This does NOT mean that black skin is a curse. As explained previously, the curse was that the Lamanites were cut off from the presence of the Lord. This separation was physically manifested in the mark God set upon the Lamanites: that is, the change in skin color.**

**Imagine for a moment that *our* skin color was changed dramatically (for whatever the reason from whatever color/race we are). We would probably feel somewhat separated from our cultural heritage and ancestry. If we imagined that the changed in skin color was because of our rebellion against God and our refusal to repent we would feel even more separated.**

**The Lord commanded the Nephites and Lamanites not to marry each other, because they were of different faiths (see below, Interracial Marriage). They were separated in every way… from God and their family. The Lamanites were “cut off” from the blessings of the Gospel and also from associating with righteous people because of their own rebellious actions and murderous desires. They had already been warned many times to repent (1 Nephi 2:18-24, 3:28-31 7:6-22, 17:17-55, 18:9-20; 2 Nephi 1:13-29, 4:3-9, 5:1-5). Hence, it’s plain to see that the actual curse was the separation from God, not the changing color of their skin. Their skin turning dark, was the outward appearance of their *inward/spiritual condition* and their skin changing color was the manifesting of God’s anger upon them because of it.**

**\*Interracial Marriage**

**These verses do not teach that interracial marriage is wrong, bad, or even sinful. Rather, they teach that *inter-faith* marriage can weaken your faith (Alma 3:8). This is taught many times in the Bible (Genesis 24:3, 1 Kings 11:4, 2 Cor 6:14, as well as “Marriage, Interfaith” in the Bible Topical Guide.**

***5.4***

***THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL BY***

***BABYLONIAN INVASION OF JERUSALEM***

***-9 Years After Zedekiah Is Made King-***

***-APPROX 591 B.C-***

**As a result of Zedekiah’s rebellion, Nebuchadnezzar again invades Jerusalem (2 Kings 24:20; 2 Kings 25:1-4; Jer 52:4-11)**

For through the anger of the Lord it came to pass in Jerusalem and Judah, until he had cast them out from his presence, that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon. And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came, he, and all his host, against Jerusalem, and pitched against it; and they built forts against it round about.

And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah. And on the ninth day of the fourth month the famine prevailed in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land. And the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which is by the king’s garden: (now the Chaldees were against the city round about:) and the king went the way toward the plain. And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, that Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon came, he and all his army, against Jerusalem, and pitched against it, and built forts against it round about. So the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah.

And in the fourth month, in the ninth day of the month, the famine was sore in the city, so that there was no bread for the people of the land. Then the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled, and went forth out of the city by night by the way of the gate between the two walls, which was by the king’s garden; (now the Chaldeans were by the city round about:) and they went by the way of the plain. But the army of the Chaldeans pursued after the king, and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho; and all his army was scattered from him.

Then they took the king, and carried him up unto the king of Babylon to Riblah in the land of Hamath; where he gave judgment upon him. And the king of Babylon slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes: he slew also all the princes of Judah in Riblah. Then he put out the eyes of Zedekiah; and the king of Babylon bound him in chains, and carried him to Babylon, and put him in prison till the day of his death.

**Jerusalem invaded (Jer 39:14)**

Even they sent, and took Jeremiah out of the court of the prison, and committed him unto Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan, that he should carry him home: so he dwelt among the people.

**Jeremiah protected from the invasion; freed from prison (Jer 39:15-18; Jer 40:6)**

Now the word of the Lord came unto Jeremiah, while he was shut up in the court of the prison, saying,

“Go and speak to Ebed-melech the Ethiopian, saying,

‘Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel;

‘Behold, I will bring my words upon this city for evil, and not for good; and they shall be accomplished in that day before thee. But I will deliver thee in that day, saith the Lord: and thou shalt not be given into the hand of the men of whom thou art afraid.

For I will surely deliver thee, and thou shalt not fall by the sword, but thy life shall be for a prey unto thee: because thou hast put thy trust in me.”

Then went Jeremiah unto Gedaliah the son of Ahikam to Mizpah; and dwelt with him among the people that were left in the land.

**Nebuchadnezzar has his Captain loot and burn the Temple (2 Kings 25:8-9; 2 Chron 36:18-19; Jer 52:12-13; Dan 1:2)**

And in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month, which is the nineteenth year of king Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, came Nebuzar-adan, captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, unto Jerusalem: And he burnt the house of the Lord, and the king’s house, and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great man’s house burnt he with fire. And all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes; all these he brought to Babylon. And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.

Now in the fifth month, in the tenth day of the month, which was the nineteenth year of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, came Nebuzar-adan, captain of the guard, which served the king of Babylon, into Jerusalem, And burned the house of the Lord, and the king’s house; and all the houses of Jerusalem, and all the houses of the great men, burned he with fire: And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of God: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.

**Thousands of people taken captive in the siege of Jerusalem (Jer 52:28-30)**

This is the people whom Nebuchadrezzar carried away captive: in the seventh year three thousand Jews and three and twenty: In the eighteenth year of Nebuchadrezzar he carried away captive from Jerusalem eight hundred thirty and two persons: In the three and twentieth year of Nebuchadrezzar Nebuzar-adan the captain of the guard carried away captive of the Jews seven hundred forty and five persons: all the persons were four thousand and six hundred.

**The remnants of Judah enslaved and taken to Babylon; some left behind (2 Kings 25:10-12; 2 Chron 36:20)**

And all the army of the Chaldees, that were with the captain of the guard, brake down the walls of Jerusalem round about. Now the rest of the people that were left in the city, and the fugitives that fell away to the king of Babylon, with the remnant of the multitude, did Nebuzar-adan the captain of the guard carry away. But the captain of the guard left of the poor

of the land to be vinedressers and husbandmen. And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia.

**Many of the remnants flee to Egypt (2 Kings 25:22, 26)**

And as for the people that remained in the land of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, even over them he made Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, ruler. And all the people, both small and great, and the captains of the armies, arose, and came to Egypt: for they were afraid of the Chaldees.

**Jeremiah prophesies that most of the Jews in Egypt will be destroyed because they worship false gods**

**(See Jer 44)**

**The false gods of Pharaoh condemned; Jacob promised to return to his own land (Jer 46:25-28)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“The Lord of hosts, the God of Israel, saith;

‘Behold, I will punish the multitude of No, and Pharaoh, and Egypt, with their gods, and their kings; even Pharaoh, and all them that trust in him: And I will deliver them into the hand of those that seek their lives, and into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of his servants: and afterward it shall be inhabited, as in the days of old.

‘But fear not thou, O my servant Jacob, and be not dismayed, O Israel: for, behold, I will save thee from afar off, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and be in rest and at ease, and none shall make him afraid. Fear thou not, O Jacob my servant, saith the Lord: for I am with thee; for I will make a full end of all the nations whither I have driven thee: but I will not make a full end of thee, but correct thee in measure; yet will I not leave thee wholly unpunished.”

**Jeremiah prophesies of the return of the Jews (Jer 50:33-46)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts;

‘The children of Israel and the children of Judah were oppressed together: and all that took them captives held them fast; they refused to let them go. Their Redeemer is strong; the Lord of hosts is his name: he shall throughly plead their cause, that he may give rest to the land, and disquiet the inhabitants of Babylon. A sword is upon the Chaldeans, saith the Lord, and upon the inhabitants of Babylon, and upon her princes, and upon her wise men. A sword is upon the liars; and they shall dote: a sword is upon her mighty men; and they shall be dismayed. A sword is upon their horses, and upon their chariots, and upon all the mingled people that are in the midst of her; and they shall become as women: a sword is upon her treasures; and they shall be robbed.

‘A drought is upon her waters; and they shall be dried up: for it is the land of graven images, and they are mad upon their idols. Therefore the wild beasts of the desert with the wild beasts of the islands shall dwell there, and the owls shall dwell therein: and it shall be no more inhabited for ever; neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation. As God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah and the neighbour cities thereof, saith the Lord; so shall no man abide there, neither shall any son of man dwell therein. Behold, a people shall come from the north, and a great nation, and many kings shall be raised up from the coasts of the earth.

‘They shall hold the bow and the lance: they are cruel, and will not shew mercy: their voice shall roar like the sea, and they shall ride upon horses, every one put in array, like a man to the battle, against thee, O daughter of Babylon. The king of Babylon hath heard the report of them, and his hands waxed feeble: anguish took hold of him, and pangs as of a woman in travail. Behold, he shall come up like a lion from the swelling of Jordan unto the habitation of the strong: but I will make them suddenly run away from her: and who is a chosen man, that I may appoint over her? for who is like me? And who will appoint me the time? And who is that shepherd that will stand before me?

‘Therefore hear ye the counsel of the Lord, that he hath taken against Babylon; and his purposes, that he hath purposed against the land of the Chaldeans: Surely the least of the flock shall draw them out: surely he shall make their habitation desolate with them. At the noise of the taking of Babylon the earth is moved, and the cry is heard among the nations.”

**Lehi is shown, in vision, the scattering of Israel (2 Ne 1:4)**

[And Lehi spake, saying]

“For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.”

**Jacob is shown, in vision, the scattering of Israel (2 Ne 6:8)**

[And Jacob spake, saying]

“And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.”

**The Jews were warned by prophets about the coming Babylonian invasion of Jerusalem (2 Ne 25:10)**

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

***5.5***

***AFTER THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL***

***-APPROX 585 B.C.-***

**Israel was invaded and scattered directly as a result of the people not honoring the Sabbath (2 Chron 36:20-21)**

And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia: To fulfil the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed her sabbaths: for as long as she lay desolate she kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.

**Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego all taken captive into Babylon (Dan 1:3-7)**

And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king’s seed, and of the princes; Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king’s palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans. And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king’s meat, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king.

Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishael, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abed-nego.

**Daniel promises to serve the Lord, given favor of God (Dan 1:8-9)**

But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king’s meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself.

Now God had brought Daniel into favour and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs.

**Daniel interprets King Nebuchadnezzar’s dream (Dan 2:1-49)**

And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, wherewith his spirit was troubled, and his sleep brake from him. Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. And the king said unto them,

“I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.”

Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack,

“O king, live forever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.”

The king answered and said to the Chaldeans,

“The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation thereof, ye shall receive of me gifts and rewards and great honour: therefore shew me the dream, and the interpretation thereof.”

They answered again and said,

“Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation of it.”

The king answered and said,

“I know of certainty that ye would gain the time, because ye see the thing is gone from me. But if ye will not make known unto me the dream, there is but one decree for you: for ye have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can shew me the interpretation thereof.”

The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said,

“There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king’s matter: therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean. And it is a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.”

For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise men of Babylon. And the decree went forth that the wise men should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain. Then Daniel answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the captain of the king’s guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise men of Babylon:

“Why is the decree so hasty from the king?”

Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel. Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would shew the king the interpretation. Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions: That they would desire mercies of the God of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven. Daniel answered and said,

“Blessed be the name of God forever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him. I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might, and hast made known unto me now what we desired of thee: for thou hast now made known unto us the king’s matter.”

Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise men of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him;

“Destroy not the wise men of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will shew unto the king the interpretation.”

Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him,

“I have found a man of the captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation.”

The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar,

“Art thou able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof?”

Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said,

“The secret which the king hath demanded cannot the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, shew unto the king; But there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days. Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these; As for thee, O king, thy thoughts came into thy mind upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to thee what shall come to pass. But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living, but for their sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, and that thou mightest know the thoughts of thy heart.

“Thou, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof was terrible. This image’s head was of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass, His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay. Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshing floors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

“This is the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king. Thou, O king, art a king of kings: for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory. And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all. Thou art this head of gold. And after thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to thee, and another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth.

“And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise. And whereas thou sawest the feet and toes, part of potters’ clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay. And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken. And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

“And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever. Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.”

Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation and sweet odours unto him. The king answered unto Daniel, and said,

“Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldest reveal this secret.”

Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon. Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel sat in the gate of the king.

**Shortly before or after Nebuchadnezzar’s death, his son, Belshazzar, reigning as king, blaspheme against God and temple ornaments; the finger of the Lord is seen writing upon the wall (Dan 5:1-9)**

Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand. Belshazzar, whiles he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein. Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them.

They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone. In the same hour came forth fingers of a man’s hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaster of the wall of the king’s palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. Then the king’s countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another. The king cried aloud to bring in the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. And the king spake, and said to the wise men of Babylon,

“Whosoever shall read this writing, and shew me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.”

Then came in all the king’s wise men: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof. Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonied.

**Daniel interprets the writing on the wall; Belshazzar slain by the invasion of King Darius (Dan 5:17-31)**

Then Daniel [coming before the king] answered and said

“Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation. O thou king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour: And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him:

“And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appointeth over it whomsoever he will.

And thou his son, O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this; But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified:

“Then was the part of the hand sent from him; and this writing was written. And this is the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN. This is the interpretation of the thing: MENE; God hath numbered thy kingdom, and finished it. TEKEL; Thou art weighed in the balances, and art found wanting. PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians. Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom. In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain.

And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.”

**An angel tells Daniel that The Jews would be scattered for Seventy Weeks (Years) Before returning to Jerusalem (Dan 9:20-24)**

And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the Lord my God for the holy mountain of my God; Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said,

“O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision. Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.”

“Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins…” -Dan 9:24

***5.6***

***ISRAEL GATHERED ONCE MORE***

***-APPROX 537 B.C.-***

**Jews commanded to one day return to Jerusalem (Isaiah 48:20)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter it even to the end of the earth; say ye, The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.”

**The Lord prompted King Cyrus, of Persia, to be merciful to the Israelites and their city of Jerusalem**

**(2 Chron 36:22-23; Isaiah 45:1-4)**

Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying,

“Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath the Lord God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The Lord his God be with him, and let him go up. Thus saith the Lord to his anointed,

‘to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut; I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron: And I will give thee the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that thou mayest know that I, the Lord, which call thee by thy name, am the God of Israel.

For Jacob my servant’s sake, and Israel mine elect, I have even called thee by thy name: I have surnamed thee, though thou hast not known me.”

**The Lord prompts King Cyrus to let the Jews return to Jerusalem and to rebuild the temple (Ezra 1:1-3)**

Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying,

“Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The Lord God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he hath charged me to build him an house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? his God be with him, and let him go up to Jerusalem, which is in Judah, and build the house of the Lord God of Israel, (he is the God,) which is in Jerusalem.”

**The Prophet Zechariah is shown the rebuilding of the temple after 70 years of captivity (Zech 1:12-17)**

Then the angel of the Lord [spake unto the Lord] and said,

“O Lord of hosts, how long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem and on the cities of Judah, against which thou hast had indignation these threescore and ten years?

And the Lord answered the angel that talked with me with good words and comfortable words. So the angel that communed with me said unto me,

“Cry thou, saying, Thus saith the Lord of hosts;

‘I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great jealousy. And I am very sore displeased with the heathen that are at ease: for I was but a little displeased, and they helped forward the affliction. Therefore …I am returned to Jerusalem with mercies: my house shall be built in it, saith the Lord of hosts, and a line shall be stretched forth upon Jerusalem. Cry yet, saying, My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad; and the Lord shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.”

**The Lord reveals to Zechariah that Zerubbabel will rebuild the temple (Zech 4:4-10)**

So I answered and spake to the angel that talked with me, saying,

“What are these, my lord?”

Then the angel that talked with me answered and said unto me,

“Knowest thou not what these be?”

And I said,

“No, my lord.”

Then he answered and spake unto me, saying,

“This is the word of the Lord unto Zerubbabel, saying,

‘Not by might, nor by power, but by my spirit’,

“saith the Lord of hosts.

‘Who art thou, O great mountain? Before Zerubbabel thou shalt become a plain: and he shall bring forth the headstone thereof with shoutings, crying, Grace, grace unto it.’

“Moreover the word of the Lord came unto me, saying,

‘The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it; and thou shalt know that the Lord of hosts hath sent me unto you. For who hath despised the day of small things? For they shall rejoice, and shall see the plummet in the hand of Zerubbabel with those seven; they are the eyes of the Lord, which run to and fro through the whole earth.”

**The Prophet Haggai commands Zerubbabel to rebuild the temple (Haggai 1:1-2, 7-8)**

In the second year of Darius the king, in the sixth month, in the first day of the month, came the word of the Lord by Haggai the prophet unto Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, saying,

“Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying,

‘This people say, The time is not come, the time that the Lord’s house should be built… Consider your ways. Go up to the mountain, and bring wood, and build the house; and I will take pleasure in it, and I will be glorified.”

**Zerubbabel helps rebuild the temple (Ezra 5:2; Haggai 1:12-14)**

Then rose up Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and began to build the house of God which is at Jerusalem: and with them were the prophets of God helping them. Then Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, with all the remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of the Lord their God, and the words of Haggai the prophet, as the Lord their God had sent him, and the people did fear before the Lord. Then spake Haggai the Lord’s messenger in the Lord’s message unto the people, saying,

“I am with you.”

And the Lord stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, and the spirit of all the remnant of the people; and they came and did work in the house of the Lord of hosts, their God, In the four and twentieth day of the sixth month, in the second year of Darius the king.

**The temple is finished and dedicated (Ezra 6:14-16)**

And the elders of the Jews builded, and they prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they builded, and finished it, according to the commandment of the God of Israel, and according to the commandment of Cyrus, and Darius, and Artaxerxes king of Persia. And this house was finished on the third day of the month Adar, which was in the sixth year of the reign of Darius the king. And the children of Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the rest of the children of the captivity, kept the dedication of this house of God with joy,

**Some Jews are still in captivity and Jerusalem is still not finished being rebuilt (Neh 1:1-3)**

The words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah.

“And it came to pass in the month Chisleu, in the twentieth year, as I was in Shushan the palace, that Hanani, one of my brethren, came, he and certain men of Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews that had escaped, which were left of the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem. And they said unto me,

‘The remnant that are left of the captivity there in the province are in great affliction and reproach: the wall of Jerusalem also is broken down, and the gates thereof are burned with fire.”

**Nehemiah desires to rebuild the walls and gates of Jerusalem (Neh 2:17-18)**

Then said I unto [the rulers of the Jews],

“Ye see the distress that we are in, how Jerusalem lieth waste, and the gates thereof are burned with fire: come, and let us build up the wall of Jerusalem, that we be no more a reproach.”

Then I told them of the hand of my God which was good upon me; as also the king’s words that he had spoken unto me. And they said, Let us rise up and build. So they strengthened their hands for this good work.

**Enemies of the Jews seek to stop the rebuilding of Jerusalem (Neh 4:7-8)**

But it came to pass, that when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and the Arabians, and the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites, heard that the walls of Jerusalem were made up, and that the breaches began to be stopped, then they were very wroth,

And conspired all of them together to come and to fight against Jerusalem, and to hinder it.

**Nehemiah moves the people forward with the rebuilding of Jerusalem: tools in one hand and weapons in the other**

**(Neh 4:15-18)**

[Then said I unto the rulers of the Jews,]

“And it came to pass, when our enemies heard that it was known unto us, and God had brought their counsel to nought, that we returned all of us to the wall, every one unto his work. And it came to pass from that time forth, that the half of my servants wrought in the work, and the other half of them held both the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the habergeons; and the rulers were behind all the house of Judah.

They which builded on the wall, and they that bare burdens, with those that laded, everyone with one of his hands wrought in the work, and with the other hand held a weapon. For the builders, everyone had his sword girded by his side, and so builded. And he that sounded the trumpet was by me.”

**The wall of Jerusalem is finished by the blessings of God (Neh 6:15-16)**

So the wall was finished in the twenty and fifth day of the month Elul, in fifty and two days. And it came to pass, that when all our enemies heard thereof, and all the heathen that were about us saw these things, they were much cast down in their own eyes: for they perceived that this work was wrought of our God.

**The genealogy given of the Jews who returned from Babylon**

**(See Neh 7:5-73; See Neh 12:1-43)**

**Temple sealings performed (Neh 10:1-29)**

Now those that sealed were, Nehemiah, the Tirshatha, the son of Hachaliah, and Zidkijah… (various individuals named)… And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the porters, the singers, the Nethinims, and all they that had separated themselves from the people of the lands unto the law of God, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, every one having knowledge, and having understanding; They clave to their brethren, their nobles, and entered into a curse, and into an oath, to walk in God’s law, which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and do all the commandments of the Lord our Lord, and his judgments and his statutes;

**Approximately 100 years after the temple has been rebuilt, the people are once again in a state of apostasy**

**(Mal 1:7-8; Mal 2:1-9)**

[And Malachi prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying,]

“Ye offer polluted bread upon mine altar; and ye say, Wherein have we polluted thee? In that ye say,

‘The table of the Lord is contemptible.’

“And if ye offer the blind for sacrifice, is it not evil? And if ye offer the lame and sick, is it not evil? Offer it now unto thy governor; will he be pleased with thee, or accept thy person? And now, O ye priests, this commandment is for you. If ye will not hear, and if ye will not lay it to heart, to give glory unto my name, saith the Lord of hosts, I will even send a curse upon you, and I will curse your blessings: yea, I have cursed them already, because ye do not lay it to heart. Behold, I will corrupt your seed, and spread dung upon your faces, even the dung of your solemn feasts; and one shall take you away with it. And ye shall know that I have sent this commandment unto you, that my covenant might be with Levi…

“My covenant was with him of life and peace; and I gave them to him for the fear wherewith he feared me, and was afraid before my name. The law of truth was in his mouth, and iniquity was not found in his lips: he walked with me in peace and equity, and did turn many away from iniquity. For the priest’s lips should keep knowledge, and they should seek the law at his mouth: for he is the messenger of the Lord of hosts.

But ye are departed out of the way; ye have caused many to stumble at the law; ye have corrupted the covenant of Levi… Therefore have I also made you contemptible and base before all the people, according as ye have not kept my ways, but have been partial in the law.”

**A book of remembrance is kept with the names of the obedient/righteous/covenant keepers (Mal 3:16-18)**

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name. [And the Lord spake unto them, saying,]

“And they shall be mine; in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him. Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.”

**Malachi prophesies of the Second Coming, counsels the people to pay their tithes, and prophesies of Elijah’s return before the Second Coming**

**(See Mal 3-4)**

***5.7***

***THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL: LIKE VINEYARDS & OLIVE TREES***

**The scattering of Israel is to begin in Jerusalem; the inhabitants are like a vine that needs to be burned (Ezekiel 15:1-8)**

And the word of the Lord came unto [Ezekiel], saying,

“Son of man, What is the vine tree more than any tree, or than a branch which is among the trees of the forest? Shall wood be taken thereof to do any work? or will men take a pin of it to hang any vessel thereon?

Behold, it is cast into the fire for fuel; the fire devoureth both the ends of it, and the midst of it is burned. Is it meet for any work? Behold, when it was whole, it was meet for no work: how much less shall it be meet yet for any work, when the fire hath devoured it, and it is burned? Therefore thus saith the Lord God; As the vine tree among the trees of the forest, which I have given to the fire for fuel, so will I give the inhabitants of Jerusalem. And I will set my face against them; they shall go out from one fire, and another fire shall devour them; and ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I set my face against them. And I will make the land desolate, because they have committed a trespass, saith the Lord God.”

**A parable using a ravished vineyard like the scattering of Israel (2 Ne 15:1-25)**

[And the Lord spake unto Isaiah, saying,]

“And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill. And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes. And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard. What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down; And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it. For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry. Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

“In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant. Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah. Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them! And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands. Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

“Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it. And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled. But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness. Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

“Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope; That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it. Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter! Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight! Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink; Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

“Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel. Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.”

**The Scattering of Israel Is Like the Branches of an Olive Tree (1Ne 10:12; 1 Ne 15:12)**

[And Nephi spake, saying,]

“Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth. Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?”

**God Is Working Among People of Other Lands As Well (1 Ne 19:22)**

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

**Joseph of Egypt Saw, in Vision, Lehi’s Family, as a Broken Branch, Being Broken off from the Tree/House of Israel (2 Ne 3:5)**

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

**The 5 part history of Israel during the duration of the earth’s existence, as likened unto an olive vineyard:**

**Round 1: Creation to the Scattering of Israel: (Jacob 5:1-14)**

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

“Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord. For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

“And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said:

‘I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.’

“And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word. And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish. And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant:

‘It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned. And behold, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will. Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.’

“And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree. And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant:

‘It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words. And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.”

**The 5 part history of Israel during the duration of the earth’s existence, as likened unto an olive vineyard:**

**Round 2: Nephites, Lamanites, and others who have left Jerusalem and blossomed in their new lands: (Jacob 5:15-28)**

“And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:

‘Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master:

‘Behold, look here; behold the tree.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit. And he said unto the servant:

‘Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant:

‘Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.’

“And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant:

‘Behold these;’

“and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant:

‘Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.’

“And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master:

‘How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.’

“And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him:

‘Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:

‘Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant:

‘Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.’

“And he said unto the servant:

‘Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant:

‘Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.’

“But behold, the servant said unto him:

‘Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.”

**The 5 part history of Israel during the duration of the earth’s existence, as likened unto an olive vineyard:**

**Round 3: The Great Apostasy: (Jacob 5:29-69)**

“And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:

‘Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said:

‘Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit. But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree. What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?’

“And the servant said unto his master:

‘Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:

‘The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit. Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit. But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:

“Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.’

“And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt. And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died. And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant:

‘What could I have done more for my vineyard? Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire. And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard. And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof. And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

‘And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them. But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?’

“And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master:

‘Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?’

“And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant:

‘Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?’

“But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard:

‘Spare it a little longer.’

“And the Lord said:

‘Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof. And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

‘And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.’

“And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild. And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree. And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant:

‘Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said. And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire. And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil. And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

‘Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit. Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard. Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

‘Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow. And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

‘For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard. And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree; And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one. And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

**The 5 part history of Israel during the duration of the earth’s existence, as likened unto an olive vineyard:**

**Round 4: The Restoration: (Jacob 5:70-76)**

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few. And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them:

‘Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.’

“And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their mights; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof. And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning. And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them:

‘Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard. For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.’

**The 5 part history of Israel during the duration of the earth’s existence, as likened unto an olive vineyard:**

**Round 5: The time immediately preceding the Second Coming where the righteous will be separated from the wicked**

**(Jacob 5:77)**

‘And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.’

**Part of the scattering of Israel was taking other groups from among those scattered and taking them to other lands**

**(3 Ne 15:20; 3 Ne 16:1-2)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them. And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister. For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.”

**The Gentiles are grafted into the House of Israel**

**(Rom 11:13-19)**

[And Paul spake unto the people, saying,]

“For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the Gentiles, I magnify mine office: I by any means I may provoke to emulation them which are my flesh, and might save some of them. For if the casting away of them be the reconciling of the world, what shall the receiving of them be, but life from the dead? For if the firstfruit be holy, the lump is also holy: and if the root be holy, so are the branches. And if some of the branches be broken off, and thou, being a wild olive tree, wert grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree; Boast not against the branches. But if thou boast, thou bearest not the root, but the root thee. Thou wilt say then,

‘The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in.”

**The redemption of Zion, in parable form (D&C 101:43-62)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And now, I will show unto you a parable, that you may know my will concerning the redemption of Zion.

A certain nobleman had a spot of land, very choice; and he said unto his servants: Go ye unto my vineyard, even upon this very choice piece of land, and plant twelve olive trees; And set watchmen round about them, and build a tower, that one may overlook the land round about, to be a watchman upon the tower, that mine olive trees may not be broken down when the enemy shall come to spoil and take upon themselves the fruit of my vineyard.

“Now, the servants of the nobleman went and did as their lord commanded them, and planted the olive trees, and built a hedge round about, and set watchmen, and began to build a tower. And while they were yet laying the foundation thereof, they began to say among themselves:

‘And what need hath my lord of this tower?’

“And consulted for a long time, saying among themselves:

‘What need hath my lord of this tower, seeing this is a time of peace? Might not this money be given to the exchangers? For there is no need of these things.’

“And while they were at variance one with another they became very slothful, and they hearkened not unto the commandments of their lord. And the enemy came by night, and broke down the hedge; and the servants of the nobleman arose and were affrighted, and fled; and the enemy destroyed their works, and broke down the olive trees. Now, behold, the nobleman, the lord of the vineyard, called upon his servants, and said unto them,

‘Why! what is the cause of this great evil? Ought ye not to have done even as I commanded you, and—after ye had planted the vineyard, and built the hedge round about, and set watchmen upon the walls thereof—built the tower also, and set a watchman upon the tower, and watched for my vineyard, and not have fallen asleep, lest the enemy should come upon you? And behold, the watchman upon the tower would have seen the enemy while he was yet afar off; and then ye could have made ready and kept the enemy from breaking down the hedge thereof, and saved my vineyard from the hands of the destroyer.’

“And the lord of the vineyard said unto one of his servants:

‘Go and gather together the residue of my servants, and take all the strength of mine house, which are my warriors, my young men, and they that are of middle age also among all my servants, who are the strength of mine house, save those only whom I have appointed to tarry; And go ye straightway unto the land of my vineyard, and redeem my vineyard; for it is mine; I have bought it with money. Therefore, get ye straightway unto my land; break down the walls of mine enemies; throw down their tower, and scatter their watchmen. And inasmuch as they gather together against you, avenge me of mine enemies, that by and by I may come with the residue of mine house and possess the land.’

“And the servant said unto his lord:

‘When shall these things be?’

“And he said unto his servant:

‘When I will; go ye straightway, and do all things whatsoever I have commanded you; And this shall be my seal and blessing upon you—a faithful and wise steward in the midst of mine house, a ruler in my kingdom.’

“And his servant went straightway, and did all things whatsoever his lord commanded him; and after many days all things were fulfilled.”

***5.8***

***THE GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST AMONG LEHI’S DESCENDANTS***

**The America’s, Approx 544 B.C-0 A.D.**

***-Approx 544 B.C.-***

**Jacob teaches the people at the temple (Jac 1:17)**

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

**Jacob teaches that Abraham offered Isaac in the similitude of the only begotten Son of God (Jac 4:5)**

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

**God promises Enos to preserve the Nephite history and record Enos (1:16)**

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

***-Approx 124 B.C-.***

**King Benjamin teaches his people at the temple (Mos 2:6)**

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

**The people of King Benjamin receive a group endowment**

**(See Mos 2-6)**

**King Benjamin prophesies of the divine mission of Jesus Christ, and of the mission of prophets to teach of Him (Mos 3:4-13)**

[And Benjamin spake unto the people, saying]

“For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy. For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

“And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men. And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people. And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary. And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

“And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men. For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned. But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ. And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.”

***-Approx 148 B.C.-***

**Abinadi preaches repentance and faith in Jesus Christ to the wicked King Noah and his priests; Is martyred for his testimony**

**(See Mos 12-17)**

**Abinadi preaches of the mission of Jesus Christ (Mos 15:6-12)**

[And Abinadi spake unto Noah and his priests, saying,]

“And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth. Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father. And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men— Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

“And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God. For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?”

**Alma the Elder believes the words of Abinadi, repents of his sins, and baptizes believers (Mos 18:1-10)**

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi— Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven. And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts. Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king. And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words. And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord. And it came to pass that he said unto them:

“Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another’s burdens, that they may be light; Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life— Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?”

**Alma the Elder promised eternal life for his faith and obedience (Mos 26:14-20)**

And it came to pass that after [Alma] had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

“Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi. And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them. And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people. Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine. And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed. Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.”

***-Approx 100 B.C.-***

**Alma the Younger has a vision of the Savior after an angel calls him to repentance, (Mos 27:10-31; Alma 36:6-23---scriptures combined into one narrative)**

And now it came to pass that while [Alma] was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king— And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood; And the whole earth did tremble beneath their feet. And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them, for the fear of the Lord came upon them. Nevertheless he cried again, saying:

“Alma, arise and stand forth,

And I did arise. And the angel said,

“for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said:

‘This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people… the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith. And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God. Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.”

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed. And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder. And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father. And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him. And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

[And Alma spake unto Helaman, saying,]

“And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs. And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—

‘If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God’

“I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more. But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins. Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments. Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

“Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds. And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul. And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

“Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart:

‘O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.’

“And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more. And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain! Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy. Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there. But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.”

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort: For, said he,

“I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit. And the Lord said unto me:

‘Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters; And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.’

“Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God. My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

“I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all. Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.”

**The sons of Mosiah decline the throne, serve missions among the Lamanites and baptize many converts**

**(See Mos 28:1-8; Alma 17-26)**

**Mosiah promotes liberty and the rule of Judges in place of a King (Mos 29:16-17, 25, 31-32)**

[And Mosiah spake unto the people of his kingdom, saying,]

“Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom. And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people. Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

“And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people. Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God. Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

“Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you. And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

“And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers. Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you. For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction! Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

“For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings. And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.”

**Those who rejected liberty and the gospel placed a mark upon themselves (Alma 3:13-16)**

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads. Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi:

“Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them. And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also. And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.”

**Alma the Younger asks the people soul searching questions as to their faith and obedience**

**(See Alma 5)**

**Alma the Younger teaches about the Melchizedek Priesthood**

**(See Alma 13)**

**Alma and others preach in the temples and synagogues about repentance and faith in Jesus Christ (Alma 16:13, 18-19)**

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews. Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

**Alma teaches of the importance of faith**

**(See Alma 32:26-43)**

**Major world war between the Nephites and Lamanites; Nephites experience both apostasy within the church and government, as well as great miracles of deliverance**

**(See Alma 45-62)**

***-Approx 50 B.C.-***

**The chief judge is murdered by Kishkumen’s secret combination (Hel 1:7-12)**

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren. And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran. Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

**Gadianton becomes leader of the secret combination formerly led by Kishkumen (Hel 2:4, 12-14)**

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen. And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi. Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

**Apostasy takes hold within the Church (Hel 4:11-13)**

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God. And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites— And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

**The Gadianton Robbers led by satan; Nephites continue to fall into apostasy (Hel 6:18-34)**

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton’s band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton’s robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found. And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings. And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God. And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction. Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell. Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous. And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

***-Approx 23 B.C.-***

**Nephi 2nd receives the Sealing Power (Hel 10:1-7)**

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them. And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him. And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

“Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

“Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people. Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.”

***-Approx 6 B.C.-***

**Samuel the Lamanite, a prophet, prophesies of the coming birth of Christ (Hel 14:1-8)**

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them:

“Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name. And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

“Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

“And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you. And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven. And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth. And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.”

**Samuel the Lamanite prophesies of the death of Jesus Christ (Hel 14:14, 20-27)**

[And Samuel continued, saying]

“And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death. But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

“Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up; Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

“And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great. And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate. And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many. And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours. And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.”

***-Approx 1 A.D.-***

**The sign of Jesus’ birth is given (3 Ne 1:19-21)**

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given. And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets. And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

******

***CHAPTER 6:***

***THE MINISTRY OF***

***JESUS CHRIST***

******

***6.1***

***EVENTS FROM THE MINISTRY OF JESUS CHRIST\****

**\*Some, but not all, of the narratives provided are a combination of each gospel writer’s account, presented in KJV form, so as to avoid unnecessary repetition by reading the same account 2-4 times**

**Daniel shown by the angel Gabriel when the first coming of Jesus Christ would be (Dan 9:25-27)**

[And the angel spake unto me, saying]

“Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times. And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined. And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.

**Micah is told that Christ will be born in Bethlehem (Micah 5:1-3)**

[And Micah prophesied, saying,]

“Now gather thyself in troops, O daughter of troops: he hath laid siege against us: they shall smite the judge of Israel with a rod upon the cheek. But thou, Beth-lehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting. Therefore will he give them up, until the time that she which travaileth hath brought forth: then the remnant of his brethren shall return unto the children of Israel.”

**Jesus would be sent specifically to the Jews During His Mortal Ministry (1 Ne 10:4-6)**

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world. And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world. Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

***-APPROX 0 A.D.-***

**The angel announces the coming birth of Christ to Mary: He will reign over the house of Jacob forever (Luke 1:26-38)**

And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin’s name was Mary. And the angel came in unto her, and said,

“Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women.”

And when she saw him, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be.

And the angel said unto her,

“Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.”

Then said Mary unto the angel,

“How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?”

And the angel… said unto her,

“The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God. And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. For with God nothing shall be impossible.”

And Mary said,

“Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. “

And the angel departed from her.

***-APPROX 1 A.D.-***

**Birth of Christ (Luke 2:1-20)**

And it came to pass in those days, that there went out a decree from Cæsar Augustus, that all the world should be taxed. (And this taxing was first made when Cyrenius was governor of Syria.) And all went to be taxed, every one into his own city. And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judæa, unto the city of David, which is called Bethlehem; (because he was of the house and lineage of David) to be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being great with child.

And so it was, that, while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered.

And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn. And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night. And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid. And the angel said unto them,

“Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord. And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger.”

And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying,

“Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.”

And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another,

“Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known unto us.”

And they came with haste, and found Mary, and Joseph, and the babe lying in a manger. And when they had seen it, they made known abroad the saying which was told them concerning this child. And all they that heard it wondered at those things which were told them by the shepherds. But Mary kept all these things, and pondered them in her heart. And the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for all the things that they had heard and seen, as it was told unto them.

***-APPROX 30 A.D.-***

**Baptism of Jesus by John the Baptist (John 1:15-18, 29-34; Matt 3:13-17; Mark 1:9-11, Luke 3:21-22)**

Now when all the people were baptized, then cometh Jesus from Nazareth of Galilee to Jordan. And when Jesus was seen walking towards him, John bare witness of him, and cried, saying,

“This was he of whom I spake, He that cometh after me is preferred before me: for he was before me.

And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ. No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.”

Then came Jesus unto John, to be baptized of him. But John forbad him, saying,

“I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me?”

And Jesus answering said unto him,

“Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness.”

Then he suffered him. And Jesus, when he was baptized, coming up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending in a bodily shape like a dove, and lighting upon him: And lo a voice from heaven, saying,

“Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.”

And John bare record, saying,

“I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. And I knew him not, but was called to baptize with water: but it was revealed to me that when He should be made manifest to Israel, , the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost. And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.”

**Jesus begins His ministry, calls apostles (Mark 1:33-38; Luke 5:1-11; Matt 4:18-22;)**

Again the next day after John stood, and two of his disciples; And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith,

“Behold the Lamb of God!”

And the two disciples heard him speak, and they followed Jesus. Then Jesus turned, and saw them following, and saith unto them,

“What seek ye?”

They said unto him,

“Rabbi, (which is to say, being interpreted, Master,) where dwellest thou?”

He saith unto them,

“Come and see.”

They came and saw where he dwelt, and abode with him that day: for it was about the tenth hour. One of the two which heard John speak, and followed him, was Andrew, Simon Peter’s brother. He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him,

“We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ.”

And he brought him to Jesus. And when Jesus beheld him, he said,

“Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called Cephas,” (which is by interpretation, A stone.)

The day following Jesus would go forth into Galilee, and findeth Philip, and saith unto him,

“Follow me.”

Now Philip was of Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter. Philip findeth Nathanael, and saith unto him,

“We have found him, of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph.”

And Nathanael said unto him,

“Can there any good thing come out of Nazareth?”

Philip saith unto him,

“Come and see.”

Jesus saw Nathanael coming to him, and saith of him,

“Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile!”

Nathanael saith unto him,

“Whence knowest thou me?”

Jesus answered and said unto him,

“Before that Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee.”

Nathanael answered and saith unto him,

“Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.”

Jesus answered and said unto him,

“Because I said unto thee, I saw thee under the fig tree, believest thou? thou shalt see greater things than these.”

And he saith unto him,

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.”

And it came to pass, that, as the people pressed upon him to hear the word of God, he stood by the lake of Gennesaret, Now Jesus, walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brethren, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers. And he entered into one of the ships, which was Simon’s, and prayed him that he would thrust out a little from the land. And he sat down, and taught the people out of the ship. Now when he had left speaking, he said unto Simon,

“Launch out into the deep, and let down your nets for a draught.”

And Simon answering said unto him,

“Master, we have toiled all the night, and have taken nothing: nevertheless at thy word I will let down the net.”

And when they had this done, they enclosed a great multitude of fishes: and their net brake. And they beckoned unto their partners, which were in the other ship, that they should come and help them. And they came, and filled both the ships, so that they began to sink. When Simon Peter saw it, he fell down at Jesus’ knees, saying,

“Depart from me; for I am a sinful man, O Lord.”

For he was astonished, and all that were with him, at the draught of the fishes which they had taken. And Jesus said unto them,

“Fear not. Come ye after me, and henceforth I will make you to become fishers of men.”

And straightway they forsook their nets, and followed him. And when he had gone a little further thence, he saw James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, who also were in the ship mending their nets. And straightway he called them: and they left their father Zebedee in the ship with the hired servants, and went after him.

**Jesus becomes famous for healings (John 1:35-51)**

And [the fame of Jesus continued to grow and] all the city was gathered together at the door. And he healed many that were sick of divers diseases, and cast out many devils; and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him. And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed. And Simon and they that were with him followed after him. And when they had found him, they said unto him,

“All men seek for thee.”

And [Jesus] said unto them,

“Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth.”

**Jesus promises salvation to those who obey God (Matt 7:21-23, JST)**

[And Jesus saith unto them,]

“Not every one that saith unto me,

‘Lord, Lord,’

“shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. Many will say to me in that day,

‘Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? And in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?’

“And then will I profess unto them,

‘I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.”

**Jesus teaches with authority (Matt 7:28-29)**

And it came to pass, when Jesus had ended these sayings, the people were astonished at his doctrine: For he taught them as one having authority, and not as the scribes.

**The apostles receive priesthood authority to teach and heal the lost sheep of Israel (Matt 10:1-8; Matt 18:18; Mark 3:13-21; Mark 6:7-13; Luke 6:12-16; Luke 9:1-6)**

And it came to pass in those days, that he goeth up into a mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.

And when it was day, he called unto him his disciples: and of them he chose and ordained twelve, whom also he named apostles; that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach. And he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease. Now the names of the twelve apostles are these;

-Simon, (whom he also named Peter,) and

-Andrew his brother,

-James the son of Zebedee, and

-John his brother (and he surnamed them Boanerges, which is, The sons of thunder),

-Philip and

-Bartholomew,

-Matthew the publican, and

-Thomas,

-James the son of Alphæus, and

-Simonthe Canaanite called Zelotes, and

-Lebbæus (whose surname was Judas [Jude] Thaddæus, and was also the brother of James), and

- Judas Iscariot, which also betrayed him:

and they went into an house.

These twelve Jesus sent forth, two by two, and gave them power over unclean spirits and commanded them, saying,

“Go not into the way of the Gentiles, and into any city of the Samaritans enter ye not: But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. And as ye go, preach, saying,

‘The kingdom of heaven is at hand.’

“Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give. Verily I say unto you,

‘Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.”

And Jesus commanded them that they should take nothing for their journey, save a staff only; no scrip, no bread, no money in their purse: But be shod with sandals; and not put on two coats. And he said unto them,

“In what place soever ye enter into an house, there abide till ye depart from that place. And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear you, when ye depart thence, shake off the dust under your feet for a testimony against them. Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.”

And they went out, and preached that men should repent. And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them.

**Jesus does the will of His Father (Matt 11:25-30; Luke 10:21-22; John 6:35-40; John 7:16-17; John 8:28-30;**

**John 12:49-50; John 16:27-28)**

**(See also John 5:16-47)**

At that time Jesus answered and said,

“I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.

All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him. Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls. For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light.”

And Jesus said unto them,

“I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. But I said unto you,

‘That ye also have seen me, and believe not.’

“All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.

For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me. And this is the Father’s will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day. And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

[And] Jesus answered them, and said,

“My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me. If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.”

Then said Jesus unto them,

“When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things. And he that sent me is with me: the Father hath not left me alone; for I do always those things that please him.”

As he spake these words, many believed on him.

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak…For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God. I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again, I leave the world, and go to the Father.”

**Jesus declares his Divinity as Jehovah, the Son of God (Mark 12:35-37; John 8:54-58; John 10:14-18, 34-37)**

And Jesus answered and said, while he taught in the temple,

“How say the scribes that Christ is the Son of David? For David himself said by the Holy Ghost,

‘The Lord said to my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.’

“David therefore himself calleth him Lord; and whence is he then his son? And the common people heard him gladly.”

[And] Jesus [said unto them],

“ If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father that honoureth me; of whom ye say, that he is your God: Yet ye have not known him; but I know him: and if I should say, I know him not, I shall be a liar like unto you: but I know him, and keep his saying. Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.”

Then said the Jews unto him [as he was teaching in the synagogue],

“Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham”?

Jesus said unto them,

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.”

**The significance of “I AM.”**

When Moses was first speaking with the Lord upon the mount, he was well aware of the God of the Hebrews, known unofficially as the God with no name. Hence, he asked the Lord what his name was, that he might tell the Hebrews of who was calling him to lead Israel out of Egypt. The Lord replied, “I AM THAT I AM.” ([Ex. 3:14–15](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/ex/3.14-15?lang=eng#p14).) The name “I AM” later became synonymous with the name of Jehovah, the God of the New Testament. Hence, when Jesus said, “Before Abraham was, I am,” what he was really telling the people was “I am Jehovah, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.” This was one of the reasons that his enemies hated him so much and wanted to kill Jesus, because he claimed to be the God that they had worshipped for thousands of years, now standing right before them.

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying]

“I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine. As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep. And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd. Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.”

Jesus answered them,

“Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods? If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken; Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world,

‘Thou blasphemest;’

“because I said,

‘I am the Son of God?’

“If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not.”

**Jesus declares Himself the Lord of the Sabbath (Matt 12:1-21; Luke 6:1-5; Mark 2:23-28)**

And it came to pass on the second Sabbath after the first, that he went through the corn fields; and his disciples being an hungered, plucked the ears of corn, and did eat, rubbing them in their hands. But when certain of the Pharisees saw it, they said unto him,

“Behold, why do thy disciples do that which is not lawful to do upon the Sabbath day.”

And Jesus answering them said,

“Have ye never read what David did, when he had need, and was an hungred, he, and they that were with him? How he went into the house of God in the days of Abiathar the high priest, and did eat the shewbread, and gave also to them that were with him; which is not lawful to eat but for the priests, and gave also to them which were with him? Or have ye not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless? But I say unto you, That in this place is one greater than the temple. But if ye had known what this meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice, ye would not have condemned the guiltless… The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath: For the Son of man is Lord even of the Sabbath day.”

**Jesus offers as a sign, the sign of Jonas; declares Himself greater than Solomon (Matt 12:38-45; Luke 11:16, 29-32)**

Then certain of the scribes and of the Pharisees tempting him, sought of him a sign from heaven, saying,

“Master, we would see a sign from thee.”

And when the people were gathered thick together he answered and said unto them,

“This is an evil generation: An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas: For as Jonas was a sign unto the Ninevites, so shall also the Son of man be to this generation. For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale’s belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth. The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas is here.

“The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with the men of this generation, and shall condemn them: for she came from the uttermost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon is here.

“When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. Then he saith

‘I will return into my house from whence I came out;’

“And when he is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.”

**Peter declares that Jesus is the Christ** **(Matt 16:13-20; Mark 8:27-30; Luke 9:18-21)**

And Jesus went out, and his disciples, into the towns and coasts of Cæsarea Philippi. And it came to pass, as he was alone praying, his disciples were with him.

And he asked them, saying,

“Whom do men say that I the Son of man am?”

And they said,

“Some say that thou art John the Baptist: some, Elias; and others, Jeremias, or one of the old prophets is risen again.”

And he saith unto them,

“But whom say ye that I am?”

And Simon Peter answered and said,

“Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.”

And Jesus answered and said unto him,

““Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-jona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven. And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.”

Then he straitly charged them, and commanded his disciples that they should tell no man of him that he was Jesus the Christ.

**Christ prophesies to the apostles of His coming death ( Matt 20:17-19; Mark 8:31; Luke 9:22)**

And Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them,

“Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death, And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify him: and the third day he shall rise again.”

**The Mount of Transfiguration: Sealing Keys Given** **(Matt 17:1-13; Mark 9:2-13; Luke 9:28-36)**

And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into an high mountain apart by themselves. And as he prayed, he was transfigured before them: the fashion of his countenance was altered, and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light and shining and glistering, exceeding white as snow; so as no fuller on earth can white them. And, behold, there appeared and talked with him two men, which were Moses and Elias: Who appeared in glory, and spake of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem. And they were talking with Jesus. But Peter and they that were with him were heavy with sleep: and when they were awake, they saw his glory, and the two men that stood with him. And it came to pass, as they departed from him, Peter said unto Jesus,

“Master, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias”

For he wist not what to say; for they were sore afraid. While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and they feared as they entered into the cloud. And behold a voice out of the cloud, which said,

“This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.”

And when the disciples heard it, they fell on their face, and were sore afraid. And when the voice was past, Jesus was found alone. And Jesus came and touched them, and said,

“Arise, and be not afraid.”

And suddenly, when they had looked round about, they saw no man any more, save Jesus only with themselves.

And as they came down from the mountain, Jesus charged them, saying,

“Tell the vision to no man, until the Son of man be risen again from the dead.”

And they kept that saying with themselves, and told no man in those days any of those things which they had seen.

And the disciples were questioning one with another what the rising from the dead should mean. And they asked him, saying,

“Why then say the scribes that Elias must first come?”

And Jesus answered and said unto them,

“Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things, But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed. Likewise it is written that the Son of man must suffer many things of them and be set at nought.”

Then the disciples understood that he spake unto them of John the Baptist.

**The 12 Apostles will judge the House of Israel (Matt 19:28)**

And Jesus said unto them,

“Verily I say unto you, That ye which have followed me, in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of his glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.”

**Jesus Christ gave His life as a ransom for many (Matt 20:28)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying]

“Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

**The Hosanna Shout as Jesus rides into Jerusalem** **(Matt 21:6-11; John 12:12-19; Mark 11:7-11; Luke 19:35-40)**

And the disciples went, and did as Jesus commanded them, And brought the ass, and the colt, and brought them to Jesus, and put on them their clothes, and cast their garments on the colt, and they set Jesus thereon. On the next day much people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem, spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches of palm trees, and strawed them in the way. And when he was come nigh, even now at the descent of the mount of Olives, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works that they had seen, saying

“Hosanna to the Son of David: Blessed be the kingdom of our father David, Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest: peace in heaven, and glory in the highest.”

And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying,

“Who is this?”

And the multitude said,

“This is Jesus the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

The people therefore that was with him when he called Lazarus out of his grave, and raised him from the dead, bare record. For this cause the people also met him, for that they heard that he had done this miracle. And Jesus entered into Jerusalem, and into the temple: and when he had looked round about upon all things, and now the eventide was come, he went out unto Bethany with the twelve.

The Pharisees therefore said among themselves,

“Perceive ye how ye prevail nothing? behold, the world is gone after him.”

And some of the Pharisees from among the multitude said unto him, Master, rebuke thy disciples. And he answered and said unto them,

“I tell you that, if these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out.”

**Jesus teaches daily in the temple (Luke 19:47)**

And [Jesus] taught daily in the temple. But the chief priests and the scribes and the chief of the people sought to destroy him.

***6.2***

***THE CRUCIFIXION OF JESUS CHRIST\****

**\*Some, but not all, of the narratives provided are a combination of each gospel writer’s account, presented in KJV form, so as to avoid unnecessary repetition by reading the same account 2-4 times**

***-APPROX 33 A.D.-***

**Plot to kill Jesus** **(Luke 22:1-2; Mark 14:1-2; Matt 26:3-5)**

Now after two days the feast of unleavened bread drew nigh, which is called the Passover. Then assembled together the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders of the people, unto the palace of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas. And consulted that they might take Jesus by subtilty, that they might take him by craft, and kill him and put him to death. But they said,

“Not on the feast day, lest there be an uproar among the people,”

for they feared the people.

**Mary anoints Jesus prior to His death (Matt 26:6-13; Mark 14:3-9; John 12:2-8)**

Now when Jesus was in Bethany, in the house of Simon the leper, there they made him a supper; and Martha served: but Lazarus was one of them that sat at the table with him. And as he sat at meat, there came unto him Mary having a pound alabaster box of very precious and costly ointment of spikenard. And she brake the box, and poured it on his head and anointed the feet of Jesus, and wiped his feet with her hair: and the house was filled with the odour of the ointment. But when his disciples saw it, they had indignation within themselves, saying,

“To what purpose is this waste of ointment made? “

Then saith one of his disciples, Judas Iscariot, Simon’s son, which should betray him,

“Why was not this ointment sold for more than three hundred pence, and given to the poor?”

This he said, not that he cared for the poor; but because he was a thief, and had the bag, and bare what was put therein. And they murmured against her. When Jesus understood it, he said unto them,

“Let her alone; why trouble ye the woman? For she hath wrought a good work upon me: against the day of my burying hath she kept this. For ye have the poor with you always, and whensoever ye will ye may do them good: but me ye have not always. She hath done what she could: For in that she hath poured this ointment on my body, she is come aforehand to anoint my body for my burial. Verily I say unto you, wheresoever this gospel shall be preached throughout the whole world, there shall also be this spoken and told for a memorial of her.”

**Jesus institutes the Sacrament (Matt 26:26-29; Mark 14:22-25; Luke 22:15-20)**

And [Jesus] said unto them,

“With desire I have desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer: For I say unto you, I will not any more eat thereof, until it be fulfilled in the kingdom of God.”

And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and gave thanks, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said,

“Take, eat; This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.”

And likewise also he took the cup after supper, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them, saying,

“Take this, and divide it among yourselves: Drink ye all of it.”

And they all drank of it. And Jesus saith unto them

“For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for you and many more for the remission of sins. But verily I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when the kingdom of God shall come and I drink it new with you in my Father’s kingdom.”

**Jesus walks to the Mount of Olives (Matt 26:30; Mark 14:26; Luke 22:39)**

And when they had sung an hymn, he came out and went. And as he was wont, he went out into the mount of Olives and his disciples also followed him.

**Jesus’ intercessory prayer in Gethsemane (Matt 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:40-46; John 17:1-26)**

And [Jesus] went forward a little further, and he was withdrawn from them about a stone’s cast, he fell on the ground, and fell on his face, and prayed that, if it were possible, that the hour might pass from him. And he kneeled down and prayed, saying,

“Abba, O my Father, all things are possible unto thee. If it be possible, if thou be willing, remove this cup. Let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.”

And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him. And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said,

“Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee: As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him. And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was. I have manifested thy name unto the men which thou gavest me out of the world: thine they were, and thou gavest them me; and they have kept thy word.

“Now they have known that all things whatsoever thou hast given me are of thee. For I have given unto them the words which thou gavest me; and they have received them, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me. I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me; for they are thine. And all mine are thine, and thine are mine; and I am glorified in them. And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are.

While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled.

“And now come I to thee; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have my joy fulfilled in themselves. I have given them thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from the evil. They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth. As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world. And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth.

“Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word; That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one: I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.

“Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me: for thou lovedst me before the foundation of the world. O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee: but I have known thee, and these have known that thou hast sent me. And I have declared unto them thy name, and will declare it: that the love wherewith thou hast loved me may be in them, and I in them.”

**Betrayal of Judas (Matt 26:47-50; Mark 14:43-46; Luke 22:47-48; John 18:2-9)**

And Judas also, which betrayed him, knew the place: for Jesus ofttimes resorted thither with his disciples. Judas then, having received a band of men and officers from the chief priests and Pharisees, cometh thither with lanterns and torches and weapons. Jesus therefore, knowing all things that should come upon him, went forth, and said unto them,

“Whom seek ye?”

They answered him,

“Jesus of Nazareth.”

Jesus saith unto them,

“I am he.”

And they went backward, and fell to the ground. Then asked he them again,

“Whom seek ye?”

And they said,

“Jesus of Nazareth.”

Jesus answered,

“I have told you that I am he: if therefore ye seek me, let these go their way:”

That the saying might be fulfilled, which he spake,

“Of them which thou gavest me have I lost none.”

And immediately while Jesus yet spake, lo, Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and scribes and elders of the people. And Jesus said unto him,

“Friend, wherefore art thou come?”

Now he that betrayed him gave them a token, even a sign, saying,

“Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he: take him and hold him fast. Lead him away safely.”

And as soon as he was come, forthwith Judas goeth straightway unto Jesus to kiss him, and said,

“Hail, master, master; “

and kissed him.

But Jesus said unto him,

“Judas, betrayest thou the Son of man with a kiss?”

Then came they, and laid their hands on Jesus, and took him.

**Jesus’ hearing before Annas, *LATE NIGHT*, (John 18:13-16, 19-23)**

And led him away to Annas first; for he was father in law to Caiaphas, which was the high priest that same year.

Now Caiaphas was he, which gave counsel to the Jews, that it was expedient that one man should die for the people. And Simon Peter followed Jesus, and so did another disciple: that disciple was known unto the high priest, and went in with Jesus into the palace of the high priest. But Peter stood at the door without. Then went out that other disciple, which was known unto the high priest, and spake unto her that kept the door, and brought in Peter. The high priest then asked Jesus of his disciples, and of his doctrine. Jesus answered him,

“I spake openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue, and in the temple, whither the Jews always resort; and in secret have I said nothing. Why askest thou me? Ask them which heard me, what I have said unto them: behold, they know what I said.”

And when he had thus spoken, one of the officers which stood by struck Jesus with the palm of his hand, saying,

“Answerest thou the high priest so?”

Jesus answered him,

“If I have spoken evil, bear witness of the evil: but if well, why smitest thou me?”

**Jesus hearing before Caiaphas; *MIDDLE OF THE NIGHT* (John 18:24; Mark 14:53-65, Matt 26:57-68; Luke 22:63-65)**

Now Annas had sent him bound unto Caiaphas the high priest, where the chief priests, scribes, and the elders were assembled. And Peter followed him afar, even into the palace of the high priest: and he went in and sat with the servants, and warmed himself at the fire, to see the end.

And the chief priests and all the council sought for false witness against Jesus to put him to death; and found none.

For many bare false witness against him, yea, though many false witnesses came, their witness agreed not together. At the last came two false witnesses, and arose and bare false witness against him. The first saith unto them

“I heard him say,

‘I will destroy this temple that is made with hands, and within three days I will build another made without hands.”

And then the other came forth And said,

“This fellow said,

‘I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days.”

But neither so did their witness agree together. And the high priest arose and stood up in the midst, and asked Jesus, saying,

“Answerest thou nothing? What is it which these witness against thee?”

But Jesus held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him,

“I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us, whether Art thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed, even the Son of God?”

And Jesus saith unto him,

“I am: and hereafter ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.”

Then the high priest rent his clothes, and saith,

“He hath spoken blasphemy, what need we any further witnesses? Behold, now ye have heard the blasphemy. What think ye?”

And they all condemned him to death, saying

“He is guilty of death.”

And the men that held Jesus mocked him, and smote him. Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him, and did cover his face. And when they had blindfolded him, they struck him on the face, and others smote him with the palms of their hands, and asked him, saying,

“Prophesy unto us, thou Christ, who is it that smote thee?”

And many other things blasphemously spake they against him.

**Jesus’ hearing before the Sanhedrin, *EARLY THE NEXT MORNING* (Mark 15:1; John 18:28; Matt 27:1; Luke 22:66-71)**

Then led they Jesus from Caiaphas unto the hall of judgment: and it was early; and they themselves went not into the judgment hall, lest they should be defiled; but that they might eat the Passover. And as soon as it was day, when the morning was come, all the chief priests, elders, and scribes of the people came together and held a consultation and took counsel against Jesus to put him to death,

saying, Art thou the Christ? Tell us.

And he said unto them, If I tell you, ye will not believe. And if I also ask you, ye will not answer me, nor let me go. Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God.

Then said they all, Art thou then the Son of God?

And he said unto them, Ye say that I am.

And they said, What need we any further witness? For we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

**Jesus’ first hearing before Pilate (Mark 15:1-5; Matt 27:2, 11-14; John 18:29-38; Luke 23:1-6)**

Then they took him and bound him. And when they had bound him, the whole multitude of them arose, and they led him away, and delivered him to Pontius Pilate the governor. Pilate then went out unto them,

and said, What accusation bring ye against this man?

And they answered, accusing Jesus,

and said unto him, If he were not a malefactor, we would not have delivered him up unto thee… We found this fellow perverting the nation, and forbidding to give tribute to Cæsar, saying that he himself is Christ a King.

Then said Pilate unto them, Take ye him, and judge him according to your law.

The Jews therefore said unto him, It is not lawful for us to put any man to death

That the saying of Jesus might be fulfilled, which he spake, signifying what death he should die. Then Pilate entered into the judgment hall again, and called Jesus unto him. And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him,

saying, Art thou the King of the Jews?

And Jesus answering said unto him, Sayest thou this thing of thyself, or did others tell it thee of me?

Pilate answered, Am I a Jew? Thine own nation and the chief priests have delivered thee unto me. What hast thou done?

Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world. If my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews. But now is my kingdom not from hence.

Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then?

Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

Pilate saith unto him, What is truth?

And when he had said this, he went out again unto the Jews, and saith unto them,

“I find in this man no fault at all.”

And the chief priests and the elders accused him of many things: but he answered nothing. And Pilate asked him again, saying,

“Answerest thou nothing? Behold, hearest thou not how many things they witness against thee?”

But Jesus yet answered him nothing, never a word; so that Pilate marvelled greatly. And the chief priests, scribes and elders were the more fierce, saying,

“He stirreth up the people, teaching throughout all Jewry, beginning from Galilee to this place.”

When Pilate heard of Galilee, he asked whether the man were a Galilæan.

**Jesus’ hearing before Herod (Luke 23:7-12)**

And as soon as Pilate knew that he belonged unto Herod’s jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod, who himself also was at Jerusalem at that time. And when Herod saw Jesus, he was exceeding glad: for he was desirous to see him of a long season, because he had heard many things of him; and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. Then he questioned with him in many words; but [Jesus] answered him nothing. And the chief priests and scribes stood and vehemently accused him. And Herod with his men of war set him at nought, and mocked him, and arrayed him in a gorgeous robe, and sent him again to Pilate. And the same day Pilate and Herod were made friends together: for before they were at enmity between themselves.

**Jesus’ second hearing before Pilate; Barabbas released (Matt 27:15-21, 26; Mark 15:6-11, 15; Luke 23:13-25; John 18:39-40)**

When he was set down on the judgment seat, his wife sent unto him, saying,

“Have thou nothing to do with that just man: for I have suffered many things this day in a dream because of him.”

Now at that feast the governor was wont to release unto the people one prisoner, whomsoever they would desire. For of necessity he must release one unto them at the feast. And they had then a notable prisoner, called Barabbas, which lay bound with them that had made insurrection with him, who, for a certain sedition made in the city and had committed murder in the insurrection, was cast into prison. And the multitude crying aloud began to desire him to do as he had ever done unto them. Therefore when the chief priests and rulers of the people were gathered together, Pilate said unto them,

“Ye have a custom, that I should release unto you one at the Passover: Whom will ye that I release unto you? Barabbas, or Jesus which is called Christ? Will ye that I release unto you the King of the Jews?”

For he knew that the chief priests had delivered him for envy. And then he said unto them,

“Ye have brought this man unto me, as one that perverteth the people: and, behold, I, having examined him before you, have found no fault in this man touching those things whereof ye accuse him: No, nor yet Herod: for I sent you to him; and, lo, nothing worthy of death is done unto him.”

But the chief priests and elders moved the people and persuaded the multitude that he should rather release Barabbas, and destroy Jesus. And they cried out all at once, saying,

“Away with this man, and release unto us Barabbas.”

Then Herod said

“Whether of the twain will ye that I release unto you? Will ye therefore that I release unto you the King of the Jews? I will therefore chastise him, and release him.”

Then cried they all again, saying,

“Not this man, but Barabbas.”

Now Barabbas was a robber. And so Pilate, willing to content the people, released unto them Barabbas, that for sedition and murder was cast into prison, whom they had desired; but he delivered Jesus to their will.

**Jews demand that Jesus be crucified (Matt 27:22-26; Mark 15:12-14; Luke 23:20-24; John 19:6-13)**

And Pilate therefore, willing to release Jesus,

said again unto them, What shall I do then with Jesus which is called Christ? What will ye then that I shall do unto him whom ye call the King of the Jews?

When the chief priests therefore and

officers saw him, they cried out, saying, Crucify him, crucify him.

Then they all say unto him, Let him be crucified.

And the governor said, Why, what evil hath he done?

But they cried out the more, saying, Let him be crucified.

And they cried out the more exceedingly, Crucify him, crucify him.

And he said unto them the third time, Why, what evil hath he done? I have found no cause of death in him: I will therefore chastise him, and let him go.

And they were instant with loud voices, requiring that he might be crucified. And the voices of them and of the chief priests prevailed. When Pilate saw that he could prevail nothing, but that rather a tumult was made, he took water, and washed his hands before the multitude,

saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person: see ye to it.

Then answered all the people, and said, His blood be on us, and on our children.

And Pilate gave sentence that it should be as they required.

Pilate saith unto them, Take ye him, and crucify him: for I find no fault in him.

The Jews answered him, We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.

When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he was the more afraid; And went again into the judgment hall, and

saith unto Jesus, Whence art thou?

But Jesus gave him no answer.

Then saith Pilate unto him, Speakest thou not unto me? Knowest thou not that I have power to crucify thee, and have power to release thee?

Jesus answered, Thou couldest have no power at all against me, except it were given thee from above: therefore he that delivered me unto thee hath the greater sin.

And from thenceforth Pilate sought to release him: but the Jews cried out, saying,

“If thou let this man go, thou art not Cæsar’s friend: whosoever maketh himself a king speaketh against Cæsar.”

When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he brought Jesus forth, and sat down in the judgment seat in a place that is called the Pavement, but in the Hebrew, Gabbatha.

**Jesus led away to be crucified (Matt 27:26; Mark 15:15, 20; John 19:14-16)**

[And after Jesus had been beaten, the crowd] cried out,

“Away with him, away with him, crucify him.”

Pilate saith unto them,

“Shall I crucify your King?”

The chief priests answered,

“We have no king but Cæsar.”

Then Pilate, after he had scourged Jesus, delivered him therefore to be crucified. And they took Jesus, and led him away.

**Soldier’s crucify Jesus and cast lots for his clothes (John 19:23-24; Matt 27:35-36; Mark 15:24-25)**

And they crucified him. Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took and parted his garments, casting lots upon them, what every man should take, to every soldier a part. And they took also his coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout. They said therefore among themselves,

“Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be:”

that the scripture might be fulfilled, which saith,

“They parted my raiment, even my garments, among them; and for my vesture they did cast lots.”

These things therefore the soldiers did. And sitting down they watched him there; And it was the third hour, and they crucified him.

**“King of the Jews” (John 19:19-22; Matt 27:37; Mark 15:26; Luke 23:38)**

And Pilate wrote a title, and put it on the cross. And the superscription of his accusation which was set up over his head was written,

“This Is Jesus OF NAZARETH, the King of the Jews.”

This title then read many of the Jews: for the place where Jesus was crucified was nigh to the city: and it was written in Hebrew, and Greek, and Latin. Then said the chief priests of the Jews to Pilate,

“Write not,

‘The King of the Jews;’

“but that he said,

‘I am King of the Jews.”

Pilate answered,

“What I have written I have written.”

**Jesus is mocked by onlookers (Matt 27:39-44; Mark 15:29-32; Luke 23:34-35)**

And they that passed by railed on him and reviled him, wagging their heads, and saying,

“Ah, thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross.”

Then said Jesus,

“Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do.”

And the people stood beholding. Likewise also the chief priests mocking and deriding him said among themselves with the scribes and elders,

“He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be Christ the King of Israel, the chosen of God let him descend now from the cross, that we may see and believe him. He trusted in God; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said,

‘I am the Son of God.”

**Darkness from the sixth to the ninth hour (Mark 15:33-35; Luke 23:44; Matt 27:45-47)**

And it was about the sixth hour. And when the sixth hour was come, there was darkness over the whole land until the ninth hour. And at about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying,

“Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?”

which is, being interpreted,

“My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?”

And some of them that stood by, when they heard it, said,

“Behold, he calleth for Elias.”

**Jesus mocked, given vinegar to drink (Matt 27:48-49; Mark 15:36; John 19:28-29)**

After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith,

“I thirst.”

Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: And straightway one of them ran, and took a sponge, and filled it with vinegar. Then he put it on a reed, and put it to his mouth and gave him to drink, saying,

“Let alone; let us see whether Elias will come to take him down.”

The rest said,

“Let be, let us see whether Elias will come to save him.”

**Jesus lets his body die (John 19:30; Matt 27:50; Mark 15:37; Luke 23:46)**

When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, cried again with a loud voice and he said,

“Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: It is finished.”

And having said thus, he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

**The veil of the temple rent in twain by an earthquake following the death of Jesus (Luke 23:45; Matt 27:51; Mark 15:38)**

And the sun was darkened, and behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain in the midst, from the top to the bottom. And the earth did quake, and the rocks rent.

**Jesus’ side pierced by a spear (John 19:31-37)**

The Jews therefore, because it was the preparation, that the bodies should not remain upon the cross on the Sabbath day, (for that Sabbath day was an high day,) besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away. Then came the soldiers, and brake the legs of the first, and of the other which was crucified with him. But when they came to Jesus, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs: But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. And he that saw it bare record, and his record is true: and he knoweth that he saith true, that ye might believe. For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled,

“A bone of him shall not be broken.”

And again another scripture saith,

“They shall look on him whom they pierced.”

**Watchers near the cross (Matt 27:54-56; Luke 23:47-49; Mark 15:39-41)**

Now when the centurion, and they that were with him, watching Jesus, saw the earthquake, and those things that were done, they feared greatly, and glorified God saying,

“Certainly and truly, this righteous man was the Son of God.”

And all the people that came together to that sight, beholding the things which were done, smote their breasts, and returned. And all his acquaintance, and the women that followed him from Galilee ministering unto him, stood afar off, beholding these things, among which was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James the less and of Joses, and Salome, and the mother of Zebedee’s children. And many other women which came up with him unto Jerusalem.

**Jesus’ body laid in the tomb of Joseph of Arimathaea (Mark 15:42-47; Matt 27:57-61; John 19:38-42; Luke 23:50-56)**

And now when the even was come, because it was the preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath, there came a rich man, Joseph of Arimathæa (a city of the Jews), an honourable counsellor, and he was a good man, and just. And he also was Jesus’ disciple, which waited for the kingdom of God, but secretly for fear of the Jews (the same had not consented to the counsel and deed of them). This man went in boldly unto Pilate, and craved, besought, and begged that he might take away the body of Jesus. And Pilate marvelled if he were already dead: and calling unto him the centurion, he asked him whether he had been any while dead. And when he knew it of the centurion, then Pilate commanded the body to be delivered. And Pilate gave him leave.

He came therefore, and took the body of Jesus. And he bought fine linen and took it with him. And there came also with him Nicodemus, which at the first came to Jesus by night, and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about an hundred pound weight. And when they had taken the body down, they wound and wrapped him in a clean linen cloth, and with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury. Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden a new sepulchre, wherein was never man yet laid. There laid they Jesus therefore because of the Jews’ preparation day; for the sepulchre was nigh at hand. And they laid it in Joseph’s own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock. And the women also, which came with him from Galilee, Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joses, followed after and beheld the sepulchre, and how his body was laid. And they rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulchre, and departed. And the women returned, and prepared spices and ointments; and rested the Sabbath day according to the commandment.

**Amulek testifies of why Christ had to die (Alma 34:8-10)**

[And Amulek prophesied unto them, saying]

“And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it. For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made. For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.”

***6.3***

***THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST\****

**\*Some, but not all, of the narratives provided are a combination of each gospel writer’s account, presented in KJV form, so as to avoid unnecessary repetition by reading the same account 2-4 times**

***-APPROX 33 A.D.-***

**Earthquake and Angels open the tomb three days later (Matt 28:1-4; Luke 24:1)**

And when the Sabbath was past, very early in the morning, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: And for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead men.

**Women find the tomb empty (Mark 16:1-4; Matt 28:1; Luke 24:1-2; John 20:1-2)**

Now upon the first day of the week, very early in the morning, when it was yet dark, when the Sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James, and Salome, had bought sweet spices, that they might come and anoint him. And they came unto the sepulchre at dawn, at the rising of the sun. bringing the spices which they had prepared, and certain others with them. And they said among themselves,

“Who shall roll us away the stone from the door of the sepulchre? “

And when they looked, they saw that the stone was taken and rolled away from the sepulchre: for it was very great.

Then Mary Magdalene runneth, and cometh to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple, whom Jesus loved, and saith unto them,

“They have taken away the Lord out of the sepulchre, and we know not where they have laid him.”

**Angels proclaim “He is risen!” (Luke 24:3-8; Mark 16:5-7; Matt 28:5-7)**

And they entered into the sepulchre, and found not the body of the Lord Jesus. And it came to pass, as they were much perplexed thereabout, behold, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white shining garment; and they were affrighted. And as they were afraid, and bowed down their faces to the earth, the angel answered and said unto the women,

“Fear not ye and be not affrighted: for I know that ye seek Jesus of Nazareth, which was crucified. Why seek ye the living among the dead? He is not here: for he is risen. Remember how he spake unto you when he was yet in Galilee, saying,

‘The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.’

And they remembered his words. And then he saith unto them,

“Behold, come, see the place where the Lord lay. But go your way, and go quickly, and tell his disciples and Peter that he is risen from the dead; and, behold, he goeth before you into Galilee; there shall ye see him, as he said unto you. And lo, thus I have told you.”

**Women hurry to tell the apostles (Mark 16:8; Matt 28:8; Luke 24:9-11;)**

And they went out and departed quickly, and fled from the sepulchre; for they trembled with fear and were amazed with great joy: neither said they anything to any man; for they were afraid. And they did run to bring his disciples word. And having returned from the sepulchre, told all these things unto the eleven, and to all the rest. It was Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary the mother of James, and other women that were with them, which told these things unto the apostles. And their words seemed to them as idle tales, and they believed them not.

***EVENING:* Jesus appears to 11 of the Apostles (John 20:19-23; Luke 24:36-39; Mark 16:14)**

Afterward he appeared unto the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they believed not them which had seen him after he was risen. Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews. And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them,

“Peace be unto you.”

But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. And he said unto them,

“Why are ye troubled? And why do thoughts arise in your hearts?”

And when he had so said, he shewed unto them his hands, his feet, and his side, saying

“Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.”

Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord. Then said Jesus to them again,

“Peace be unto you: “

And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them,

“Have ye here any meat?”

And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of an honeycomb. And he took it, and did eat before them. And he said unto them,

“These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.”

Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures, and said unto them,

“Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and

‘to rise from the dead the third day: And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.’

“And ye are witnesses of these things. As my Father hath sent me, even so send I you. Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained. And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high. And when he had said this, he breathed on them, and saith unto them,

“Receive ye the Holy Ghost:”

**Thomas, absent, doesn’t believe the Christ is resurrected (John 20:24-25)**

But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. The other disciples therefore said unto him,

“We have seen the Lord.”

But he said unto them,

“Except I shall see in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe.”

**Eight days later with Thomas (John 20:26-29)**

And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: then came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said,

“Peace be unto you.”

Then saith he to Thomas,

“Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing.”

And Thomas answered and said unto him,

“My Lord and my God.”

Jesus saith unto him,

“Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed.”

**Jesus commissions the Twelve to take the Gospel to all the world (Matt 28:16-20; Mark 16:15-18)**

Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Jesus had appointed them. And when they saw him, they worshipped him: but some doubted. And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying,

“All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore into all the world, and teach all nations, and preach the gospel to every creature, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover. And, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.”

**Jesus’ ascension into heaven (Mark 16:19-20; Luke 24:50-53)**

So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up and received into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God. And they worshipped him, and the disciples went forth and returned to Jerusalem with great joy: and preached every where, the Lord working with them, and confirming the word with signs following. And were continually in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen.

**Purpose of John’s gospel (John 20:30-31)**

And many other signs truly did Jesus in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book: But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

**Jesus teaches his apostles and others for 40 days after His resurrection (Acts 1:1-3;)**

[And Peter wrote, saying,]

“The former treatise have I made, O Theophilus, of all that Jesus began both to do and teach, Until the day in which he was taken up, after that he through the Holy Ghost had given commandments unto the apostles whom he had chosen: To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.”

**Jesus Christ is known as The Father of Mercies & the God of All Comfort (2 Cor 1:3-4)**

[And Paul spake, saying,]

“Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort; Who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God.”



***CHAPTER 7:***

***ISRAEL IN***

***THE NEW TESTAMENT***

***& BOOK OF MORMON***

******

***7.1***

***FROM THE LIFE OF THE APOSTLE PETER &***

***STEPHEN, AN ASSISTANT TO THE TWELVE***

***-APPROX 34-40 A.D.-***

**Peter declares that Jesus is Lord over all the House of Israel (Acts 2:32-36)**

This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses. Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear. For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself,

“The Lord said unto my Lord,

‘Sit thou on my right hand, Until I make thy foes thy footstool.”

Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

**Peter declares baptism in the name of Jesus essential for salvation (Acts 2:37-38)**

Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles,

“Men and brethren, what shall we do?”

Then Peter said unto them,

“Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

**Peter and the apostles taught daily in the temple (Acts 2:46)**

And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart.

**Peter declares the Restoration of the Gospel necessary (Acts 3:19-21)**

[And Peter saith unto them,]

“Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you: Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.”

**Peter declares that Jesus is the only way men may gain salvation (Acts 4:10-12)**

[And Peter saith unto them,]

“Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, even by him doth this man stand here before you whole. This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

**Peter and other apostles bestow the Holy Ghost upon those who had been baptized (Acts 8:14-17)**

Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John: Who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost: (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.) Then laid they their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

**Peter has a vision wherein he’s commanded to take the gospel from the House of Israel to the Gentiles (Acts 10:1-36)**

There was a certain man in Cæsarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian band, a devout man,  and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway. He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him,

“Cornelius.”

And when [Cornelius] looked on him, he was afraid, and said,

“What is it, Lord?”

And [the angel] said unto him,

“Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God. And now send men to Joppa, and call for one Simon, whose surname is Peter: He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do.”

And when the angel which spake unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually; And when he had declared all these things unto them, he sent them to Joppa.

On the morrow, as they went on their journey, and drew nigh unto the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the sixth hour: And he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance, and saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending unto him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth: Wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air. And there came a voice to him,

“Rise, Peter; kill, and eat.”

But Peter said,

“Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten any thing that is common or unclean.”

And the voice spake unto him again the second time,

“What God hath cleansed, that call not thou common.”

This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven. Now while Peter doubted in himself what this vision which he had seen should mean, behold, the men which were sent from Cornelius had made inquiry for Simon’s house, and stood before the gate, And called, and asked whether Simon, which was surnamed Peter, were lodged there. While Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him,

“Behold, three men seek thee. Arise therefore, and get thee down, and go with them, doubting nothing: for I have sent them.”

Then Peter went down to the men which were sent unto him from Cornelius; and said,

“Behold, I am he whom ye seek: what is the cause wherefore ye are come?”

And they said,

“Cornelius the centurion, a just man, and one that feareth God, and of good report among all the nation of the Jews, was warned from God by an holy angel to send for thee into his house, and to hear words of thee.”

Then called [Peter] them in, and lodged them. And on the morrow Peter went away with them, and certain brethren from Joppa accompanied him. And the morrow after they entered into Cæsarea. And Cornelius waited for them, and had called together his kinsmen and near friends. And as Peter was coming in, Cornelius met him, and fell down at his feet, and worshipped him. But Peter took him up, saying,

“Stand up; I myself also am a man.”

And as he talked with him, he went in, and found many that were come together. And [Peter] said unto them,

“Ye know how that it is an unlawful thing for a man that is a Jew to keep company, or come unto one of another nation; but God hath shewed me that I should not call any man common or unclean. Therefore came I unto you without gainsaying, as soon as I was sent for: I ask therefore for what intent ye have sent for me?”

And Cornelius said,

“Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, And said,

‘Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God.

Send therefore to Joppa, and call hither Simon, whose surname is Peter; he is lodged in the house of one Simon a tanner by the sea side: who, when he cometh, shall speak unto thee.’

“Immediately therefore I sent to thee; and thou hast well done that thou art come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded thee of God.”

Then Peter opened his mouth, and said,

“Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons: But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him. The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: he is Lord of all.”

**Peter bears witness of the divinity of Jesus Christ (Acts 10:37-43)**

“That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judæa, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached; How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree: Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly; Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before of God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead. And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead. To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”

**Peter baptizes Gentiles, who then receive the Holy Ghost (Acts 10:44-48)**

While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word. And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost. For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

“Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?”

And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

**Peter exhorts the Saints to seek out their calling and election (2 Peter 1:1-11)**

Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ: Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord, According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue:

Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience, godliness; And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity.

For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

**Peter bears witness of the divinity of Jesus Christ (2 Peter 1:16-18)**

For we have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty. For he received from God the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the excellent glory, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. And this voice which came from heaven we heard, when we were with him in the holy mount.

**Stephen recounts the history of Israel before the Sanhedrin (Acts 7:1-17)**

Then said the high priest [unto Stephen,]

“Are these things so?”

And [Stephen] said,

“Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken; The God of glory appeared unto our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran, and said unto him,

‘Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and come into the land which I shall shew thee.’

“Then came he out of the land of the Chaldæans, and dwelt in Charran: and from thence, when his father was dead, he removed him into this land, wherein ye now dwell. And he gave him none inheritance in it, no, not so much as to set his foot on: yet he promised that he would give it to him for a possession, and to his seed after him, when as yet he had no child. And God spake on this wise, That his seed should sojourn in a strange land; and that they should bring them into bondage, and entreat them evil four hundred years.

‘And the nation to whom they shall be in bondage will I judge,’

“said God:

‘and after that shall they come forth, and serve me in this place.’

“And he gave him the covenant of circumcision: and so Abraham begat Isaac, and circumcised him the eighth day; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat the twelve patriarchs. And the patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt: but God was with him, And delivered him out of all his afflictions, and gave him favour and wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh king of Egypt; and he made him governor over Egypt and all his house. Now there came a dearth over all the land of Egypt and Chanaan, and great affliction: and our fathers found no sustenance.

“But when Jacob heard that there was corn in Egypt, he sent out our fathers first. And at the second time Joseph was made known to his brethren; and Joseph’s kindred was made known unto Pharaoh. Then sent Joseph, and called his father Jacob to him, and all his kindred, threescore and fifteen souls. So Jacob went down into Egypt, and died, he, and our fathers, And were carried over into Sychem, and laid in the sepulchre that Abraham bought for a sum of money of the sons of Emmor the father of Sychem. But when the time of the promise drew nigh, which God had sworn to Abraham, the people grew and multiplied in Egypt.”

**Stephen compares Moses to Jesus Christ (Acts 7:18-38)**

“Till another king arose, which knew not Joseph. He same dealt subtilly with our kindred, and evil entreated our fathers, so that they cast out their young children, to the end they might not live. In which time Moses was born, and was exceeding fair, and nourished up in his father’s house three months: And when he was cast out, Pharaoh’s daughter took him up, and nourished him for her own son. And Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and was mighty in words and in deeds.

“And when he was full forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brethren the children of Israel.

And seeing one of them suffer wrong, he defended him, and avenged him that was oppressed, and smote the Egyptian: For he supposed his brethren would have understood how that God by his hand would deliver them: but they understood not. And the next day he shewed himself unto them as they strove, and would have set them at one again, saying, Sirs, ye are brethren; why do ye wrong one to another? But he that did his neighbour wrong thrust him away, saying,

‘Who made thee a ruler and a judge over us? Wilt thou kill me, as thou diddest the Egyptian yesterday?’

“Then fled Moses at this saying, and was a stranger in the land of Madian, where he begat two sons.

And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. When Moses saw it, he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold it, the voice of the Lord came unto him,

‘Saying, I am the God of thy fathers, the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.’

“Then Moses trembled, and durst not behold. Then said the Lord to him,

‘Put off thy shoes from thy feet: for the place where thou standest is holy ground. I have seen, I have seen the affliction of my people which is in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and am come down to deliver them. And now come, I will send thee into Egypt.’

“This Moses whom they refused, saying,

‘Who made thee a ruler and a judge?’

“The same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush. He brought them out, after that he had shewed wonders and signs in the land of Egypt, and in the Red sea, and in the wilderness forty years. This is that Moses, which said unto the children of Israel,

‘A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear.’

“This is he, that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel which spake to him in the mount Sina, and with our fathers: who received the lively oracles to give unto us:”

**MOSES JESUS**

**Gave Israel the Lesser Law (Law of Moses) Gave Israel the Higher Law (Melchizedek Priesthood)**

**The people rejected God speaking to them The people rejected Jesus Christ from among them**

**The people wandered for 40 years Christ fasted in wilderness for 40 days**

**The lifted Brass Serpent was symbolic of Christ Christ was lifted upon the cross**

**Moses delivered Israel from Egyptian bondage Christ delivers His people from spiritual bondage**

**Israel sacrificed their firstborn animals Christ, the first born of God, was sacrificed for us**

***7.2***

***FROM THE LIFE OF THE APOSTLE PAUL***

***-APPROX 40-70 A.D.-***

**Jesus appears to Saul, calls him to the ministry (Acts 9:1-20)**

And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest,

And desired of him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, that if he found any of this way, whether they were men or women, he might bring them bound unto Jerusalem. And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shined round about him a light from heaven: And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him,

“Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?”

And [Saul] said,

“Who art thou, Lord?”

And the Lord said,

“I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.”

And he trembling and astonished said,

“Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?”

And the Lord said unto him,

“Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told thee what thou must do.”

And the men which journeyed with him stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man. And Saul arose from the earth; and when his eyes were opened, he saw no man: but they led him by the hand, and brought him into Damascus.

And he was three days without sight, and neither did eat nor drink. And there was a certain disciple at Damascus, named Ananias; and to him said the Lord in a vision,

“Ananias.”

And he said,

“Behold, I am here, Lord.”

And the Lord said unto him,

“Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and inquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul, of Tarsus: for, behold, he prayeth, And hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on him, that he might receive his sight.”

Then Ananias answered,

“Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem: And here he hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that call on thy name.”

But the Lord said unto him,

“Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel: For I will shew him how great things he must suffer for my name’s sake.”

And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said,

“Brother Saul, the Lord, even Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.”

And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized. And when he had received meat, he was strengthened. Then was Saul certain days with the disciples which were at Damascus. And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

**Saul has his name changed to Paul (Acts 13:9)**

Then Saul, (who is also called Paul)…

**Paul declares that God chose Israel to bless God sent the Savior, Jesus Christ, to the people of Israel, through the seed of King David (Acts 13:17, 21-23)**

[And Paul spake unto them, saying]

“The God of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with an high arm brought he them out of it.And afterward they desired a king: and God gave unto them Saul the son of Cis, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years.And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave testimony, and said,

‘I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

Of this man’s seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus.”

**The salvation of Jesus Christ is a an everlasting covenant of mercy (Acts 13:34; Isaiah 55:1-3)**

And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David. Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? Hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness. Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

**Some Jews reject the gospel while some Gentiles embrace it (Acts 13:42-48)**

And when the Jews were gone out of the synagogue, the Gentiles besought that these words might be preached to them the next Sabbath. Now when the congregation was broken up, many of the Jews and religious proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas: who, speaking to them, persuaded them to continue in the grace of God. And the next Sabbath day came almost the whole city together to hear the word of God. But when the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spake against those things which were spoken by Paul, contradicting and blaspheming.

Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles. For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth. And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

**Conflict between believing and unbelieving Jews and Gentiles (Acts 14:1-2)**

And it came to pass in Iconium, that they went both together into the synagogue of the Jews, and so spake, that a great multitude both of the Jews and also of the Greeks believed. But the unbelieving Jews stirred up the Gentiles, and made their minds evil affected against the brethren.

**Paul teaches both Jews and Greeks (Acts 17:4-6)**

And some of them believed, and consorted with Paul and Silas; and of the devout Greeks a great multitude, and of the chief women not a few. But the Jews which believed not, moved with envy, took unto them certain lewd fellows of the baser sort, and gathered a company, and set all the city on an uproar, and assaulted the house of Jason, and sought to bring them out to the people. And when they found them not, they drew Jason and certain brethren unto the rulers of the city, crying,

“These that have turned the world upside down are come hither also;”

**Paul bestows the Holy Ghost upon baptized members (Acts 19:1-6)**

And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples, He said unto them,

“Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?”

And they said unto him,

“We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.”

And [Paul] said unto them,

“Unto what then were ye baptized?”

And they said,

“Unto John’s baptism.”

Then said Paul,

“John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.”

When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.

**Paul desires to preach the gospel in Rome (Acts 19:21-22)**

After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have been there, I must also see Rome. So he sent into Macedonia two of them that ministered unto him, Timotheus and Erastus; but he himself stayed in Asia for a season.

**Paul declares that he is clean from the blood of all men through the preaching of the gospel (Acts 20:25-27)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“And now, behold, I know that ye all, among whom I have gone preaching the kingdom of God, shall see my face no more. Wherefore I take you to record this day, that I am pure from the blood of all men. For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of God.”

**Some Jews are offended that Paul allowed converted Greeks to “pollute the temple” (Acts 21:21-30)**

[And the Elders said unto Paul,]

“And they are informed of thee, that thou teachest all the Jews which are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise their children, neither to walk after the customs. What is it therefore? The multitude must needs come together: for they will hear that thou art come. Do therefore this that we say to thee: We have four men which have a vow on them; Them take, and purify thyself with them, and be at charges with them, that they may shave their heads: and all may know that those things, whereof they were informed concerning thee, are nothing; but that thou thyself also walkest orderly, and keepest the law. As touching the Gentiles which believe, we have written and concluded that they observe no such thing, save only that they keep themselves from things offered to idols, and from blood, and from strangled, and from fornication.”

Then Paul took the men, and the next day purifying himself with them entered into the temple, to signify the accomplishment of the days of purification, until that an offering should be offered for every one of them. And when the seven days were almost ended, the Jews which were of Asia, when they saw him in the temple, stirred up all the people, and laid hands on him, crying out,

“Men of Israel, help: This is the man, that teacheth all men everywhere against the people, and the law, and this place: and further brought Greeks also into the temple, and hath polluted this holy place.”

(For they had seen before with him in the city Trophimus an Ephesian, whom they supposed that Paul had brought into the temple.) And all the city was moved, and the people ran together: and they took Paul, and drew him out of the temple: and forthwith the doors were shut.

**Jesus appears to Paul and tells him that he will preach the gospel in Rome (Acts 23:11)**

And the night following the Lord stood by him, and said,

“Be of good cheer, Paul: for as thou hast testified of me in Jerusalem, so must thou bear witness also at Rome.”

**Paul is put on a ship sailing towards Italy (Acts 27:1)**

And when it was determined that we should sail into Italy, they delivered Paul and certain other prisoners unto one named Julius, a centurion of Augustus’ band.

**Paul, in Rome, preaches the gospel to the Jews and the Gentiles (Acts 28:16-31)**

And when we came to Rome, the centurion delivered the prisoners to the captain of the guard: but Paul was suffered to dwell by himself with a soldier that kept him. And it came to pass, that after three days Paul called the chief of the Jews together: and when they were come together, he said unto them,

“Men and brethren, though I have committed nothing against the people, or customs of our fathers, yet was I delivered prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans. Who, when they had examined me, would have let me go, because there was no cause of death in me. But when the Jews spake against it, I was constrained to appeal unto Cæsar; not that I had ought to accuse my nation of. For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see you, and to speak with you: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain.”

And they said unto him,

“We neither received letters out of Judæa concerning thee, neither any of the brethren that came shewed or spake any harm of thee. But we desire to hear of thee what thou thinkest: for as concerning this sect, we know that every where it is spoken against.”

And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening. And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not. And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers, saying,

“Go unto this people, and say,

‘Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive,’

“For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.”

And when he had said these words, the Jews departed, and had great reasoning among themselves. And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him, preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

**Paul declares to the Romans that Jesus is the Son of God (Rom 1:1-7)**

Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ, called to be an apostle, separated unto the gospel of God, which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures, concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh; And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead: by whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name: Among whom are ye also the called of Jesus Christ: To all that be in Rome, beloved of God, called to be saints: Grace to you and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.

**Paul declares salvation through the gospel goes to Jew and Gentile (Rom 1:16)**

For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

**Both Jew and Gentile will be judged according to the gospel (Rom 2:10-18)**

But glory, honour, and peace, to every man that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile: For there is no respect of persons with God. For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law: and as many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law; For not the hearers of the law are just before God, but the doers of the law shall be justified. For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves:

Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;) In the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel. Behold, thou art called a Jew, and restest in the law, and makest thy boast of God, and knowest his will, and approvest the things that are more excellent, being instructed out of the law;

**Paul recounts the righteousness of Abraham led to the promises of God unto him (Rom 4:1-5, 13-22)**

What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found? For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.

For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect: Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, there is no transgression.

Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all, as it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations, before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were. Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.

And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sara’s womb: He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.

**Baptism necessary for salvation (Rom 6:1-8)**

What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection: Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him.

**Paul desires that all of Israel be saved (Rom 10:1, 12-13)**

Brethren, my heart’s desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

**Paul declares that God stretches His hand to Israel all day long (Rom 10:21)**

But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

**Jesus Christ, the Deliverer, will save the House of Jacob: the Elect of God (Rom 11:26-28)**

And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written,

“There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob: For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins. As concerning the gospel, they are enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, they are beloved for the fathers’ sakes.”

**Jesus Christ is the Lord over the dead and the living, who will all confess Him (Rom 14:8-11; Phil 2:9-11)**

For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord’s. For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living. But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? For we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. For it is written,

“As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.”

Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

**The Gentiles received the gifts of the Spirit (Rom 15:15-19)**

Nevertheless, brethren, I have written the more boldly unto you in some sort, as putting you in mind, because of the grace that is given to me of God, That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost. I have therefore whereof I may glory through Jesus Christ in those things which pertain to God. For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which Christ hath not wrought by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed, Through mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God; so that from Jerusalem, and round about unto Illyricum, I have fully preached the gospel of Christ.

**The gospel bring unity among its members (1 Cor 1:10)**

Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.

**Paul’s struggles to teach the Jews and the Gentiles (1 Cor 1:22-24)**

For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom: But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness; But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

**The importance of preaching the gospel (1 Cor 9:16)**

For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

**Paul declares the Gospel of Jesus Christ (1 Cor 15:1-3)**

Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.

For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

**Paul declares that the Gospel of Jesus Christ trumps the Law of Moses (2 Cor 3:3, 13-15; Gal 2:16-21)**

Forasmuch as ye are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart. And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not steadfastly look to the end of that which is abolished: But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same veil untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which veil is done away in Christ.

But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the veil is upon their heart. Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

But if, while we seek to be justified by Christ, we ourselves also are found sinners, is therefore Christ the minister of sin? God forbid. For if I build again the things which I destroyed, I make myself a transgressor. For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto God. I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me. I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

**Paul speaks of seeing the Celestial Kingdom and Spirit Paradise (2 Cor 12:1-4)**

It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I will come to visions and revelations of the Lord. I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.

**All who are baptized, Jew or Gentile, are alike unto God (Gal 3:27-29)**

For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for ye are all one in Christ Jesus. And if ye be Christ’s, then are ye Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.

**Those who accept the Gospel, are adopted by Him and become the heirs of God (Gal 4:1-7)**

Now I say,

“That the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father.”

Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world: But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying,

“Abba, Father.”

Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

**The blood of Christ can save both Jew and Gentile (Eph 2:11-19)**

Wherefore remember, that ye being in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands; That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world: But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ. For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace; And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God;

**Gentiles are to be partakers of the same glory and blessings as the Jews (Eph 3:6)**

That the Gentiles should be fellow heirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel.

**Paul prophesies of the Great Apostasy (2 Thess 2:1-3)**

Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him,

That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand. Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

**Christ is the Great High Priest and Apostle of our religion**

**(Heb 3:1; Heb 5:1, 4-10; Heb 6:19-20; Heb 7:19-27; Heb 10:19-22)**

Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus; For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins: And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron.

So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, today have I begotten thee. As he saith also in another place,

“Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.”

Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared; Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered; And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;

Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec. For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God. And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest: (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:) By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death: But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood. Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them. For such an high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens; Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people’s: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh; And having an high priest over the house of God; Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.

**Ancient Israel was offered the gospel but rejected it (Heb 4:1-2, 6)**

Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.

For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it. Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief.

**The foundation of the gospel is faith, repentance, and covenants (Heb 6:1-5)**

Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God, Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands, and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment. And this will we do, if God permit. For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost,

And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come.

**Christ promises to deliver a greater covenant to the House of Israel (Heb 8:6-13)**

But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah: Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people: And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more. In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

**Christ is the Mediator of this new covenant (Heb 9:11-15)**

But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

**JESUS IS THE MEDIATOR OF THE NEW COVENANT**

***7.3***

***PROPHECIES ABOUT***

***THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL AFTER THE***

***CRUCIFIXION AND RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST***

**The Jews Will Be Scattered a Second Time For Killing the Savior (1 Ne 22:5; 2 Ne 6:9-11; 2 Ne 10:3-6)**

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

**Punishments pronounced upon the Jews and Jerusalem for their disobedience (2 Ne 13:1-15/Isaiah 3:1-15)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, in the name of the Lord, saying]

“For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water— The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient; The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator. And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

“And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable. When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say:

‘Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—‘

“In that day shall he swear, saying:

‘I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.’

“For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory. The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves! Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

“Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them! And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths. The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people. The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses. What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.”

**The Jews to be Scattered for rejecting the Savior (2 Ne 25:12-15)**

[And Nephi prophesied concerning the Jews, saying]

“But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks. Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

“And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church. Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.”

**God took the gospel away from the Jews because of their disobedience and crucifying of Christ (Jacob 4:14-16;)**

[And Jacob prophesied unto the people, saying]

“But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

“And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation. But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.”

**Jesus prophesies of the coming invasion and destruction of Jerusalem (Matt 24:1-22; Mark 13:1-23; Luke 21:1-24, JSM 1:1-21)**

And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: one of his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, and saith unto him,

“Master, see what manner of stones and what buildings are here!”

And Jesus answering said unto those that were with him,

“Seest thou these great buildings? See ye not all these things? As for these things which ye behold, verily I say unto you, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.”

And as he sat upon the mount of Olives over against the temple, the disciples Peter, and James and John and Andrew came unto him privately, asking,

“But Master, tell us, when shall these things be? And what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world? And what shall be the sign when all these things shall come to pass and be fulfilled?”

And Jesus answered and said unto them,

“Take heed that no man deceive you, that ye be not deceived: For many shall come in my name, saying,

‘I am Christ; and the time draweth near.’

“go ye not therefore after them, for these shall deceive many.

“And ye shall hear of wars and rumours of wars. But when ye shall hear of wars and commotions, see that ye be not troubled nor terrified: for all these things must first needs be come to pass: the end shall not be yet and the end is not by and by. For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and troubles, and great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven. All these are the beginning of sorrows.

“But take heed to yourselves: Because before all these, they shall then lay their hands on you, and persecute and afflict you, and shall kill you. And they shall deliver you up to councils, delivering you up to the synagogues where ye shall be beaten, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers, being hated of all nations for my name’s sake, for a testimony against them. And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another.

“But when they shall lead you, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what ye shall speak. Settle it therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye: for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy Ghost. For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

“And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolks, and friends; Now the brother shall betray the brother to death, and the father the son; and children shall rise up against their parents. And some of you shall they cause to be put to death. But there shall not an hair of your head perish. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name’s sake: but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. In your patience possess ye your souls.

“And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many. And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. And this gospel of the kingdom must first be published and preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

“And when ye therefore shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the abomination of desolation thereof is nigh, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, standing where it ought not (whoso readeth, let him understand:).Then let them which be in Judæa flee into the mountains: And let him that is on the housetop not go down into the house, neither enter therein, to take any thing out of his house: and let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto. Neither let him which is in the field return back again to take his clothes or his garment.

“For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days! For there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day: And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

“For in those days then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, no, nor ever shall be. And except those the Lord had shortened those days,, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect’s sake, whom he hath chosen, those days shall be shortened.

**Jesus prophesies of the coming invasion of Jerusalem following His death (D&C 45:18-24)**

[And Jesus spake unto His apostles, saying]

“And now ye behold this temple which is in Jerusalem, which ye call the house of God, and your enemies say that this house shall never fall. But, verily I say unto you, that desolation shall come upon this generation as a thief in the night, and this people shall be destroyed and scattered among all nations.

And this temple which ye now see shall be thrown down that there shall not be left one stone upon another.

“And it shall come to pass, that this generation of Jews shall not pass away until every desolation which I have told you concerning them shall come to pass. Ye say that ye know that the end of the world cometh; ye say also that ye know that the heavens and the earth shall pass away; And in this ye say truly, for so it is; but these things which I have told you shall not pass away until all shall be fulfilled. And this I have told you concerning Jerusalem; and when that day shall come, shall a remnant be scattered among all nations;”

***7.4***

***JESUS CHRIST APPEARS TO THE NEPHITES,***

***IS LATER REJECTED BY THEM***

***-Approx 0 A.D.-***

**Shortly before and after the birth of Christ, the people are divided between great miracles and great wickedness (3 Ne 1:4, 22-25; 3 Ne 2:1-3)**

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people. And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land. And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen— Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

***-Approx 33 A.D.-***

**The Gadianton Robbers overthrow the government (3 Ne 7:1-7)**

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land. And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land. And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes. Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan. And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets. And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

**Many earthquakes, storms, and tempests followed by 3 days of darkness completely disrupts the land and economy**

**(See 3 Ne 8)**

***-Approx 34 A.D.-***

**Jesus appears to the Nephites, gathered at the temple (3 Ne 11:1-12)**

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place. And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death. And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not. And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came. And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

“Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.”

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them. And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

“Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world. And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.”

**Lehi’s descendants are a remnant of the House of Israel (3 Ne 20:10)**

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them:

“Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.”

**Jesus calls Nephi and 11 others as his disciples, gives them authority to teach and baptized (3 Ne 11:18-22; 3 Ne 12:1; 3 Ne 19:4)**

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth. And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet. And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him. And the Lord said unto him:

“I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.”

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying:

“Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.”

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

**The 12 Apostles Will Judge the Twelve Tribes of Israel, and the 12 Nephite Disciples: (1 Ne 12:9)**

[And the angel said unto me, Nephi,]

“Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.”

**The 12 Nephite Disciples Will Judge the Nephites: (1 Ne 12:10-11)**

“And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.”

And the angel said unto me:

“Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.”

**3 of the Disciples are promised to live until the Second Coming (3 Ne 28:4-8)**

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them:

“What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?”

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired. And he said unto them:

“Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me. Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven. And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.”

**The 3 Nephites will minister unto all the remnants of scattered Israel (3 Ne 28:29)**

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

**Jesus returns to heaven, miraculous things are seen (3 Ne 28:12-14)**

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed. And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things. And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

***-Approx 231 A.D.-***

**230 years after Christ came, the people are terribly divided (4 Ne 1:35-39)**

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people. And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites; Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle. And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

**The people continue in their apostasy by seeking out the plans of Gadianton’s Robbers (4 Ne 1:40-43)**

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God. And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years. And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton. And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

***-Approx 240 A.D.-***

**300 years after Christ came, both the Nephites and Lamanites are completely wicked (4 Ne 1:45-46)**

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another. And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

**The prophet Ammaron hides up the sacred record, charges Mormon to finish the record (4 Ne 1:47-49, Morm 1:1-5)**

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead. And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ. And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

**Mormon, in his young age, sees the Savior, despite the gross wickedness surrounding him (Morm 1:8-19)**

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites. Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites. And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them. And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed. But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief. And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus. And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake. And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again. And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

**The Nephites completely blaspheme, and reject, Jesus Christ and are rejected by God (Morm 2:13-15; Morm 3:14-15)**

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin. And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives. And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away. And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

“Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, “behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.”

**The worst sins ever committed by the House of Israel, are had among the Nephites and Lamanites (Morm 4:10-14)**

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually. And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people. And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites. And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

**The people are completely void of the Spirit of God, now led by satan (Morm 5:16-18)**

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind. They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father. But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

***-Approx 385 A.D.-***

**The Nephites completely killed off in one last, final battle (Morm 6:1-22)**

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites. And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle. And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites. And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah. And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them. And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers. And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war. And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni. And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst. And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each. And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

“O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you! Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss. O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen! But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.”

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

**Moroni keeps and finishes the sacred record (Morm 8:1-4)**

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father. And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed. And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not. Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

**Moroni discourses on faith**

**(See Ether 12)**

***-Approx 421 A.D.-***

**Moroni counsels us to pray to know if the Book of Mormon is true (Mor 10:3-5)**

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts. And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost. And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

**Moroni encourages all people to come unto Christ (Mor 10:32-34)**

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God. And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot. And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

**Alma prophesied to Helaman of the ultimate destruction of the Nephites (Alma 45:8-14)**

Then Alma said unto him:

“Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land. But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say. And these are the words:

“Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief. Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct— Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

“And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi. But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.”

**Nephi sees generations of wars among the Lamanites, after Destroying the Nephites, Becoming Full of Abominations (1 Ne 12:20-23)**

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land. And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away. And the angel said unto me:

“Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.”

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

******

***CHAPTER 8:***

***THE ROLE OF THE GOSPEL IN RELATION TO***

***THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

******

***8.1***

***AMERICA & THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**America is a choice land (2 Ne 1:5)**

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

***-1492 A.D.-***

**Nephi sees Columbus and others discover America: (1 Ne 13:12-13)**

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land. And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

**Lamanite descendants to be scattered when America begins to be colonized, as a result of rejecting Jesus Christ (2 Ne 1:10-11)**

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them. Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

**Lamanites to be scattered by the Gentiles once they occupy America (1 Ne 13:14)**

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

**The land of America will be a great nation among the gentiles…who will scatter the Lamanite descendants (1 Ne 22:7)**

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

**The Gentiles who first occupy America are blessed by God (1 Ne 13:15-16)**

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

***-1750-1776 A.D.-***

**Nephi sees the American Revolutionary War: (1 Ne 13:17-18)**

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them. And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

**America is to be a land of liberty (2 Ne 1:7)**

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

**Nephi Sees the blessings of God upon America (1 Ne 13:19, 30)**

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations. Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

**Those who occupy America must obey God’s commandments (2 Ne 1:9)**

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

**America is a choice land, and her inhabitants are protected by God (2 Ne 10:10-14)**

[And God said,’

“But behold, this land, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land. And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles. And I will fortify this land against all other nations. And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish…For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.”

**America is a choice land and all who live here must worship the Lord (2 Ne 10:19)**

“Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me.”

saith God.

**America is cursed when the people reject God (Alma 45:16)**

And [Alma] said: Thus saith the Lord God—

“Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.”

**The American Continent is given to the descendants of Lehi throughout all time, fulfilling a prophecy of Isaiah**

**(3 Ne 16:16-20; 3 Ne 20:14)**

[And Jesus spake unto the multitude, saying]

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance. And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

‘Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion. Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem. The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.’

“And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.”

**In the latter-days, America is to be inhabited by a free people who believe the gospel (D&C 10:49-52)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Now, this is not all—their faith in their prayers was that this gospel should be made known also, if it were possible that other nations should possess this land; And thus they did leave a blessing upon this land in their prayers, that whosoever should believe in this gospel in this land might have eternal life; Yea, that it might be free unto all of whatsoever nation, kindred, tongue, or people they may be. And now, behold, according to their faith in their prayers will I bring this part of my gospel to the knowledge of my people. Behold, I do not bring it to destroy that which they have received, but to build it up.

***8.2***

***THE RESTORATION OF THE GOSPEL***

***IN CONNECTION TO THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**The Great Whore of Babylon drove the Church into the wilderness (D&C 86:1-3)**

Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you my servants, concerning the parable of the wheat and of the tares:

“Behold, verily I say, the field was the world, and the apostles were the sowers of the seed; And after they have fallen asleep the great persecutor of the church, the apostate, the whore, even Babylon, that maketh all nations to drink of her cup, in whose hearts the enemy, even Satan, sitteth to reign—behold he soweth the tares; wherefore, the tares choke the wheat and drive the church into the wilderness.”

***-1820 A.D.-***

**The Restoration of the Gospel is to prepare the world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ (Mal 3:1-2)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come. But who may abide the day of [the Lord’s] coming? And who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner’s fire, and like fullers’ soap.”

**The Church is to be organized according to prophets and apostles (Eph 2:19-20; Eph 3:2-6; Eph 4:11-14)**

Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward: How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words, Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ) which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; That the Gentiles should be fellow heirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:

And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ: That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive;

**The final dispensation is where God will gather together all things (Eph 1:10)**

That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him.

**The Restoration of the Gospel Will Take Place among the Gentiles (1 Ne 22:8)**

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

**In the latter-days, God will bring about the restoration of His people upon the earth (2 Ne 30:8)**

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

**The Restoration of the Gospel Will Make Known the Covenants between God and Abraham to the Jews and the Gentiles**

**(1 Ne 22:9)**

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

**Joseph of Egypt, in Vision, Saw Joseph Smith’s Role in the Restoration (2 Ne 3:6-15)**

For Joseph truly testified, saying:

“A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins. Thus saith the Lord unto me:

‘A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers. And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

‘And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel. And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt. But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

‘Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord. And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel.”

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying:

“Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise. And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.”

***-1823 A.D.-***

**Moroni tells Joseph Smith that the prophecy of Malachi concerning the destruction of the wicked would soon be fulfilled**

**(JSH 1:36-37)**

After telling me these things, he, [Moroni] commenced quoting the prophecies of the Old Testament. He first quoted part of the third chapter of [Malachi](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/3?lang=eng); and he quoted also the [fourth or last chapter](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/4?lang=eng) of the same prophecy, though with a little variation from the way it reads in our Bibles. Instead of quoting the [first verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/4.1?lang=eng#p1) as it reads in our books, he quoted it thus:

“For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven, and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly shall burn as stubble; for they that come shall burn them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.”

**Moroni tells Joseph Smith that the prophecy of Malachi concerning the return of Elijah would soon be fulfilled (JSH 1:38-39)**

And again, he quoted the [fifth verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/4.5?lang=eng#p5) thus:

“Behold, I will reveal unto you the Priesthood, by the hand of Elijah the prophet, before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord.”

He also quoted the [next verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/4.6?lang=eng#p6) differently:

“And he shall plant in the hearts of the children the promises made to the fathers, and the hearts of the children shall turn to their fathers. If it were not so, the whole earth would be utterly wasted at his coming.”

**Moroni quotes biblical scriptures concerning the gathering of Israel and destruction of the wicked (JSH 1:40; Isaiah 11:10-16)**

In addition to these, he quoted the eleventh chapter of [Isaiah](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/11?lang=eng),

**Isaiah 11:10-16**

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

13 The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines toward the west; they shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

15 And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dryshod.

16 And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

saying that it was about to be fulfilled. He quoted also the [third chapter of Acts, twenty-second and twenty-third verses](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/acts/3.22-23?lang=eng#p22), precisely as they stand in our New Testament.

**Acts 3:22-23**

For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

He said that that prophet was Christ; but the day had not yet come when “they who would not hear his voice should be cut off from among the people,” but soon would come.

**Moroni quotes a prophecy of Joel, saying that it would soon be fulfilled (JSH 1:41; Joel 2:28-32)**

He also quoted the second chapter of Joel, from the [twenty-eighth verse to the last](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/joel/2.28-32?lang=eng#p28). He also said that this was not yet fulfilled, but was soon to be…

**President Hinckley, in Oct 2001, declares the prophecy of Joel fulfilled**

“The era in which we live is the fulness of times spoken of in the scriptures, when God has brought together all of the elements of previous dispensations. From the day that He and His Beloved Son manifested themselves to the boy Joseph, there has been a tremendous cascade of enlightenment poured out upon the world. The hearts of men have turned to their fathers in fulfillment of the words of Malachi. The vision of Joel has been fulfilled wherein he declared:

“And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit. And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke. The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the Lord come. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call” ([Joel 2:28–32](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/joel/2.28-32?lang=eng#p28)).

**Moroni prophecies that the fulness of the Gentiles would soon come to pass (JSH 1:41)**

… And he further stated that the fulness of the Gentiles was soon to come in. He quoted many other passages of scripture, and offered many explanations which cannot be mentioned here.

**Moroni prophesied to Joseph Smith of great desolations and destructions to come upon the earth**

**(JSH 1:45)**

He commenced, and again related the very same things which he had done at his first visit, without the least variation; which having done, he informed me of great judgments which were coming upon the earth, with great desolations by famine, sword, and pestilence; and that these grievous judgments would come on the earth in this generation. Having related these things, he again ascended as he had done before.

**Joseph Smith was to bring forth the Nephite record in the latter-days (D&C 1:29)**

And after having received the record of the Nephites, yea, even my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., might have power to translate through the mercy of God, by the power of God, the Book of Mormon.

**Joseph Smith holds the keys of the mysteries of God which have been sealed since the foundation of the earth, to be revealed at the Second Coming (D&C 35:17-18)**

And I have sent forth the fulness of my gospel by the hand of my servant Joseph; and in weakness have I blessed him; And I have given unto him the keys of the mystery of those things which have been sealed, even things which were from the foundation of the world, and the things which shall come from this time until the time of my coming, if he abide in me, and if not, another will I plant in his stead.

**Joseph Smith holds the keys of the High Priesthood in the latter-days (D&C 81:1-2)**

Verily, verily, I say unto you my servant Frederick G. Williams:

“Listen to the voice of him who speaketh, to the word of the Lord your God, and hearken to the calling wherewith you are called, even to be a high priest in my church, and a counselor unto my servant Joseph Smith, Jun.; Unto whom I have given the keys of the kingdom, which belong always unto the Presidency of the High Priesthood.”

**The Prophets of God from Joseph Smith onward hold the keys of the kingdom of God…the last time the Kingdom will come forth (D&C 90:2-4)**

Therefore, thou art blessed from henceforth that bear the keys of the kingdom given unto you; which kingdom is coming forth for the last time. Verily I say unto you, the keys of this kingdom shall never be taken from you, while thou art in the world, neither in the world to come; Nevertheless, through you shall the oracles be given to another, yea, even unto the church.

**Numerous prophets gave Joseph Smith the Priesthood keys of their respective dispensations (D&C 128:20-21)**

And again, what do we hear? Glad tidings from Cumorah! Moroni, an angel from heaven, declaring the fulfilment of the prophets—the book to be revealed. A voice of the Lord in the wilderness of Fayette, Seneca county, declaring the three witnesses to bear record of the book! The voice of Michael on the banks of the Susquehanna, detecting the devil when he appeared as an angel of light! The voice of Peter, James, and John in the wilderness between Harmony, Susquehanna county, and Colesville, Broome county, on the Susquehanna river, declaring themselves as possessing the keys of the kingdom, and of the dispensation of the fulness of times!

And again, the voice of God in the chamber of old Father Whitmer, in Fayette, Seneca county, and at sundry times, and in divers places through all the travels and tribulations of this Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints! And the voice of Michael, the archangel; the voice of Gabriel, and of Raphael, and of divers angels, from Michael or Adam down to the present time, all declaring their dispensation, their rights, their keys, their honors, their majesty and glory, and the power of their priesthood; giving line upon line, precept upon precept; here a little, and there a little; giving us consolation by holding forth that which is to come, confirming our hope!

**Joseph smith received the keys of the Melchizedek Priesthood at the hands of Peter, James, and John (D&C 27:12-13)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph Smith, saying]

“And also with Peter, and James, and John, whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you and confirmed you to be apostles, and especial witnesses of my name, and bear the keys of your ministry and of the same things which I revealed unto them; Unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times; and for the fulness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth;”

**The Prophet holds all the keys of the mysteries and revelations of God (D&C 28:6-7)**

[And the Lord spake unto Oliver Cowdery, saying]

“And thou shalt not command him who is at thy head, and at the head of the church; For I have given him the keys of the mysteries, and the revelations which are sealed, until I shall appoint unto them another in his stead.”

**Joseph Smith received all keys of previous dispensations (D&C 132:45)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph Smith, saying]

“For I have conferred upon you the keys and power of the priesthood, wherein I restore all things, and make known unto you all things in due time.”

**The Gospel was restored because Babylon (the world) had broken the everlasting covenant and ordinances of the Lord**

**(D&C 1:14-23)**

And the arm of the Lord shall be revealed; and the day cometh that they who will not hear the voice of the Lord, neither the voice of his servants, neither give heed to the words of the prophets and apostles, shall be cut off from among the people; For they have strayed from mine ordinances, and have broken mine everlasting covenant; They seek not the Lord to establish his righteousness, but every man walketh in his own way, and after the image of his own god, whose image is in the likeness of the world, and whose substance is that of an idol, which waxeth old and shall perish in Babylon, even Babylon the great, which shall fall.

Wherefore, I the Lord, knowing the calamity which should come upon the inhabitants of the earth, called upon my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., and spake unto him from heaven, and gave him commandments; And also gave commandments to others, that they should proclaim these things unto the world; and all this that it might be fulfilled, which was written by the prophets— The weak things of the world shall come forth and break down the mighty and strong ones, that man should not counsel his fellow man, neither trust in the arm of flesh—

But that every man might speak in the name of God the Lord, even the Savior of the world; That faith also might increase in the earth; That mine everlasting covenant might be established; That the fulness of my gospel might be proclaimed by the weak and the simple unto the ends of the world, and before kings and rulers.

**The beginning of the Restoration was the beginning of the 11th Hour…200 years ago. (D&C 33:2-3)**

For verily, verily, I say unto you that ye are called to lift up your voices as with the sound of a trump, to declare my gospel unto a crooked and perverse generation. For behold, the field is white already to harvest; and it is the eleventh hour, and the last time that I shall call laborers into my vineyard.

**President Nelson Declares We Are Living in the 11th Hour**

“You are living in the “eleventh hour.” The Lord has declared that this is the last time that He will call laborers into His vineyard to gather the elect from the four quarters of the earth. And you were sent to participate in this gathering. Again and again I have seen firsthand the powerful influence of True Millennials as they bring others to a knowledge of the truth. This is part of your identity and your purpose as the seed of Abraham!” (Becoming True Millennials, Jan 10, 2016, CES Fireside)

**The gospel is a great and marvelous work, to come forth in the latter-days (D&C 4:1; D&C 6:1; D&C 11:1; D&C 12:1; D&C 14:1; D&C 18:44)**

And by your hands I will work a marvelous work among the children of men, unto the convincing of many of their sins, that they may come unto repentance, and that they may come unto the kingdom of my Father.

**This is the last dispensation of the gospel when the Lord will gather together all things in one, both in heaven and on earth**

**(D&C 27:13)**

Unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times; and for the fulness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth;

**In the latter-days, the covenant of the fullness of the gospel is to be revealed (D&C 66:2)**

Verily I say unto you, blessed are you for receiving mine everlasting covenant, even the fulness of my gospel, sent forth unto the children of men, that they might have life and be made partakers of the glories which are to be revealed in the last days, as it was written by the prophets and apostles in days of old.

**God has restored the new and everlasting covenant of baptism in the latter-days (D&C 22:1-4)**

Behold, I say unto you that all old covenants have I caused to be done away in this thing; and this is a new and an everlasting covenant, even that which was from the beginning. Wherefore, although a man should be baptized an hundred times it availeth him nothing, for you cannot enter in at the strait gate by the law of Moses, neither by your dead works. For it is because of your dead works that I have caused this last covenant and this church to be built up unto me, even as in days of old.

Wherefore, enter ye in at the gate, as I have commanded, and seek not to counsel your God. Amen.

**The keys of the kingdom of God reside with the presiding authorities of the Church, who prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 65:2-3)**

The keys of the kingdom of God are committed unto man on the earth, and from thence shall the gospel roll forth unto the ends of the earth, as the stone which is cut out of the mountain without hands shall roll forth, until it has filled the whole earth. Yea, a voice crying—

“Prepare ye the way of the Lord, prepare ye the supper of the Lamb, make ready for the Bridegroom.”

**Many of the noble and great spirits were reserved to come forth in the latter-days, prepared to come forth in the due time of the Lord (D&C 138:55-56)**

[And Joseph F. Smith stated,]

“I observed that they were also among the noble and great ones who were chosen in the beginning to be rulers in the Church of God. Even before they were born, they, with many others, received their first lessons in the world of spirits and were prepared to come forth in the due time of the Lord to labor in his vineyard for the salvation of the souls of men.”

**We believe in ongoing revelation concerning the Restoration of the gospel and the gathering of Israel**

**(AOF 9)**

We believe all that God has revealed, all that He does now reveal, and we believe that He will yet reveal many great and important things pertaining to the Kingdom of God.

**The Second Coming is to happen in the latter-days (D&C 33:10)**

Yea, open your mouths and they shall be filled, saying:

“Repent, repent, and prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for the kingdom of heaven is at hand;”

**The Doctrine and Covenants prepares the world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ (D&C Intro, par 3)**

The book of Doctrine and Covenants is one of the standard works of the Church in company with the Holy Bible, the Book of Mormon, and the Pearl of Great Price. However, the Doctrine and Covenants is unique because it is not a translation of an ancient document, but is of modern origin and was given of God through His chosen prophets for the restoration of His holy work and the establishment of the kingdom of God on the earth in these days. In the revelations, one hears the tender but firm voice of the Lord Jesus Christ, speaking anew in the dispensation of the fulness of times; and the work that is initiated herein is preparatory to His Second Coming, in fulfillment of and in concert with the words of all the holy prophets since the world began.

**The Gospel to be preached in all the world before the Second Coming (JSM 1:31)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“And again, this Gospel of the Kingdom shall be preached in all the world, for a witness unto all nations, and then shall the end come, or the destruction of the wicked;”

***8.3***

***GOD WILL FULFILL ALL PROMISES SPOKEN BY HIS PROPHETS***

**God will fulfill all that he promises (Moses 4:30)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“For as I, the Lord God, liveth, even so my words cannot return void, for as they go forth out of my mouth they must be fulfilled.

**God will fulfill all his words (Num 11:23)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“Is the Lord’s hand waxed short? Thou shalt see now whether my word shall come to pass unto thee or not.”

**The Lord is angry because the people don’t believe the signs given to them (Num 14:11-12)**

And the Lord said unto Moses,

“How long will this people provoke me? And how long will it be ere they believe me, for all the signs which I have shewed among them? I will smite them with the pestilence, and disinherit them, and will make of thee a greater nation and mightier than they.”

**God fulfilled every promise spoken by Moses (1 Kings 8:55-56)**

And [Solomon] stood, and blessed all the congregation of Israel with a loud voice, saying,

“Blessed be the Lord, that hath given rest unto his people Israel, according to all that he promised: there hath not failed one word of all his good promise, which he promised by the hand of Moses his servant.”

**The Lord will reveal his secrets to his prophets (Amos 3:1-8)**

Hear this word that the Lord hath spoken against you,

“O children of Israel, against the whole family which I brought up from the land of Egypt, saying,

‘You only have I known of all the families of the earth: therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities.’

“Can two walk together, except they be agreed? Will a lion roar in the forest, when he hath no prey? will a young lion cry out of his den, if he have taken nothing? Can a bird fall in a snare upon the earth, where no gin is for him? shall one take up a snare from the earth, and have taken nothing at all? Shall a trumpet be blown in the city, and the people not be afraid? shall there be evil in a city, and the Lord hath not done it?

Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets. The lion hath roared, who will not fear? The Lord God hath spoken, who can but prophesy?”

**The words of Isaiah Are Likened unto All the House of Israel (2 Ne 6:5)**

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

**Those who fight against Zion will perish (2 Ne 10:15-18)**

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations. Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God. For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh— Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

**God will fulfill all of his promises (Alma 37:17-18)**

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers. For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

**All of the prophecies spoken by the prophets will come to pass (3 Ne 29:2)**

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

**The Lord will fulfill all the promises He’s made to Book of Mormon prophets (Mormon 8:22-23)**

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled. Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

**All the prophecies of God through his prophets will be fulfilled (Mormon 8:34)**

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

**The Brother of Jared declares that the Lord cannot lie (Ether 3:11-12)**

And the Lord said unto him:

“Believest thou the words which I shall speak?”

And he answered:

“Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.”

**All the prophecies spoken of by the prophets of God concerning the gathering of Israel will be fulfilled (D&C 42:39)**

For it shall come to pass, that which I spake by the mouths of my prophets shall be fulfilled; for I will consecrate of the riches of those who embrace my gospel among the Gentiles unto the poor of my people who are of the house of Israel.

**All the prophecies of the prophets of God will be fulfilled (D&C 101:19)**

And all these things that the prophets might be fulfilled.

**God fulfills all of his promises spoken by His prophets (D&C 109:23)**

And from this place they may bear exceedingly great and glorious tidings, in truth, unto the ends of the earth, that they may know that this is thy work, and that thou hast put forth thy hand, to fulfil that which thou hast spoken by the mouths of the prophets, concerning the last days.

**Blessings pronounced upon the prophets of the Church (D&C 109:71)**

Remember, O Lord, the presidents, even all the presidents of thy church, that thy right hand may exalt them, with all their families, and their immediate connections, that their names may be perpetuated and had in everlasting remembrance from generation to generation.

**Faithful prophets of old are numbered among the righteous in heaven, receiving all the promises that God made to them**

**(D&C 138:38-52)**

Among the great and mighty ones who were assembled in this vast congregation of the righteous were Father Adam, the Ancient of Days and father of all, And our glorious Mother Eve, with many of her faithful daughters who had lived through the ages and worshiped the true and living God. Abel, the first martyr, was there, and his brother Seth, one of the mighty ones, who was in the express image of his father, Adam. Noah, who gave warning of the flood; Shem, the great high priest; Abraham, the father of the faithful; Isaac, Jacob, and Moses, the great law-giver of Israel;

And Isaiah, who declared by prophecy that the Redeemer was anointed to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that were bound, were also there. Moreover, Ezekiel, who was shown in vision the great valley of dry bones, which were to be clothed upon with flesh, to come forth again in the resurrection of the dead, living souls; Daniel, who foresaw and foretold the establishment of the kingdom of God in the latter days, never again to be destroyed nor given to other people; Elias, who was with Moses on the Mount of Transfiguration; And Malachi, the prophet who testified of the coming of Elijah—of whom also Moroni spake to the Prophet Joseph Smith, declaring that he should come before the ushering in of the great and dreadful day of the Lord—were also there.

The Prophet Elijah was to plant in the hearts of the children the promises made to their fathers,

Foreshadowing the great work to be done in the temples of the Lord in the dispensation of the fulness of times, for the redemption of the dead, and the sealing of the children to their parents, lest the whole earth be smitten with a curse and utterly wasted at his coming. All these and many more, even the prophets who dwelt among the Nephites and testified of the coming of the Son of God, mingled in the vast assembly and waited for their deliverance, for the dead had looked upon the long absence of their spirits from their bodies as a bondage. These the Lord taught, and gave them power to come forth, after his resurrection from the dead, to enter into his Father’s kingdom, there to be crowned with immortality and eternal life, and continue thenceforth their labor as had been promised by the Lord, and be partakers of all blessings which were held in reserve for them that love him.

**The Lord will fulfill all prophecies spoken to the prophets (D&C 52:36)**

Let them labor with their families, declaring none other things than the prophets and apostles, that which they have seen and heard and most assuredly believe, that the prophecies may be fulfilled.

**Destruction is decreed to come quickly upon the wicked who reject the prophets of God (D&C 136:34-36)**

Thy brethren have rejected you and your testimony, even the nation that has driven you out; And now cometh the day of their calamity, even the days of sorrow, like a woman that is taken in travail; and their sorrow shall be great unless they speedily repent, yea, very speedily. For they killed the prophets, and them that were sent unto them; and they have shed innocent blood, which crieth from the ground against them.

**Curses are pronounced upon those who reject the oracles/prophets of God (D&C 90:5)**

And all they who receive the oracles of God, let them beware how they hold them lest they are accounted as a light thing, and are brought under condemnation thereby, and stumble and fall when the storms descend, and the winds blow, and the rains descend, and beat upon their house.

**14 Vital Points Concerning the Doctrine of the Prophet**

In conclusion, let us summarize this grand key, these “Fourteen Fundamentals in Following the Prophet,” for our salvation hangs on them.

First: The prophet is the only man who speaks for the Lord in everything.

Second: The living prophet is more vital to us than the standard works.

Third: The living prophet is more important to us than a dead prophet.

Fourth: The prophet will never lead the Church astray.

Fifth: The prophet is not required to have any particular earthly training or credentials to speak on any subject or act on any matter at any time.

Sixth: The prophet does not have to say “Thus saith the Lord” to give us scripture.

Seventh: The prophet tells us what we need to know, not always what we want to know.

Eighth: The prophet is not limited by men’s reasoning.

Ninth: The prophet can receive revelation on any matter, temporal or spiritual.

Tenth: The prophet may be involved in civic matters.

Eleventh: The two groups who have the greatest difficulty in following the prophet are the proud who are learned and the proud who are rich.

Twelfth: The prophet will not necessarily be popular with the world or the worldly.

Thirteenth: The prophet and his counselors make up the First Presidency—the highest quorum in the Church.

Fourteenth: The prophet and the presidency—the living prophet and the First Presidency—follow them and be blessed; reject them and suffer.

I testify that these fourteen fundamentals in following the living prophet are true. If we want to know how well we stand with the Lord, then let us ask ourselves how well we stand with His mortal captain. How closely do our lives harmonize with the words of the Lord’s anointed—the living prophet, the President of the Church, and with the Quorum of the First Presidency? May God bless us all to look to the prophet and the presidency in the critical and crucial days ahead is my prayer. In the name of Jesus Christ. Amen. (Fourteen Fundamentals in Following the Prophet, Ezra Taft Benson, CES Fireside, Feb 26, 1980, )

***8.4***

***CURSED FOR THOSE REJECTING THE GOSPEL***

**Moses prophesies that the children of Israel will reject the Lord and follow false gods (Deut 31:27-30)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, ye have been rebellious against the Lord; and how much more after my death? Gather unto me all the elders of your tribes, and your officers, that I may speak these words in their ears, and call heaven and earth to record against them. For I know that after my death ye will utterly corrupt yourselves, and turn aside from the way which I have commanded you; and evil will befall you in the latter days; because ye will do evil in the sight of the Lord, to provoke him to anger through the work of your hands. And Moses spake in the ears of all the congregation of Israel the words of this song, until they were ended.

**Those who fight against the Savior and the 12 Apostles to be destroyed (1 Ne 11:34-36)**

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord. And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying:

“Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.”

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying:

“Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.”

**Those of the House of Israel Who Reject Their Covenants Will Be Classed Among the Whore of the Earth (1 Ne 14:5-13)**

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying:

“Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish. Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.”

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me:

“Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel?”

I said unto him,

“Yea.”

And it came to pass that he said unto me:

“Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil…. Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.”

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people. And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

**Every Nation That Makes War with the House of Israel and Zion Will Be Destroyed (1 Ne 22:14)**

[And Nephi prophesied, saying]

“And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.”

**The Judgments of God Will Come upon America when they Reject the Holy One of Israel (2 Ne 1:10)**

[And Nephi prophesied, saying,]

“But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.”

**The cursings promised upon all who fight against Zion (2 Ne 6:13)**

[And Nephi prophesied, saying]

“Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.”

**God will destroy those who fight against Zion, Jew or Gentile, so that God may establish His covenants with His people**

**(2 Ne 10:15-17)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations. Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female  shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me…For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh.”

**The daughters of Zion punished for their worldliness (2 Ne 13:16-26)**

Moreover, the Lord saith:

“Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet— Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts. In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and cauls, and round tires like the moon;

“The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers; The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings; The rings, and nose jewels; The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins; The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils. And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty. Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war. And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.”

**The Gentiles called to repentance in the latter days or they’ll be attacked by remnants of Jacob (Morm 5:22-24)**

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways? Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll? Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

**Dangers pronounced upon all who breathe out threatenings against the House of Israel (Mormon 8:21)**

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say:

“We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel,”

the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

**Warnings given to New York and surrounding areas for rejecting the gospel (D&C 84:114-115)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

Nevertheless, let the bishop go unto the city of New York, also to the city of Albany, and also to the city of Boston, and warn the people of those cities with the sound of the gospel, with a loud voice, of the desolation and utter abolishment which await them if they do reject these things. For if they do reject these things the hour of their judgment is nigh, and their house shall be left unto them desolate.

**Curses pronounced upon those who reject their covenants (D&C 97:25-26)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Nevertheless, Zion shall escape if she observe to do all things whatsoever I have commanded her. But if she observe not to do whatsoever I have commanded her, I will visit her according to all her works, with sore affliction, with pestilence, with plague, with sword, with vengeance, with devouring fire.”

**Cursings pronounced upon all who hate the Lord (D&C 124:52)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And I will answer judgment, wrath, and indignation, wailing, and anguish, and gnashing of teeth upon their heads, unto the third and fourth generation, so long as they repent not, and hate me, saith the Lord your God.”

**The laws of cursing the enemies of Zion set forth (D&C 103:24-26)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And inasmuch as mine enemies come against you to drive you from my goodly land, which I have consecrated to be the land of Zion, even from your own lands after these testimonies, which ye have brought before me against them, ye shall curse them; And whomsoever ye curse, I will curse, and ye shall avenge me of mine enemies. And my presence shall be with you even in avenging me of mine enemies, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me.”

**Cursings pronounced upon any among the House of Israel AND her enemies who fight against God, to precede the Second Coming & Millennium (2 Ne 12:6-22)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers. Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots. Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made. And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

“O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee. And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day. For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low. Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

“And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people; And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall; And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures. And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day. And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

“And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats; To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth. Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?”

**Curses pronounced upon the earth and those who reject the gospel before the Second Coming (D&C 84:95-98)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Wo, I say again, unto that house, or that village or city that rejecteth you, or your words, or your testimony of me; For I, the Almighty, have laid my hands upon the nations, to scourge them for their wickedness. And plagues shall go forth, and they shall not be taken from the earth until I have completed my work, which shall be cut short in righteousness until all shall know me, who remain, even from the least unto the greatest, and shall be filled with the knowledge of the Lord…”

***8.5***

***THE BOOK OF MORMON’S CONNECTION TO***

***THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

***-1830- Present Day-***

**God Promised Joseph of Egypt that His Descendants Would Receive the Book of Mormon (2 Ne 3:19-21)**

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words. Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

**The stick of Judah (Bible) and the stick of Ephraim (Book of Mormon) to become one in the Lord’s hand in the latter-days**

**(Ezekiel 37:15-22)**

The word of the Lord came again unto me, saying,

“Moreover, thou son of man, take thee one stick, and write upon it, For Judah, and for the children of Israel his companions: then take another stick, and write upon it, For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim, and for all the house of Israel his companions: And join them one to another into one stick; and they shall become one in thine hand. And when the children of thy people shall speak unto thee, saying, Wilt thou not shew us what thou meanest by these?

“…Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand. And the sticks whereon thou writest shall be in thine hand before their eyes… Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land: And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all.”

**The Book of Mormon, as prophesied to come forth in the latter-days, has direct connection to the gathering of Israel**

**(Isaiah 29:4-24)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“And thou shalt be brought down, and shalt speak out of the ground, and thy speech shall be low out of the dust, and thy voice shall be, as of one that hath a familiar spirit, out of the ground, and thy speech shall whisper out of the dust. Moreover the multitude of thy strangers shall be like small dust, and the multitude of the terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away: yea, it shall be at an instant suddenly. Thou shalt be visited of the Lord of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire. And the multitude of all the nations that fight against Ariel, even all that fight against her and her munition, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision.

“It shall even be as when an hungry man dreameth, and, behold, he eateth; but he awaketh, and his soul is empty: or as when a thirsty man dreameth, and, behold, he drinketh; but he awaketh, and, behold, he is faint, and his soul hath appetite: so shall the multitude of all the nations be, that fight against mount Zion.

Stay yourselves, and wonder; cry ye out, and cry: they are drunken, but not with wine; they stagger, but not with strong drink. For the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered. And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying,

‘Read this, I pray thee:’

“and he saith,

‘I cannot; for it is sealed:’

“And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying,

‘Read this, I pray thee:’

“and he saith,

‘I am not learned.’

“Wherefore the Lord said,

‘Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:

Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

‘Woe unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord, and their works are in the dark, and they say, Who seeth us? And who knoweth us? Surely your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter’s clay: for shall the work say of him that made it, He made me not? or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, He had no understanding?

Is it not yet a very little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field, and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest?

‘And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness. The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel. For the terrible one is brought to nought, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off: That make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

‘Therefore thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob, Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale. But when he seeth his children, the work of mine hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel. They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.”

**Moroni has the keys of the stick of Ephraim (Book of Mormon) (D&C 27:5)**

[And the Lord spake unto me, saying]

“Behold, this is wisdom in me; wherefore, marvel not, for the hour cometh that I will drink of the fruit of the vine with you on the earth, and with Moroni, whom I have sent unto you to reveal the Book of Mormon, containing the fulness of my everlasting gospel, to whom I have committed the keys of the record of the stick of Ephraim;”

**The Book of Mormon was revealed to the world by Joseph Smith, to be had among many future generations (D&C 5:9-10)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph, saying]

“Behold, verily I say unto you, I have reserved those things which I have entrusted unto you, my servant Joseph, for a wise purpose in me, and it shall be made known unto future generations; But this generation shall have my word through you;”

**The Lord refers to the Book of Mormon as the New Covenant (D&C 84:57)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And they shall remain under this condemnation until they repent and remember the new covenant, even the Book of Mormon and the former commandments which I have given them, not only to say, but to do according to that which I have written.”

**The Bible, the Book of Mormon, and Other Scriptures (and non-canonical writings) Will Bear Record of Jesus Christ**

**(1 Ne 13:39-41)**

And after it, had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying:

“These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved. And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.”

**The Book of Mormon is written to convince all the ends of the earth to believe in the gospel of Jesus Christ**

**(Mormon 3:18-21)**

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem. And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem. And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

**The Book of Mormon is written to convince the Jews that Jesus is the Christ (Mormon 3:21)**

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

**The Book of Mormon will come forth in a day of supreme wickedness and many great natural disasters upon the earth**

**(Mormon 8:27-32-41)**

And it, [the Book of Mormon,] shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness. Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches. Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands; And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say,

“Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day.”

But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity. Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say:

“Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.”

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled. Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing. And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts. For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world? Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads? Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

**Israel will begin to be gathered when the Book of Mormon comes forth (3 Ne 21:1-10)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion; And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you; For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

“Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

“And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel. And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

“For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them. But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.”

**The coming forth of the Book of Mormon is a sign that the Lord has started to gather Israel and fulfill His promises to them**

**(3 Ne 29:1)**

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

**The coming forth of the Book of Mormon is to help prepare the Gentiles and the House of Israel to return to their lands of inheritance (Mormon 3:17)**

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

**The Book of Mormon will help scattered Israel in the latter-days come to a knowledge of Jesus Christ (3 Ne 16:4-5)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer. And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.”

**The coming forth of the Book of Mormon in the latter-days is the revealing to the world the works of other descendants of Jacob/Israel (D&C 10:57-60)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I came unto mine own, and mine own received me not. I am the light which shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not. I am he who said— Other sheep have I which are not of this fold—unto my disciples, and many there were that understood me not. And I will show unto this people that I had other sheep, and that they were a branch of the house of Jacob;”

**The Gentiles to receive the Book of Mormon (1 Ne 13:34)**

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying:

“Behold, saith the Lamb of God,

‘after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious.”

**The Book of Mormon contains the fullness of the gospel, to go forth to the Gentiles and the Jews in the latter-days**

**(D&C 20:8-9)**

And gave him, [Joseph Smith], power from on high, by the means which were before prepared, to translate the Book of Mormon; Which contains a record of a fallen people, and the fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles and to the Jews also;

**In the latter-days, the Jews will have the Book of Mormon (2 Ne 29:13)**

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

**The Book of Mormon to be taken to Lehi’s descendants in the latter-days (Alma 37:19)**

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

**God will be merciful to the Lamanites in the latter-days (Hel 15:12-16)**

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them. And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent. For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief. Therefore, saith the Lord:

“I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me.”

**The Gentiles will also receive the Book of Mormon in the latter-days (3 Ne 16:6-7)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father. Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.”

**The Book of Mormon and other scriptures prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 33:16-17)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And the Book of Mormon and the holy scriptures are given of me for your instruction; and the power of my Spirit quickeneth all things. Wherefore, be faithful, praying always, having your lamps trimmed and burning, and oil with you, that you may be ready at the coming of the Bridegroom.”

***8.6***

***MISCELLANEOUS SCRIPTURES IN CONNECTION TO THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**Nephi Sees the Going Forth of the Bible…and Many Plain and Precious Truths Removed From It (1 Ne 13:20-29)**

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them. And the angel said unto me:

“Knowest thou the meaning of the book?”

And I said unto him:

“I know not.”

And he said:

“Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles. And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God. Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God. And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men. Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God. And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.”

**God promised to preserve the scriptures through all future generations (Alma 37:1-7, 18)**

[And Alma spake, saying]

“And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept. And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

“Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

“Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.”

**The full vision of John the Revelator in the Book of Revelations will be fulfilled in the latter-days (Ether 4:16)**

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

**Many scriptures which have been held back for generations of time will be revealed in the latter-days**

**(D&C 6:26-27; D&C 8:1; D&C 9:2)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, that there are records which contain much of my gospel, which have been kept back because of the wickedness of the people; And now I command you, that if you have good desires—a desire to lay up treasures for yourself in heaven—then shall you assist in bringing to light, with your gift, those parts of my scriptures which have been hidden because of iniquity.

“Oliver Cowdery, verily, verily, I say unto you, that assuredly as the Lord liveth, who is your God and your Redeemer, even so surely shall you receive a knowledge of whatsoever things you shall ask in faith, with an honest heart, believing that you shall receive a knowledge concerning the engravings of old records, which are ancient, which contain those parts of my scripture of which has been spoken by the manifestation of my Spirit. And then, behold, other records have I, that I will give unto you power that you may assist to translate.”

**The scriptures reveal the history of countries and kingdoms and the laws of God (D&C 93:53)**

[And the Lord said unto Joseph,]

“And, verily I say unto you, that it is my will that you should hasten to translate my scriptures, and to obtain a knowledge of history, and of countries, and of kingdoms, of laws of God and man, and all this for the salvation of Zion. Amen.”

***8.7***

***THE PRIESTHOOD IN CONNECTION TO THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**President Benson discusses the Priesthood**

“When our Heavenly Father placed Adam and Eve on this earth, He did so with the purpose in mind of teaching them how to regain His presence. Our Father promised a Savior to redeem them from their fallen condition. He gave to them the plan of salvation and told them to teach their children faith in Jesus Christ and repentance. Further, Adam and his posterity were commanded by God to be baptized, to receive the Holy Ghost, and to enter into the order of the Son of God. To enter into the order of the Son of God is the equivalent today of entering into the fullness of the Melchizedek Priesthood, which is only received in the house of the Lord. Because Adam and Eve had complied with these requirements, God said to them, “Thou art after the order of him who was without beginning of days or end of years, from all eternity to all eternity.” ([Moses 6:67](http://scriptures.lds.org/moses/6/67#67).) What I Hope You Will Teach Your Children About the Temple,” Ensign, Aug. 1985)

***PRIESTHOOD PAST***

**Priesthood posterity of Adam (D&C 107:40-57)**

The order of this priesthood was confirmed to be handed down from father to son, and rightly belongs to the literal descendants of the chosen seed, to whom the promises were made. This order was instituted in the days of Adam, and came down by lineage in the following manner:

From Adam to Seth, who was ordained by Adam at the age of sixty-nine years, and was blessed by him three years previous to his (Adam’s) death, and received the promise of God by his father, that his posterity should be the chosen of the Lord, and that they should be preserved unto the end of the earth; Because he (Seth) was a perfect man, and his likeness was the express likeness of his father, insomuch that he seemed to be like unto his father in all things, and could be distinguished from him only by his age. Enos was ordained at the age of one hundred and thirty-four years and four months, by the hand of Adam.

God called upon Cainan in the wilderness in the fortieth year of his age; and he met Adam in journeying to the place Shedolamak. He was eighty-seven years old when he received his ordination.

Mahalaleel was four hundred and ninety-six years and seven days old when he was ordained by the hand of Adam, who also blessed him. Jared was two hundred years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam, who also blessed him.

Enoch was twenty-five years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam; and he was sixty-five and Adam blessed him.

And he saw the Lord, and he walked with him, and was before his face continually; and he walked with God three hundred and sixty-five years, making him four hundred and thirty years old when he was translated.

Methuselah was one hundred years old when he was ordained under the hand of Adam. Lamech was thirty-two years old when he was ordained under the hand of Seth. Noah was ten years old when he was ordained under the hand of Methuselah. Three years previous to the death of Adam, he called Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, and Methuselah, who were all high priests, with the residue of his posterity who were righteous, into the valley of Adam-ondi-Ahman, and there bestowed upon them his last blessing.

And the Lord appeared unto them, and they rose up and blessed Adam, and called him Michael, the prince, the archangel. And the Lord administered comfort unto Adam, and said unto him: I have set thee to be at the head; a multitude of nations shall come of thee, and thou art a prince over them forever. And Adam stood up in the midst of the congregation; and, notwithstanding he was bowed down with age, being full of the Holy Ghost, predicted whatsoever should befall his posterity unto the latest generation. These things were all written in the book of Enoch, and are to be testified of in due time.

**The Holy Priesthood is to continue throughout all generations (D&C 84:6-18)**

And the sons of Moses, according to the Holy Priesthood which he received under the hand of his father-in-law, Jethro; And Jethro received it under the hand of Caleb; And Caleb received it under the hand of Elihu; And Elihu under the hand of Jeremy; And Jeremy under the hand of Gad; And Gad under the hand of Esaias; And Esaias received it under the hand of God. Esaias also lived in the days of Abraham, and was blessed of him— Which Abraham received the priesthood from Melchizedek, who received it through the lineage of his fathers, even till Noah; And from Noah till Enoch, through the lineage of their fathers; And from Enoch to Abel, who was slain by the conspiracy of his brother, who received the priesthood by the commandments of God, by the hand of his father Adam, who was the first man—

Which priesthood continueth in the church of God in all generations, and is without beginning of days or end of years.

And the Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations, which priesthood also continueth and abideth forever with the priesthood which is after the holiest order of God.

**Ham and his descendants were denied the blessings of the Priesthood (Abr 1:21-24)**

Now this king of Egypt was a descendant from the loins of Ham, and was a partaker of the blood of the Canaanites by birth.

From this descent sprang all the Egyptians, and thus the blood of the Canaanites was preserved in the land.

The land of Egypt being first discovered by a woman, who was the daughter of Ham, and the daughter of Egyptus, which in the Chaldean signifies Egypt, which signifies that which is forbidden;

When this woman discovered the land it was under water, who afterward settled her sons in it; and thus, from Ham, sprang that race which preserved the curse in the land.

**Pharaoh, the grandson of Ham and great grandson of Noah, sought to copy/imitate the Priesthood and Patriarchal order**

**(Abr 1:25-27)**

Now the first government of Egypt was established by Pharaoh, the eldest son of Egyptus, the daughter of Ham, and it was after the manner of the government of Ham, which was patriarchal. Pharaoh, being a righteous man, established his kingdom and judged his people wisely and justly all his days, seeking earnestly to imitate that order established by the fathers in the first generations, in the days of the first patriarchal reign, even in the reign of Adam, and also of Noah, his father, who blessed him with the blessings of the earth, and with the blessings of wisdom, but cursed him as pertaining to the Priesthood.

Now, Pharaoh being of that lineage by which he could not have the right of Priesthood, notwithstanding the Pharaohs would fain claim it from Noah, through Ham, therefore my father was led away by their idolatry;

**The Saints are a royal priesthood (1 Peter 2:9-10)**

But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light: Which in time past were not a people, but are now the people of God: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy.

**When Israel rejected the presence of God, He rejected them, and gave them the Law of Moses (D&C 84:21-26)**

And without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh; For without this no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and live. Now this Moses plainly taught to the children of Israel in the wilderness, and sought diligently to sanctify his people that they might behold the face of God;

But they hardened their hearts and could not endure his presence; therefore, the Lord in his wrath, for his anger was kindled against them, swore that they should not enter into his rest while in the wilderness, which rest is the fulness of his glory.

Therefore, he took Moses out of their midst, and the Holy Priesthood also; And the lesser priesthood continued, which priesthood holdeth the key of the ministering of angels and the preparatory gospel;

***THE MELCHIZEDEK PRIESTHOOD***

**The Prophet presides over the High Priesthood (D&C 107:64-66, 91-92)**

Then comes the High Priesthood, which is the greatest of all. Wherefore, it must needs be that one be appointed of the High Priesthood to preside over the priesthood, and he shall be called President of the High Priesthood of the Church;

Or, in other words, the Presiding High Priest over the High Priesthood of the Church. And again, the duty of the President of the office of the High Priesthood is to preside over the whole church, and to be like unto Moses— Behold, here is wisdom; yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet, having all the gifts of God which he bestows upon the head of the church.

**The Melchizedek Priesthood authority & blessings (D&C 107:1-12, 18-19)**

There are, in the church, two priesthoods, namely, the Melchizedek and Aaronic, including the Levitical Priesthood.

Why the first is called the Melchizedek Priesthood is because Melchizedek was such a great high priest. Before his day it was called the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God. But out of respect or reverence to the name of the Supreme Being, to avoid the too frequent repetition of his name, they, the church, in ancient days, called that priesthood after Melchizedek, or the Melchizedek Priesthood. All other authorities or offices in the church are appendages to this priesthood.

But there are two divisions or grand heads—one is the Melchizedek Priesthood, and the other is the Aaronic or Levitical Priesthood. The office of an elder comes under the priesthood of Melchizedek. The Melchizedek Priesthood holds the right of presidency, and has power and authority over all the offices in the church in all ages of the world, to administer in spiritual things.

The Presidency of the High Priesthood, after the order of Melchizedek, have a right to officiate in all the offices in the church. High priests after the order of the Melchizedek Priesthood have a right to officiate in their own standing, under the direction of the presidency, in administering spiritual things, and also in the office of an elder, priest (of the Levitical order), teacher, deacon, and member. An elder has a right to officiate in his stead when the high priest is not present. The high priest and elder are to administer in spiritual things, agreeable to the covenants and commandments of the church; and they have a right to officiate in all these offices of the church when there are no higher authorities present. The power and authority of the higher, or Melchizedek Priesthood, is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the church— To have the privilege of receiving the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, to have the heavens opened unto them, to commune with the general assembly and church of the Firstborn, and to enjoy the communion and presence of God the Father, and Jesus the mediator of the new covenant.

***THE AARONIC PRIESTHOOD***

**The Aaronic Priesthood authority & blessings (D&C 107:13-17, 20)**

The second priesthood is called the Priesthood of Aaron, because it was conferred upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations. Why it is called the lesser priesthood is because it is an appendage to the greater, or the Melchizedek Priesthood, and has power in administering outward ordinances. The bishopric is the presidency of this priesthood, and holds the keys or authority of the same. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant of Aaron.

But as a high priest of the Melchizedek Priesthood has authority to officiate in all the lesser offices, he may officiate in the office of bishop when no literal descendant of Aaron can be found, provided he is called and set apart and ordained unto this power by the hands of the Presidency of the Melchizedek Priesthood. The power and authority of the lesser, or Aaronic Priesthood, is to hold the keys of the ministering of angels, and to administer in outward ordinances, the letter of the gospel, the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins, agreeable to the covenants and commandments.

**The Aaronic Priesthood of John the Baptist is subservient to the Melchizedek Priesthood held by Peter, James, and John**

**(JSH 1:72)**

The messenger who visited us on this occasion and conferred this Priesthood upon us, said that his name was John, the same that is called John the Baptist in the New Testament, and that he acted under the direction of Peter, James and John, who held the keys of the Priesthood of Melchizedek, which Priesthood, he said, would in due time be conferred on us, and that I should be called the first Elder of the Church, and he (Oliver Cowdery) the second. It was on the fifteenth day of May, 1829, that we were ordained under the hand of this messenger, and baptized.

**When John the Baptist gave the Aaronic Priesthood to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, he promised that the Priesthood would not be taken from the earth (from the Gentiles?) until the sons of Levi (direct descendants) offered an offering in righteousness (D&C 13:1)**

[And John the Baptist said unto them,]

“Upon you my fellow servants, in the name of Messiah I confer the Priesthood of Aaron, which holds the keys of the ministering of angels, and of the gospel of repentance, and of baptism by immersion for the remission of sins; and this shall never be taken again from the earth, until the sons of Levi do offer again an offering unto the Lord in righteousness.”

**John the Baptist has the keys of the Aaronic Priesthood (D&C 27:8)**

[And the Lord said unto them,]

“Which John I have sent unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jun., and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you unto the first priesthood which you have received, that you might be called and ordained even as Aaron;”

**In the latter-days, literal descendants of Aaron will have a right to the priesthood of Aaron (D&C 68:13-18, 20-21; 107:13-16)**

And now, concerning the items in addition to the covenants and commandments, they are these— There remain hereafter, in the due time of the Lord, other bishops to be set apart unto the church, to minister even according to the first;

Wherefore they shall be high priests who are worthy, and they shall be appointed by the First Presidency of the Melchizedek Priesthood, except they be literal descendants of Aaron. And if they be literal descendants of Aaron they have a legal right to the bishopric, if they are the firstborn among the sons of Aaron;

For the firstborn holds the right of the presidency over this priesthood, and the keys or authority of the same.

No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant and the firstborn of Aaron. And a literal descendant of Aaron, also, must be designated by this Presidency, and found worthy, and anointed, and ordained under the hands of this Presidency, otherwise they are not legally authorized to officiate in their priesthood. But, by virtue of the decree concerning their right of the priesthood descending from father to son, they may claim their anointing if at any time they can prove their lineage, or do ascertain it by revelation from the Lord under the hands of the above named Presidency.

The second priesthood is called the Priesthood of Aaron, because it was conferred upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations. Why it is called the lesser priesthood is because it is an appendage to the greater, or the Melchizedek Priesthood, and has power in administering outward ordinances. The bishopric is the presidency of this priesthood, and holds the keys or authority of the same. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant of Aaron.

**The office of bishop rightly belongs to the descendants of Aaron (D&C 107:69-70, 76)**

Nevertheless a bishop must be chosen from the High Priesthood, unless he is a literal descendant of Aaron;

For unless he is a literal descendant of Aaron he cannot hold the keys of that priesthood.

***RECEIVE THE PRIESTHOOD***

**Those who receive the Priesthood become the sons of Moses, Aaron, and Abraham and receive all that God has to offer**

**(D&C 84:33-40)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“For whoso is faithful unto the obtaining these two priesthoods of which I have spoken, and the “magnifying their calling, are sanctified by the Spirit unto the renewing of their bodies. They become the sons of Moses and of Aaron and the seed of Abraham, and the church and kingdom, and the elect of God. And also all they who receive this priesthood receive me.

“For he that receiveth my servants receiveth me; And he that receiveth me receiveth my Father;

And he that receiveth my Father receiveth my Father’s kingdom; therefore all that my Father hath shall be given unto him. And this is according to the oath and covenant which belongeth to the priesthood.

Therefore, all those who receive the priesthood, receive this oath and covenant of my Father, which he cannot break, neither can it be moved.”

**Those who receive and honor the priesthood of their forbears, are lawful heirs with Christ, as are their lineage (D&C 86:8-10)**

Therefore, thus saith the Lord unto you, with whom the priesthood hath continued through the lineage of your fathers—

“For ye are lawful heirs, according to the flesh, and have been hid from the world with Christ in God—

Therefore your life and the priesthood have remained, and must needs remain through you and your lineage until the restoration of all things spoken by the mouths of all the holy prophets since the world began.”

**Those with the Priesthood are a light unto the Gentiles and become a savior unto the people of Israel (D&C 86:11)**

“Therefore, blessed are ye if ye continue in my goodness, a light unto the Gentiles, and through this priesthood, a savior unto my people Israel. The Lord hath said it. Amen.”

**It is the responsibility of the Priesthood to assist in the gathering of Israel (D&C 113:7-8)**

Questions by Elias Higbee:

“What is meant by the command in [Isaiah, 52d chapter, 1st verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/52.1?lang=eng#p1), which saith:

‘Put on thy strength, O Zion’

“and what people had Isaiah reference to?”

[And the Lord replied,]

“He had reference to those whom God should call in the last days, who should hold the power of priesthood to bring again Zion, and the redemption of Israel; and to put on her strength is to put on the authority of the priesthood, which she, Zion, has a right to by lineage; also to return to that power which she had lost.”

**Another key part of the gathering of Israel was giving the priesthood to every worthy male (Official Declaration 2)**

Dear Brethren:

As we have witnessed the expansion of the work of the Lord over the earth, we have been grateful that people of many nations have responded to the message of the restored gospel, and have joined the Church in ever-increasing numbers. This, in turn, has inspired us with a desire to extend to every worthy member of the Church all of the privileges and blessings which the gospel affords.

Aware of the promises made by the prophets and presidents of the Church who have preceded us that at some time, in God’s eternal plan, all of our brethren who are worthy may receive the priesthood, and witnessing the faithfulness of those from whom the priesthood has been withheld, we have pleaded long and earnestly in behalf of these, our faithful brethren, spending many hours in the Upper Room of the Temple supplicating the Lord for divine guidance.

He has heard our prayers, and by revelation has confirmed that the long-promised day has come when every faithful, worthy man in the Church may receive the holy priesthood, with power to exercise its divine authority, and enjoy with his loved ones every blessing that flows therefrom, including the blessings of the temple. Accordingly, all worthy male members of the Church may be ordained to the priesthood without regard for race or color. Priesthood leaders are instructed to follow the policy of carefully interviewing all candidates for ordination to either the Aaronic or the Melchizedek Priesthood to insure that they meet the established standards for worthiness.

We declare with soberness that the Lord has now made known his will for the blessing of all his children throughout the earth who will hearken to the voice of his authorized servants, and prepare themselves to receive every blessing of the gospel.

Sincerely yours,

Spencer W. Kimball

N. Eldon Tanner

Marion G. Romney

The First Presidency

“I hope that [my grandson] and others will have opportunities such as I had when I was in the temple when President Spencer W. Kimball received the revelation regarding the priesthood. I was the junior member of the Quorum of the Twelve. I was there. I was there with the outpouring of the Spirit in that room so strong that none of us could speak afterwards. We just left quietly to go back to the office. No one could say anything because of the powerful outpouring of the heavenly spiritual experience. But just a few hours after the announcement was made to the press, I was assigned to attend a stake conference in Detroit, Michigan. When my plane landed in Chicago, I noticed an edition of the Chicago Tribune on the newsstand. The headline in the paper said, “Mormons Give Blacks Priesthood.” And the subheading said, “President Kimball Claims to Have Received a Revelation.” I bought a copy of the newspaper. I stared at one word in that subheading—claims. It stood out to me just like it was in red neon. As I walked along the hallway to make my plane connection, I thought, Here I am now in Chicago walking through this busy airport, yet I was a witness to this revelation. I was there. I witnessed it. I felt that heavenly influence. I was part of it. Little did the editor of that newspaper realize the truth of that revelation when he wrote, “… Claims to Have Received a Revelation.” Little did he know, or the printer, or the man who put the ink on the press, or the one who delivered the newspaper—little did any of them know that it was truly a revelation from God. Little did they know what I knew because I was a witness to it (This Work Is True, David B. Haight, Apr 1996).”

***8.8***

***TEMPLE WORK IN CONNECTION TO THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**Consider This!**

It’s impossible to study the fulfillment of all of God’s promises to Israel without discussing the Temple. The great promises from God to man was that he would receive the Priesthood of God and be given the necessary knowledge to enter into the presence of God. The “blessings of the fathers” sought after by Abraham was the Priesthood, which he received from Shem/Melchizedek (D&C 84:33-40). Furthermore, the gathering of Israel in the latter-days literally began with the dedication of the Kirtland Temple (D&C 109:60-67; 110:1-6). It was in this temple that the keys of the gathering of Israel were bestowed.

***THE TEMPLE, ANCIENTLY***

**The Dedication of the Solomon’s Temple fulfilled promises made by God to Israel (1 Kings 8:22-54)**

And Solomon stood before the altar of the Lord in the presence of all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven: And he said,

“Lord God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, who keepest covenant and mercy with thy servants that walk before thee with all their heart: Who hast kept with thy servant David my father that thou promisedst him: thou spakest also with thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with thine hand, as it is this day. Therefore now, Lord God of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that thou promisedst him, saying, There shall not fail thee a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel; so that thy children take heed to their way, that they walk before me as thou hast walked before me.

And now, O God of Israel, let thy word, I pray thee, be verified, which thou spakest unto thy servant David my father.

“But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded? Yet have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O Lord my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before thee today: That thine eyes may be open toward this house night and day, even toward the place of which thou hast said, My name shall be there: that thou mayest hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall make toward this place.

“And hearken thou to the supplication of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: and hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place: and when thou hearest, forgive. If any man trespass against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before thine altar in this house: Then hear thou in heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.

When thy people Israel be smitten down before the enemy, because they have sinned against thee, and shall turn again to thee, and confess thy name, and pray, and make supplication unto thee in this house:

Then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which thou gavest unto their fathers.

“When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when thou afflictest them: Then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, that thou teach them the good way wherein they should walk, and give rain upon thy land, which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance. If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, blasting, mildew, locust, or if there be caterpiller; if their enemy besiege them in the land of their cities; whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness there be; What prayer and supplication soever be made by any man, or by all thy people Israel, which shall know every man the plague of his own heart, and spread forth his hands toward this house:

Then hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;)

“That they may fear thee all the days that they live in the land which thou gavest unto our fathers.

Moreover concerning a stranger, that is not of thy people Israel, but cometh out of a far country for thy name’s sake; (For they shall hear of thy great name, and of thy strong hand, and of thy stretched out arm;) when he shall come and pray toward this house; Hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to thee for: that all people of the earth may know thy name, to fear thee, as do thy people Israel; and that they may know that this house, which I have builded, is called by thy name.

If thy people go out to battle against their enemy, whithersoever thou shalt send them, and shall pray unto the Lord toward the city which thou hast chosen, and toward the house that I have built for thy name:

Then hear thou in heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause.

“If they sin against thee, (for there is no man that sinneth not,) and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that they carry them away captives unto the land of the enemy, far or near; Yet if they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they were carried captives, and repent, and make supplication unto thee in the land of them that carried them captives, saying, We have sinned, and have done perversely, we have committed wickedness; And so return unto thee with all their heart, and with all their soul, in the land of their enemies, which led them away captive, and pray unto thee toward their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, the city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name:

“Then hear thou their prayer and their supplication in heaven thy dwelling place, and maintain their cause,

And forgive thy people that have sinned against thee, and all their transgressions wherein they have transgressed against thee, and give them compassion before them who carried them captive, that they may have compassion on them: For they be thy people, and thine inheritance, which thou broughtest forth out of Egypt, from the midst of the furnace of iron: That thine eyes may be open unto the supplication of thy servant, and unto the supplication of thy people Israel, to hearken unto them in all that they call for unto thee. For thou didst separate them from among all the people of the earth, to be thine inheritance, as thou spakest by the hand of Moses thy servant, when thou broughtest our fathers out of Egypt, O Lord God.

And it was so, that when Solomon had made an end of praying all this prayer and supplication unto the Lord, he arose from before the altar of the Lord, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread up to heaven”

**Temple blessings performed anciently, in the days of Ezra and Nehemiah (Neh 10:1, 28-29)**

Now those that sealed were, Nehemiah, the Tirshatha, the son of Hachaliah, and Zidkijah, (many names given)

And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the porters, the singers, the Nethinims, and all they that had separated themselves from the people of the lands unto the law of God, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, every one having knowledge, and having understanding; They clave to their brethren, their nobles, and entered into a curse, and into an oath, to walk in God’s law, which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and do all the commandments of the Lord our Lord, and his judgments and his statutes;

**The ministers of God clothed with temple robes, awaiting for the return of the Savior (Isaiah 61:4-6, 10-11)**

And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations. And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers. But ye shall be named the Priests of the Lord: men shall call you the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves.

**Saviors upon Mt. Zion will judge the descendants of Esau (Obad 1:17-21)**

But upon mount Zion shall be deliverance, and there shall be holiness; and the house of Jacob shall possess their possessions. And the house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Joseph a flame, and the house of Esau for stubble, and they shall kindle in them, and devour them; and there shall not be any remaining of the house of Esau; for the Lord hath spoken it. And they of the south shall possess the mount of Esau; and they of the plain the Philistines: and they shall possess the fields of Ephraim, and the fields of Samaria: and Benjamin shall possess Gilead. And the captivity of this host of the children of Israel shall possess that of the Canaanites, even unto Zarephath; and the captivity of Jerusalem, which is in Sepharad, shall possess the cities of the south. And saviours shall come up on mount Zion to judge the mount of Esau; and the kingdom shall be the Lord’s.

**Those who administer in Holy Things are partakers of the temple altar (1 Cor 9:13)**

Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live of the things of the temple? And they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar?

**Paul taught about baptism for the dead in ancient times (1 Cor 15:22-30)**

For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ’s at his coming. Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.

For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him. And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all. Else what shall they do which are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all? Why are they then baptized for the dead?

And why stand we in jeopardy every hour?

**Once one accepts the gospel, part of their inheritance is to be sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise (Eph 1:13-14, 21; 2 Tim 2:19)**

In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory. Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come. Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his. And, Let everyone that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity.

***PRIESTHOOD KEYS CONCERNING THE GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

***GIVEN IN THE KIRTLAND TEMPLE***

**Those who have made covenants are obligated to gather the righteous to Zion (D&C 109:39)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“And whatsoever city thy servants shall enter, and the people of that city receive their testimony, let thy peace and thy salvation be upon that city; that they may gather out of that city the righteous, that they may come forth to Zion, or to her stakes, the places of thine appointment, with songs of everlasting joy;”

**The temple, and all who enter it, bring mercy upon the nations of the world (D&C 109:54-55)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“Have mercy, O Lord, upon all the nations of the earth; have mercy upon the rulers of our land; may those principles, which were so honorably and nobly defended, namely, the Constitution of our land, by our fathers, be established forever. Remember the kings, the princes, the nobles, and the great ones of the earth, and all people, and the churches, all the poor, the needy, and afflicted ones of the earth;”

**Earthly temple blessings to be given in heaven (D&C 109:79-80)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“And also this church, to put upon it thy name. And help us by the power of thy Spirit, that we may mingle our voices with those bright, shining seraphs around thy throne, with acclamations of praise, singing Hosanna to God and the Lamb! And let these, thine anointed ones, be clothed with salvation, and thy saints shout aloud for joy. Amen, and Amen.”

**The day will come when Christ will come to His temple and gather His people in one (D&C 42:36)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“That my covenant people may be gathered in one in that day when I shall come to my temple. And this I do for the salvation of my people.”

**Malachi prophesied of the return of Elijah prior to the Second Coming (Mal 4:5-6; 3 Ne 25:5)**

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smith the earth with a curse.

**Elijah’s mission was to turn the hearts of the fathers and their children to each other (D&C 138:46-48)**

And Malachi, the prophet who testified of the coming of Elijah—of whom also Moroni spake to the Prophet Joseph Smith, declaring that he should come before the ushering in of the great and dreadful day of the Lord—were also there.

The Prophet Elijah was to plant in the hearts of the children the promises made to their fathers, Foreshadowing the great work to be done in the temples of the Lord in the dispensation of the fulness of times, for the redemption of the dead, and the sealing of the children to their parents, lest the whole earth be smitten with a curse and utterly wasted at his coming.

**Elijah to reveal the Priesthood in the latter-days (D&C 2:1-3)**

[And John the Baptist spake unto them, saying]

“Behold, I will reveal unto you the Priesthood, by the hand of Elijah the prophet, before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord. And he shall plant in the hearts of the children the promises made to the fathers, and the hearts of the children shall turn to their fathers. If it were not so, the whole earth would be utterly wasted at his coming.”

**Elijah has the keys to the family (fathers to sons, etc) (D&C 27:9)**

And also Elijah, unto whom I have committed the keys of the power of turning the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to the fathers, that the whole earth may not be smitten with a curse;

**Moses is to help Gather Israel in the latter-days (D&C 77:9, 110:12)**

Q. What are we to understand by the angel ascending from the east, [Revelation 7th chapter and 2nd verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/rev/7.2?lang=eng#p2)?

A. We are to understand that the angel ascending from the east is he to whom is given the seal of the living God over the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, he crieth unto the four angels having the everlasting gospel, saying: Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. And, if you will receive it, this is Elias which was to come to gather together the tribes of Israel and restore all things.

After this, Elias appeared, and committed the dispensation of the gospel of Abraham, saying that in us and our seed all generations after us should be blessed.

**The Dedication of the Kirtland Temple was the beginning of the fulfillment of the gathering of scattered Israel, Priesthood keys given by Prophets of the past**

**(D&C 109:60-67; D&C 110:1-16)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“Now these words, O Lord, we have spoken before thee, concerning the revelations and commandments which thou hast given unto us, who are identified with the Gentiles. But thou knowest that thou hast a great love for the children of Jacob, who have been scattered upon the mountains for a long time, in a cloudy and dark day. We therefore ask thee to have mercy upon the children of Jacob, that Jerusalem, from this hour, may begin to be redeemed; And the yoke of bondage may begin to be broken off from the house of David; And the children of Judah may begin to return to the lands which thou didst give to Abraham, their father. And cause that the remnants of Jacob, who have been cursed and smitten because of their transgression, be converted from their wild and savage condition to the fulness of the everlasting gospel;

That they may lay down their weapons of bloodshed, and cease their rebellions. And may all the scattered remnants of Israel, who have been driven to the ends of the earth, come to a knowledge of the truth, believe in the Messiah, and be redeemed from oppression, and rejoice before thee.”

[As we were praying in the temple,] The veil was taken from our minds, and the eyes of our understanding were opened. We saw the Lord standing upon the breastwork of the pulpit, before us; and under his feet was a paved work of pure gold, in color like amber. His eyes were as a flame of fire; the hair of his head was white like the pure snow; His countenance shone above the brightness of the sun; and his voice was as the sound of the rushing of great waters, even the voice of Jehovah, saying:

“I am the first and the last; I am he who liveth, I am he who was slain; I am your advocate with the Father.

Behold, your sins are forgiven you; you are clean before me; therefore, lift up your heads and rejoice.

Let the hearts of your brethren rejoice, and let the hearts of all my people rejoice, who have, with their might, built this house to my name. For behold, I have accepted this house, and my name shall be here; and I will manifest myself to my people in mercy in this house. Yea, I will appear unto my servants, and speak unto them with mine own voice, if my people will keep my commandments, and do not pollute this holy house. Yea the hearts of thousands and tens of thousands shall greatly rejoice in consequence of the blessings which shall be poured out, and the endowment with which my servants have been endowed in this house. And the fame of this house shall spread to foreign lands; and this is the beginning of the blessing which shall be poured out upon the heads of my people. Even so. Amen.”

After this vision closed, the heavens were again opened unto us; and Moses appeared before us, and committed unto us the keys of the gathering of Israel from the four parts of the earth, and the leading of the ten tribes from the land of the north.

After this, Elias appeared, and committed the dispensation of the gospel of Abraham, saying that in us and our seed all generations after us should be blessed.

After this vision had closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us, and said:

“Behold, the time has fully come, which was spoken of by the mouth of Malachi—testifying that he [Elijah] should be sent, before the great and dreadful day of the Lord come— To turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the children to the fathers, lest the whole earth be smitten with a curse— Therefore, the keys of this dispensation are committed into your hands; and by this ye may know that the great and dreadful day of the Lord is near, even at the doors.”

***THE DOCTRINE OF TEMPLE WORSHIP***

**Zion must be built up according to the laws of the Celestial Kingdom (D&C 105:2-5)**

[And the Lord said unto Joseph,]

“Behold, I say unto you, were it not for the transgressions of my people, speaking concerning the church and not individuals, they might have been redeemed even now. But behold, they have not learned to be obedient to the things which I required at their hands, but are full of all manner of evil, and do not impart of their substance, as becometh saints, to the poor and afflicted among them; And are not united according to the union required by the law of the celestial kingdom; And Zion cannot be built up unless it is by the principles of the law of the celestial kingdom; otherwise I cannot receive her unto myself.”

**Those Who Seek to Bring Forth Zion Will Have the Gift and Power of the Holy Ghost & Will Be Saved in the Kingdom of God**

**(1 Ne 13:37)**

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

**The ordinances of the Temple pertain directly to the dispensation of the fulness of times (D&C 124:41)**

[And the Lord said unto them,]

“For I deign to reveal unto my church things which have been kept hid from before the foundation of the world, things that pertain to the dispensation of the fulness of times.”

**All who partake of temple blessings partake of the blessings of Abraham (D&C 124:56-59)**

[And the Lord said unto him,]

“And now I say unto you, as pertaining to my boarding house which I have commanded you to build for the boarding of strangers, let it be built unto my name, and let my name be named upon it, and let my servant Joseph and his house have place therein, from generation to generation. For this anointing have I put upon his head, that his blessing shall also be put upon the head of his posterity after him. And as I said unto Abraham concerning the kindreds of the earth, even so I say unto my servant Joseph:

‘In thee and in thy seed shall the kindred of the earth be blessed.’

“Therefore, let my servant Joseph and his seed after him have place in that house, from generation to generation, forever and ever, saith the Lord.”

**The Saints are to be the saviors of men (D&C 103:9)**

For they were set to be a light unto the world, and to be the saviors of men;

**The dead are judged according to heavenly records (D&C 128:6-7, 12-14)**

And further, I want you to remember that John the Revelator was contemplating this very subject in relation to the dead, when he declared, as you will find recorded in [Revelation 20:12](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/rev/20.12?lang=eng#p12)—And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. You will discover in this quotation that the books were opened; and another book was opened, which was the book of life; but the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works; consequently, the books spoken of must be the books which contained the record of their works, and refer to the records which are kept on the earth. And the book which was the book of life is the record which is kept in heaven; the principle agreeing precisely with the doctrine which is commanded you in the revelation contained in the letter which I wrote to you previous to my leaving my place—that in all your recordings it may be recorded in heaven.

Herein is glory and honor, and immortality and eternal life—The ordinance of baptism by water, to be immersed therein in order to answer to the likeness of the dead, that one principle might accord with the other; to be immersed in the water and come forth out of the water is in the likeness of the resurrection of the dead in coming forth out of their graves; hence, this ordinance was instituted to form a relationship with the ordinance of baptism for the dead, being in likeness of the dead.

Consequently, the baptismal font was instituted as a similitude of the grave, and was commanded to be in a place underneath where the living are wont to assemble, to show forth the living and the dead, and that all things may have their likeness, and that they may accord one with another—that which is earthly conforming to that which is heavenly, as Paul hath declared, [1 Corinthians 15:46, 47, and 48](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/1-cor/15.46-48?lang=eng#p46):

“Howbeit that was not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual. The first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven. As is the earthy, such are they also that are earthy; and as is the heavenly, such are they also that are heavenly. And as are the records on the earth in relation to your dead, which are truly made out, so also are the records in heaven.”

This, therefore, is the sealing and binding power, and, in one sense of the word, the keys of the kingdom, which consist in the key of knowledge.

**The Sealing power of the priesthood has always existed in all ages of the earth (D&C 128:9-10)**

It may seem to some to be a very bold doctrine that we talk of—a power which records or binds on earth and binds in heaven. Nevertheless, in all ages of the world, whenever the Lord has given a dispensation of the priesthood to any man by actual revelation, or any set of men, this power has always been given. Hence, whatsoever those men did in authority, in the name of the Lord, and did it truly and faithfully, and kept a proper and faithful record of the same, it became a law on earth and in heaven, and could not be annulled, according to the decrees of the great Jehovah. This is a faithful saying. Who can hear it? And again, for the precedent, [Matthew 16:18, 19](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/matt/16.18,19?lang=eng#p18): And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

**Baptism for the dead has direct relation to the prophecy of Malachi and the latter-day return of Elijah (D&C 128:16-17)**

And now, in relation to the baptism for the dead, I will give you another quotation of Paul, [1 Corinthians 15:29](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/1-cor/15.29?lang=eng#p29): Else what shall they do which are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all? Why are they then baptized for the dead?

And again, in connection with this quotation I will give you a quotation from one of the prophets, who had his eye fixed on the restoration of the priesthood, the glories to be revealed in the last days, and in an especial manner this most glorious of all subjects belonging to the everlasting gospel, namely, the baptism for the dead; for Malachi says, [last chapter, verses 5th and 6th](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/mal/4.5-6?lang=eng#p5): Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

**Baptism for the dead is a necessary part of the restoration of all things (D&C 128:18)**

I might have rendered a plainer translation to this, but it is sufficiently plain to suit my purpose as it stands. It is sufficient to know, in this case, that the earth will be smitten with a curse unless there is a welding link of some kind or other between the fathers and the children, upon some subject or other—and behold what is that subject? It is the baptism for the dead. For we without them cannot be made perfect; neither can they without us be made perfect. Neither can they nor we be made perfect without those who have died in the gospel also; for it is necessary in the ushering in of the dispensation of the fulness of times, which dispensation is now beginning to usher in, that a whole and complete and perfect union, and welding together of dispensations, and keys, and powers, and glories should take place, and be revealed from the days of Adam even to the present time. And not only this, but those things which never have been revealed from the foundation of the world, but have been kept hid from the wise and prudent, shall be revealed unto babes and sucklings in this, the dispensation of the fulness of times.

**Marriage in the temple is a requirement for the fullest level of exaltation (D&C 131:1-4; D&C 132:19-21, 64-65)**

[And Joseph taught them, saying]

“In the celestial glory there are three heavens or degrees; And in order to obtain the highest, a man must enter into this order of the priesthood [meaning the new and everlasting covenant of marriage]; And if he does not, he cannot obtain it. He may enter into the other, but that is the end of his kingdom; he cannot have an increase.”

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph, saying]

“And again, verily I say unto you, if a man marry a wife by my word, which is my law, and by the new and everlasting covenant, and it is sealed unto them by the Holy Spirit of promise, by him who is anointed, unto whom I have appointed this power and the keys of this priesthood; and it shall be said unto them—Ye shall come forth in the first resurrection; and if it be after the first resurrection, in the next resurrection; and shall inherit thrones, kingdoms, principalities, and powers, dominions, all heights and depths—then shall it be written in the Lamb’s Book of Life, that he shall commit no murder whereby to shed innocent blood, and if ye abide in my covenant, and commit no murder whereby to shed innocent blood, it shall be done unto them in all things whatsoever my servant hath put upon them, in time, and through all eternity; and shall be of full force when they are out of the world; and they shall pass by the angels, and the gods, which are set there, to their exaltation and glory in all things, as hath been sealed upon their heads, which glory shall be a fulness and a continuation of the seeds forever and ever.

“Then shall they be gods, because they have no end; therefore shall they be from everlasting to everlasting, because they continue; then shall they be above all, because all things are subject unto them. Then shall they be gods, because they have all power, and the angels are subject unto them. Verily, verily, I say unto you, except ye abide my law ye cannot attain to this glory. And again, verily, verily, I say unto you, if any man have a wife, who holds the keys of this power, and he teaches unto her the law of my priesthood, as pertaining to these things, then shall she believe and administer unto him, or she shall be destroyed, saith the Lord your God; for I will destroy her; for I will magnify my name upon all those who receive and abide in my law. Therefore, it shall be lawful in me, if she receive not this law, for him to receive all things whatsoever I, the Lord his God, will give unto him, because she did not believe and administer unto him according to my word; and she then becomes the transgressor; and he is exempt from the law of Sarah, who administered unto Abraham according to the law when I commanded Abraham to take Hagar to wife.”

**The new and everlasting covenant of marriage, including polygamy, was revealed to Abraham, Isaac, and others**

**(D&C 132:1-5; D&C 132:28-39)**

[And the Lord spake unto Joseph, saying]

“Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you my servant Joseph, that inasmuch as you have inquired of my hand to know and understand wherein I, the Lord, justified my servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, as also Moses, David and Solomon, my servants, as touching the principle and doctrine of their having many wives and concubines— Behold, and lo, I am the Lord thy God, and will answer thee as touching this matter.

Therefore, prepare thy heart to receive and obey the instructions which I am about to give unto you; for all those who have this law revealed unto them must obey the same.

“For behold, I reveal unto you a new and an everlasting covenant; and if ye abide not that covenant, then are ye damned; for no one can reject this covenant and be permitted to enter into my glory. For all who will have a blessing at my hands shall abide the law which was appointed for that blessing, and the conditions thereof, as were instituted from before the foundation of the world. I am the Lord thy God, and will give unto thee the law of my Holy Priesthood, as was ordained by me and my Father before the world was.

Abraham received all things, whatsoever he received, by revelation and commandment, by my word, saith the Lord, and hath entered into his exaltation and sitteth upon his throne.

“Abraham received promises concerning his seed, and of the fruit of his loins—from whose loins ye are, namely, my servant Joseph—which were to continue so long as they were in the world; and as touching Abraham and his seed, out of the world they should continue; both in the world and out of the world should they continue as innumerable as the stars; or, if ye were to count the sand upon the seashore ye could not number them. This promise is yours also, because ye are of Abraham, and the promise was made unto Abraham; and by this law is the continuation of the works of my Father, wherein he glorifieth himself.

Go ye, therefore, and do the works of Abraham; enter ye into my law and ye shall be saved.

“But if ye enter not into my law ye cannot receive the promise of my Father, which he made unto Abraham.

God commanded Abraham, and Sarah gave Hagar to Abraham to wife. And why did she do it? Because this was the law; and from Hagar sprang many people. This, therefore, was fulfilling, among other things, the promises. Was Abraham, therefore, under condemnation? Verily I say unto you, Nay; for I, the Lord, commanded it. Abraham was commanded to offer his son Isaac; nevertheless, it was written: Thou shalt not kill. Abraham, however, did not refuse, and it was accounted unto him for righteousness. Abraham received concubines, and they bore him children; and it was accounted unto him for righteousness, because they were given unto him, and he abode in my law; as Isaac also and Jacob did none other things than that which they were commanded; and because they did none other things than that which they were commanded, they have entered into their exaltation, according to the promises, and sit upon thrones, and are not angels but are gods.

“David also received many wives and concubines, and also Solomon and Moses my servants, as also many others of my servants, from the beginning of creation until this time; and in nothing did they sin save in those things which they received not of me. David’s wives and concubines were given unto him of me, by the hand of Nathan, my servant, and others of the prophets who had the keys of this power; and in none of these things did he sin against me save in the case of Uriah and his wife; and, therefore he hath fallen from his exaltation, and received his portion; and he shall not inherit them out of the world, for I gave them unto another, saith the Lord.”

**Not just Adam and Eve.**

Many promises made and discussed in the temple sealing are simply a re-stating, or re-wording, of the promises made to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. In the temple, collectively we become Adam and Eve, something most understand without hesitation. But in considering the promises given to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, we also symbolically become them by receiving the promises that God made to them.

**Commanded to seek the face of the Lord, to accept the everlasting gospel and covenant of God (D&C 101:38-39)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And seek the face of the Lord always, that in patience ye may possess your souls, and ye shall have eternal life. When men are called unto mine everlasting gospel, and covenant with an everlasting covenant, they are accounted as the salt of the earth and the savor of men;”

**Commanded to pray that the wicked repent and accept the ordinances of the Temple, so they may be spared the destruction of God (D&C 95:1-4; D&C 101:92-95)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you whom I love, and whom I love I also chasten that their sins may be forgiven, for with the chastisement I prepare a way for their deliverance in all things out of temptation, and I have loved you— Wherefore, ye must needs be chastened and stand rebuked before my face; For ye have sinned against me a very grievous sin, in that ye have not considered the great commandment in all things, that I have given unto you concerning the building of mine house; For the preparation wherewith I design to prepare mine apostles to prune my vineyard for the last time, that I may bring to pass my strange act, that I may pour out my Spirit upon all flesh.

“Pray ye, therefore, that their ears may be opened unto your cries, that I may be merciful unto them, that these things may not come upon them. What I have said unto you must needs be, that all men may be left without excuse; That wise men and rulers may hear and know that which they have never considered;

That I may proceed to bring to pass my act, my strange act, and perform my work, my strange work, that men may discern between the righteous and the wicked, saith your God.”

**Because we live in the last days before the Second Coming, it’s very important to be clean from the sins of this generation, wherein the wicked and righteous will be separated (D&C 88:74-75)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And I give unto you, who are the first laborers in this last kingdom, a commandment that you assemble yourselves together, and organize yourselves, and prepare yourselves, and sanctify yourselves; yea, purify your hearts, and cleanse your hands and your feet before me, that I may make you clean; That I may testify unto your Father, and your God, and my God, that you are clean from the blood of this wicked generation; that I may fulfil this promise, this great and last promise, which I have made unto you, when I will.”

**The Salt Lake Temple to be built in the latter-days (Isaiah 2:1-5; Micah 4:1-5)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem. And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord’s house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.”

[And Micah prophesied, saying,]

“But in the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it. And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the Lord of hosts hath spoken it. For all people will walk everyone in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the Lord our God forever and ever.”

***President Joseph F. Smith’s Vision***

**The righteous in the Spirit World await the gospel to be taught to them (D&C 138:11-19)**

As I pondered over these things which are written, the eyes of my understanding were opened, and the Spirit of the Lord rested upon me, and I saw the hosts of the dead, both small and great. And there were gathered together in one place an innumerable company of the spirits of the just, who had been faithful in the testimony of Jesus while they lived in mortality;

And who had offered sacrifice in the similitude of the great sacrifice of the Son of God, and had suffered tribulation in their Redeemer’s name.

All these had departed the mortal life, firm in the hope of a glorious resurrection, through the grace of God the Father and his Only Begotten Son, Jesus Christ. I beheld that they were filled with joy and gladness, and were rejoicing together because the day of their deliverance was at hand. They were assembled awaiting the advent of the Son of God into the spirit world, to declare their redemption from the bands of death.

Their sleeping dust was to be restored unto its perfect frame, bone to his bone, and the sinews and the flesh upon them, the spirit and the body to be united never again to be divided, that they might receive a fulness of joy. While this vast multitude waited and conversed, rejoicing in the hour of their deliverance from the chains of death, the Son of God appeared, declaring liberty to the captives who had been faithful; And there he preached to them the everlasting gospel, the doctrine of the resurrection and the redemption of mankind from the fall, and from individual sins on conditions of repentance.

**The wicked in the Spirit World must have the gospel sent to them (D&C 138:31-35)**

And the chosen messengers went forth to declare the acceptable day of the Lord and proclaim liberty to the captives who were bound, even unto all who would repent of their sins and receive the gospel. Thus was the gospel preached to those who had died in their sins, without a knowledge of the truth, or in transgression, having rejected the prophets. These were taught faith in God, repentance from sin, vicarious baptism for the remission of sins, the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands, And all other principles of the gospel that were necessary for them to know in order to qualify themselves that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit. And so it was made known among the dead, both small and great, the unrighteous as well as the faithful, that redemption had been wrought through the sacrifice of the Son of God upon the cross.

**Righteous elders who pass away, continue their labors of redeeming Israel on the other side of the veil (D&C 138:57)**

I beheld that the faithful elders of this dispensation, when they depart from mortal life, continue their labors in the preaching of the gospel of repentance and redemption, through the sacrifice of the Only Begotten Son of God, among those who are in darkness and under the bondage of sin in the great world of the spirits of the dead.

**Temple work allows redemption for the dead (D&C 138:54, 58-59)**

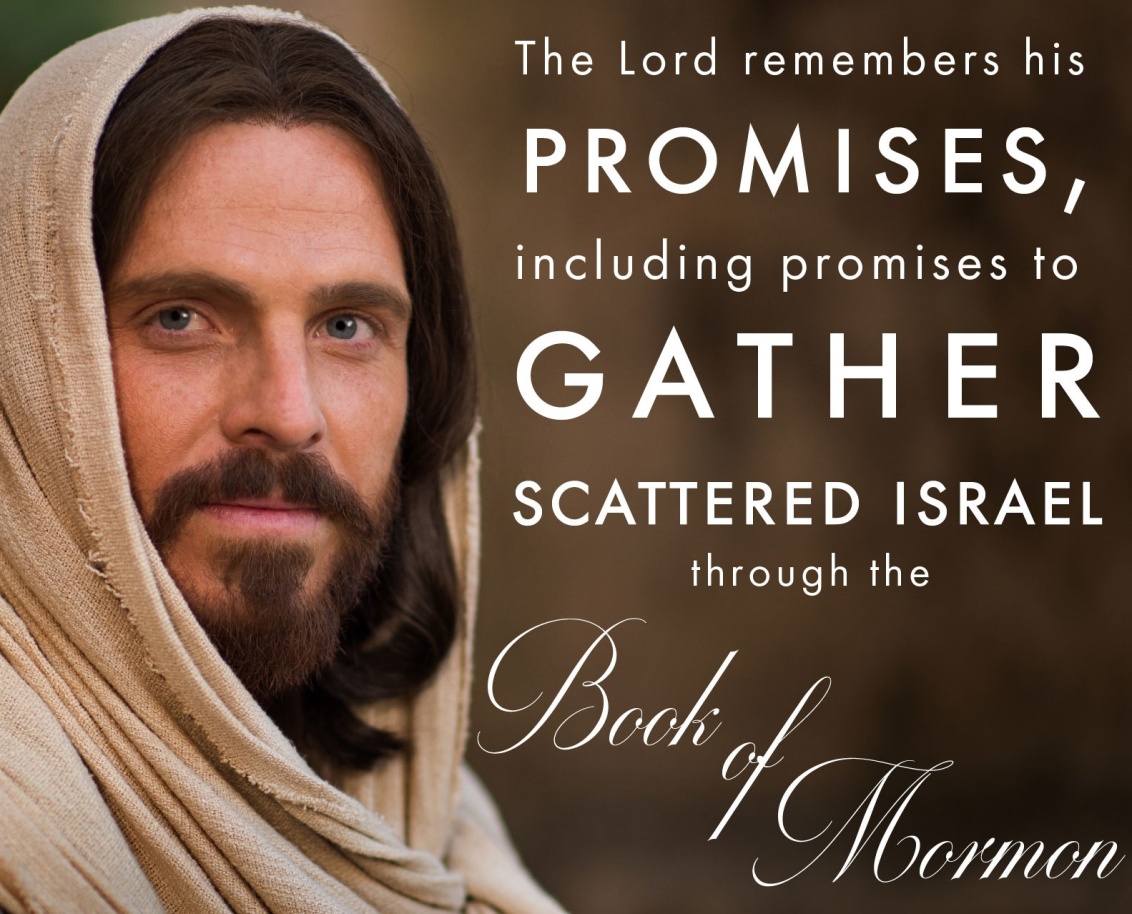
Including the building of the temples and the performance of ordinances therein for the redemption of the dead, were also in the spirit world. The dead who repent will be redeemed, through obedience to the ordinances of the house of God,

And after they have paid the penalty of their transgressions, and are washed clean, shall receive a reward according to their works, for they are heirs of salvation.

******

***CHAPTER 9:***

***THE LATTER-DAY GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

******

***9.1***

***OLD TESTAMENT PROPHETS PROPHESY OF***

***THE LATTER-DAY GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

***-1820-PRESENT DAY-***

***The Prophet Amos Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**That which has been ruined will be rebuilt and restored (Amos 9:11-15)**

[And Amos prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen, and close up the breaches thereof; and I will raise up his ruins, and I will build it as in the days of old: That they may possess the remnant of Edom, and of all the heathen, which are called by my name, saith the Lord that doeth this. Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that the plowman shall overtake the reaper, and the treader of grapes him that soweth seed; and the mountains shall drop sweet wine, and all the hills shall melt. And I will bring again the captivity of my people of Israel, and they shall build the waste cities, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and drink the wine thereof; they shall also make gardens, and eat the fruit of them. And I will plant them upon their land, and they shall no more be pulled up out of their land which I have given them, saith the Lord thy God.”

***The Prophet Hosea Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

***And of the Return of Ephraim***

**The children of Judah and Israel will be gathered together (Hosea 1:10-11)**

[And Hosea prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor numbered; and it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people, there it shall be said unto them, Ye are the sons of the living God. Then shall the children of Judah and the children of Israel be gathered together, and appoint themselves one head, and they shall come up out of the land: for great shall be the day of Jezreel.”

**Israel will forsake heathen gods and be betrothed unto the Lord (Hosea 2:14-23)**

[And Hosea prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Therefore, behold, I will allure her, and bring her into the wilderness, and speak comfortably unto her.

And I will give her her vineyards from thence, and the valley of Achor for a door of hope: and she shall sing there, as in the days of her youth, and as in the day when she came up out of the land of Egypt.

And it shall be at that day, saith the Lord, that thou shalt call me Ishi; and shalt call me no more Baali.

For I will take away the names of Baalim out of her mouth, and they shall no more be remembered by their name. And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely.

“And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord. And it shall come to pass in that day, I will hear, saith the Lord, I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth; And the earth shall hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil; and they shall hear Jezreel. And I will sow her unto me in the earth; and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I will say to them which were not my people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, Thou art my God.”

**In the latter-days Israel will seek the Lord (Hosea 3:4-5)**

[And Hosea prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“For the children of Israel shall abide many days without a king, and without a prince, and without a sacrifice, and without an image, and without an ephod, and without teraphim: Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the Lord their God, and David their king; and shall fear the Lord and his goodness in the latter days.”

**The Lord will heal the backsliding in Israel, and will restore beauty and growth unto them (Hosea 14:1-9)**

[And Hosea prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“O Israel, return unto the Lord thy God; for thou hast fallen by thine iniquity. Take with you words, and turn to the Lord: say unto him,

‘Take away all iniquity, and receive us graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips. Asshur shall not save us; we will not ride upon horses: neither will we say any more to the work of our hands,

‘Ye are our gods: for in thee the fatherless findeth mercy.’

“I will heal their backsliding, I will love them freely: for mine anger is turned away from him. I will be as the dew unto Israel: he shall grow as the lily, and cast forth his roots as Lebanon. His branches shall spread, and his beauty shall be as the olive tree, and his smell as Lebanon. They that dwell under his shadow shall return; they shall revive as the corn, and grow as the vine: the scent thereof shall be as the wine of Lebanon. Ephraim shall say,

‘What have I to do any more with idols? I have heard him, and observed him: I am like a green fir tree. From me is thy fruit found. Who is wise, and he shall understand these things? Prudent, and he shall know them? For the ways of the Lord are right, and the just shall walk in them: but the transgressors shall fall therein.”

***The Prophet Micah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**Israel will be assembled and gathered by the Lord in the latter-days (Micah 4:6-13)**

[And Micah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“In that day, saith the Lord, will I assemble her that halteth, and I will gather her that is driven out, and her that I have afflicted; And I will make her that halted a remnant, and her that was cast far off a strong nation: and the Lord shall reign over them in mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever. And thou, O tower of the flock, the strong hold of the daughter of Zion, unto thee shall it come, even the first dominion; the kingdom shall come to the daughter of Jerusalem.

“Now why dost thou cry out aloud? is there no king in thee? Is thy counsellor perished? for pangs have taken thee as a woman in travail. Be in pain, and labour to bring forth, O daughter of Zion, like a woman in travail: for now shalt thou go forth out of the city, and thou shalt dwell in the field, and thou shalt go even to Babylon; there shalt thou be delivered; there the Lord shall redeem thee from the hand of thine enemies.

Now also many nations are gathered against thee, that say, Let her be defiled, and let our eye look upon Zion.

“But they know not the thoughts of the Lord, neither understand they his counsel: for he shall gather them as the sheaves into the floor. Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion: for I will make thine horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass: and thou shalt beat in pieces many people: and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth.”

**The remnants of Jacob will be like a young lion among the Gentiles (Micah 5:8-15)**

[And Micah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“And the remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles in the midst of many people as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep: who, if he go through, both treadeth down, and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. Thine hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off. And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots:

“And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strong holds: And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thine hand; and thou shalt have no more soothsayers: Thy graven images also will I cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee; and thou shalt no more worship the work of thine hands.

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee: so will I destroy thy cities. And I will execute vengeance in anger and fury upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.”

**God will cause fear to come upon the enemies of Israel (Micah 7:11-20)**

[And Micah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“In the day that thy walls are to be built, in that day shall the decree be far removed. In that day also he shall come even to thee from Assyria, and from the fortified cities, and from the fortress even to the river, and from sea to sea, and from mountain to mountain. Notwithstanding the land shall be desolate because of them that dwell therein, for the fruit of their doings. Feed thy people with thy rod, the flock of thine heritage, which dwell solitarily in the wood, in the midst of Carmel: let them feed in Bashan and Gilead, as in the days of old.

“According to the days of thy coming out of the land of Egypt will I shew unto him marvellous things.

The nations shall see and be confounded at all their might: they shall lay their hand upon their mouth, their ears shall be deaf. They shall lick the dust like a serpent, they shall move out of their holes like worms of the earth: they shall be afraid of the Lord our God, and shall fear because of thee. Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy.

“He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea. Thou wilt perform the truth to Jacob, and the mercy to Abraham, which thou hast sworn unto our fathers from the days of old.”

***The Prophet Isaiah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**The gospel will go speedily throughout all the world (Isaiah 5:26-30 )**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly: None shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken: Whose arrows are sharp, and all their bows bent, their horses’ hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind: Their roaring shall be like a lion, they shall roar like young lions: yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry it away safe, and none shall deliver it. And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if one look unto the land, behold darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.”

**Israel will be gathered from all over the world (Isaiah 11:10-12)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.”

**The Lord will prepare the world for the great harvest (Isaiah 18:1-7)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Woe to the land shadowing with wings, which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia: That sendeth ambassadors by the sea, even in vessels of bulrushes upon the waters, saying,

‘Go, ye swift messengers, to a nation scattered and peeled, to a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden down, whose land the rivers have spoiled!’

“All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see ye, when he lifteth up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear ye. For so the Lord said unto me,

‘I will take my rest, and I will consider in my dwelling place like a clear heat upon herbs, and like a cloud of dew in the heat of harvest. For afore the harvest, when the bud is perfect, and the sour grape is ripening in the flower, he shall both cut off the sprigs with pruning hooks, and take away and cut down the branches.’

“They shall be left together unto the fowls of the mountains, and to the beasts of the earth: and the fowls shall summer upon them, and all the beasts of the earth shall winter upon them. In that time shall the present be brought unto the Lord of hosts of a people scattered and peeled, and from a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden under foot, whose land the rivers have spoiled, to the place of the name of the Lord of hosts, the mount Zion.”

**Countless posterity promised to Israel (Isaiah 43:4-6)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Since thou wast precious in my sight, thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee: therefore will I give men for thee, and people for thy life. Fear not: for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather thee from the west; I will say to the north,

‘Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;”

**Israel will blossom throughout the entire earth; Israel will worship the Lord in the temple at Jerusalem (Isaiah 27:1-13)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“In that day the Lord with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea. In that day sing ye unto her, a vineyard of red wine. I the Lord do keep it; I will water it every moment: lest any hurt it, I will keep it night and day. Fury is not in me: who would set the briers and thorns against me in battle? I would go through them, I would burn them together. Or let him take hold of my strength, that he may make peace with me; and he shall make peace with me.

“He shall cause them that come of Jacob to take root: Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit. Hath he smitten him, as he smote those that smote him? Or is he slain according to the slaughter of them that are slain by him? In measure, when it shooteth forth, thou wilt debate with it: he stayeth his rough wind in the day of the east wind. By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.

“Yet the defenced city shall be desolate, and the habitation forsaken, and left like a wilderness: there shall the calf feed, and there shall he lie down, and consume the branches thereof. When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, and set them on fire: for it is a people of no understanding: therefore he that made them will not have mercy on them, and he that formed them will shew them no favour. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and ye shall be gathered one by one, O ye children of Israel. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the Lord in the holy mount at Jerusalem.”

**One in Israel will cause a thousand enemies to flee; In the Millennial day, the earth will be at peace (Isaiah 30:15-26)**

For thus saith the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel;

“In returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not. But ye said,

‘No; for we will flee upon horses; therefore shall ye flee: and, We will ride upon the swift; therefore shall they that pursue you be swift.’

“One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke of five shall ye flee: till ye be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain, and as an ensign on an hill. And therefore will the Lord wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the Lord is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for him. For the people shall dwell in Zion at Jerusalem: thou shalt weep no more: he will be very gracious unto thee at the voice of thy cry; when he shall hear it, he will answer thee.

“And though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers: And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying,

‘This is the way, walk ye in it, when ye turn to the right hand, and when ye turn to the left.’

“Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it,

‘Get thee hence.’

“Then shall he give the rain of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day shall thy cattle feed in large pastures. The oxen likewise and the young asses that ear the ground shall eat clean provender, which hath been winnowed with the shovel and with the fan. And there shall be upon every high mountain, and upon every high hill, rivers and streams of waters in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall. Moreover the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold, as the light of seven days, in the day that the Lord bindeth up the breach of his people, and healeth the stroke of their wound.

**After years of great destruction, the Lord will bring great peace upon the people of Israel (Isaiah 32:9-20)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Rise up, ye women that are at ease; hear my voice, ye careless daughters; give ear unto my speech.

Many days and years shall ye be troubled, ye careless women: for the vintage shall fail, the gathering shall not come. Tremble, ye women that are at ease; be troubled, ye careless ones: strip you, and make you bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins. They shall lament for the teats, for the pleasant fields, for the fruitful vine. Upon the land of my people shall come up thorns and briers; yea, upon all the houses of joy in the joyous city:

“Because the palaces shall be forsaken; the multitude of the city shall be left; the forts and towers shall be for dens forever, a joy of wild asses, a pasture of flocks; Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest. Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field. And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance forever. And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places; When it shall hail, coming down on the forest; and the city shall be low in a low place. Blessed are ye that sow beside all waters, that send forth thither the feet of the ox and the ass.”

**The desert will blossom and become lush and fruitful, where the Redeemed of Israel will live (Isaiah 35:1-10)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. it shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon, they shall see the glory of the Lord, and the excellency of our God. Strengthen ye the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees. Say to them that are of a fearful heart,

‘Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompence; he will come and save you.’

“Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes.

“And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

**The Lord speaks peace to Israel (Isaiah 43:5-7)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Fear not: for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather thee from the west; I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth; Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.”

**With great mercies, the Lord will gather forsaken Israel (Isaiah 54:1-9)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes; For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited. Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

“For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called. For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused. For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer. For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee.”

**Israel shall be gathered in Jerusalem and Zion; We shall be called the People of the Lord (Isaiah 62:1-12)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“For Zion’s sake will I not hold my peace, and for Jerusalem’s sake I will not rest, until the righteousness thereof go forth as brightness, and the salvation thereof as a lamp that burneth. And the Gentiles shall see thy righteousness, and all kings thy glory: and thou shalt be called by a new name, which the mouth of the Lord shall name. Thou shalt also be a crown of glory in the hand of the Lord, and a royal diadem in the hand of thy God. Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzi-bah, and thy land Beulah: for the Lord delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married.

“For as a young man marrieth a virgin, so shall thy sons marry thee: and as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee. I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day nor night: ye that make mention of the Lord, keep not silence, And give him no rest, till he establish, and till he make Jerusalem a praise in the earth.

“The Lord hath sworn by his right hand, and by the arm of his strength, Surely I will no more give thy corn to be meat for thine enemies; and the sons of the stranger shall not drink thy wine, for the which thou hast laboured: But they that have gathered it shall eat it, and praise the Lord; and they that have brought it together shall drink it in the courts of my holiness. Go through, go through the gates; prepare ye the way of the people; cast up, cast up the highway; gather out the stones; lift up a standard for the people. Behold, the Lord hath proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him. And they shall call them, The holy people, The redeemed of the Lord: and thou shalt be called, Sought out, A city not forsaken.”

**The elect of God shall dwell in the mountains; Former troubles shall be forgotten (Isaiah 65:8-10)**

Thus saith the Lord,

“As the new wine is found in the cluster, and one saith,

‘Destroy it not; for a blessing is in it:’

“so will I do for my servants’ sakes, that I may not destroy them all. And I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah an inheritor of my mountains: and mine elect shall inherit it, and my servants shall dwell there. And Sharon shall be a fold of flocks, and the valley of Achor a place for the herds to lie down in, for my people that have sought me.

***The Prophet Jeremiah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**All nations shall be gathered in Jerusalem; The Lord will heal the backslidings of Israel (Jer 3:12-25)**

Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say,

“Return, thou backsliding Israel, saith the Lord; and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon you: for I am merciful, saith the Lord, and I will not keep anger forever. Only acknowledge thine iniquity, that thou hast transgressed against the Lord thy God, and hast scattered thy ways to the strangers under every green tree, and ye have not obeyed my voice, saith the Lord. Turn, O backsliding children, saith the Lord; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion:

And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.

“And it shall come to pass, when ye be multiplied and increased in the land, in those days, saith the Lord, they shall say no more, The ark of the covenant of the Lord: neither shall it come to mind: neither shall they remember it; neither shall they visit it; neither shall that be done any more. At that time they shall call Jerusalem the throne of the Lord; and all the nations shall be gathered unto it, to the name of the Lord, to Jerusalem: neither shall they walk any more after the imagination of their evil heart. In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel, and they shall come together out of the land of the north to the land that I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers. But I said,

‘How shall I put thee among the children, and give thee a pleasant land, a goodly heritage of the hosts of nations? Thou shalt call me, My father; and shalt not turn away from me.’

“Surely as a wife treacherously departeth from her husband, so have ye dealt treacherously with me, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.’ A voice was heard upon the high places, weeping and supplications of the children of Israel: for they have perverted their way, and they have forgotten the Lord their God.

“Return, ye backsliding children, and I will heal your backslidings. Behold, we come unto thee; for thou art the Lord our God. Truly in vain is salvation hoped for from the hills, and from the multitude of mountains: truly in the Lord our God is the salvation of Israel. For shame hath devoured the labour of our fathers from our youth; their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters. We lie down in our shame, and our confusion covereth us: for we have sinned against the Lord our God, we and our fathers, from our youth even unto this day, and have not obeyed the voice of the Lord our God.

**The day will come when all will know that the Lord has gathered his people from all over the earth (Jer 16:14-26)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that it shall no more be said,

‘The Lord liveth, that brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt; But, the Lord liveth, that brought up the children of Israel from the land of the north, and from all the lands whither he had driven them:’

“and I will bring them again into their land that I gave unto their fathers. Behold, I will send for many fishers, saith the Lord, and they shall fish them; and after will I send for many hunters, and they shall hunt them from every mountain, and from every hill, and out of the holes of the rocks.

**Israel will possess the lands promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Jer 30:1-14)**

The word that came to Jeremiah from the Lord, saying,

“Thus speaketh the Lord God of Israel, saying, Write thee all the words that I have spoken unto thee in a book. For, lo, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will bring again the captivity of my people Israel and Judah, saith the Lord: and I will cause them to return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it. And these are the words that the Lord spake concerning Israel and concerning Judah.

For thus saith the Lord; We have heard a voice of trembling, of fear, and not of peace. Ask ye now, and see whether a man doth travail with child? Wherefore do I see every man with his hands on his loins, as a woman in travail, and all faces are turned into paleness?

“Alas! for that day is great, so that none is like it: it is even the time of Jacob’s trouble; but he shall be saved out of it. For it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord of hosts, that I will break his yoke from off thy neck, and will burst thy bonds, and strangers shall no more serve themselves of him: But they shall serve the Lord their God, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them. Therefore fear thou not, O my servant Jacob, saith the Lord; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid.

“For I am with thee, saith the Lord, to save thee: though I make a full end of all nations whither I have scattered thee, yet will I not make a full end of thee: but I will correct thee in measure, and will not leave thee altogether unpunished. For thus saith the Lord, Thy bruise is incurable, and thy wound is grievous.

There is none to plead thy cause, that thou mayest be bound up: thou hast no healing medicines. All thy lovers have forgotten thee; they seek thee not; for I have wounded thee with the wound of an enemy, with the chastisement of a cruel one, for the multitude of thine iniquity; because thy sins were increased.”

**The Lord will redeemed Jacob from his enemies (Jer 31:1-17, 27-40)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“At the same time, saith the Lord, will I be the God of all the families of Israel, and they shall be my people.

Thus saith the Lord, The people which were left of the sword found grace in the wilderness; even Israel, when I went to cause him to rest. The Lord hath appeared of old unto me, saying,

‘Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee.

Again I will build thee, and thou shalt be built, O virgin of Israel: thou shalt again be adorned with thy tabrets, and shalt go forth in the dances of them that make merry. Thou shalt yet plant vines upon the mountains of Samaria: the planters shall plant, and shall eat them as common things.

For there shall be a day, that the watchmen upon the mount Ephraim shall cry,

‘Arise ye, and let us go up to Zion unto the Lord our God.’

“For thus saith the Lord; Sing with gladness for Jacob, and shout among the chief of the nations: publish ye, praise ye, and say,

‘O Lord, save thy people, the remnant of Israel.’

“Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the coasts of the earth, and with them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and her that travaileth with child together: a great company shall return thither. They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn.

“Hear the word of the Lord, O ye nations, and declare it in the isles afar off, and say, He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd doth his flock. For the Lord hath redeemed Jacob, and ransomed him from the hand of him that was stronger than he. Therefore they shall come and sing in the height of Zion, and shall flow together to the goodness of the Lord, for wheat, and for wine, and for oil, and for the young of the flock and of the herd: and their soul shall be as a watered garden; and they shall not sorrow any more at all.

“Then shall the virgin rejoice in the dance, both young men and old together: for I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them, and make them rejoice from their sorrow. And I will satiate the soul of the priests with fatness, and my people shall be satisfied with my goodness, saith the Lord.

“Thus saith the Lord;

‘A voice was heard in Ramah, lamentation, and bitter weeping; Rahel weeping for her children refused to be comforted for her children, because they were not.’

“Thus saith the Lord;

‘Refrain thy voice from weeping, and thine eyes from tears: for thy work shall be rewarded, and they shall come again from the land of the enemy. And there is hope in thine end, that thy children shall come again to their own border.”

**The Lord will make an everlasting covenant with israel (Jer 32:36-44)**

And now therefore thus saith the Lord, the God of Israel, concerning this city, whereof ye say,

‘It shall be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence;’

“Behold, I will gather them out of all countries, whither I have driven them in mine anger, and in my fury, and in great wrath; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely:

And they shall be my people, and I will be their God: And I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear me forever, for the good of them, and of their children after them: And I will make an everlasting0 covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me.

“Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with my whole heart and with my whole soul. Like as I have brought all this great evil upon this people, so will I bring upon them all the good that I have promised them. And fields shall be bought in this land, whereof ye say, It is desolate without man or beast; it is given into the hand of the Chaldeans. Men shall buy fields for money, and subscribe evidences, and seal them, and take witnesses in the land of Benjamin, and in the places about Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, and in the cities of the mountains, and in the cities of the valley, and in the cities of the south: for I will cause their captivity to return, saith the Lord.”

**The Lord will keep his promises to the House of Israel (Jer 33:14)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied, saying]

“Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will perform that good thing which I have promised unto the house of Israel and to the house of Judah.”

***The Prophet Ezekiel Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**Israel will be gathered from within the countries she’s been scattered (Ezekiel 11:13-20; 33-34)**

And it came to pass, when I prophesied, that Pelatiah the son of Benaiah died. Then fell I down upon my face, and cried with a loud voice, and said,

“Ah Lord God! Wilt thou make a full end of the remnant of Israel?”

Again the word of the Lord came unto me, saying,

“Son of man, thy brethren, even thy brethren, the men of thy kindred, and all the house of Israel wholly, are they unto whom the inhabitants of Jerusalem have said,

‘Get you far from the Lord: unto us is this land given in possession.’

“Therefore say, Thus saith the Lord God;

‘Although I have cast them far off among the heathen, and although I have scattered them among the countries, yet will I be to them as a little sanctuary in the countries where they shall come.’

“Therefore say, thus saith the Lord God;

‘I will even gather you from the people, and assemble you out of the countries where ye have been scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.’

“And they shall come thither, and they shall take away all the detestable things thereof and all the abominations thereof from thence. And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh: That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.”

“As I live, saith the Lord God, surely with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out, will I rule over you: And I will bring you out from the people, and will gather you out of the countries wherein ye are scattered, with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out.”

**God will establish an everlasting covenant with Israel (Ezekiel 16:60-63)**

[And Ezekiel prophesied, saying]

“Nevertheless I will remember my covenant with thee in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an everlasting covenant. Then thou shalt remember thy ways, and be ashamed, when thou shalt receive thy sisters, thine elder and thy younger: and I will give them unto thee for daughters, but not by thy covenant.

And I will establish my covenant with thee; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord: That thou mayest remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth anymore because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward thee for all that thou hast done, saith the Lord God.”

**Israel shall be fed in the mountains and in the pastures; the Lord will feed his flock(Ezekiel 34:11-19)**

For thus saith the Lord God;

“Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out. As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered; so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day. And I will bring them out from the people, and gather them from the countries, and will bring them to their own land, and feed them upon the mountains of Israel by the rivers, and in all the inhabited places of the country. I will feed them in a good pasture, and upon the high mountains of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie in a good fold, and in a fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel.

“I will feed my flock, and I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord God. I will seek that which was lost, and bring again that which was driven away, and will bind up that which was broken, and will strengthen that which was sick: but I will destroy the fat and the strong; I will feed them with judgment. And as for you, O my flock, thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I judge between cattle and cattle, between the rams and the he goats. Seemeth it a small thing unto you to have eaten up the good pasture, but ye must tread down with your feet the residue of your pastures? and to have drunk of the deep waters, but ye must foul the residue with your feet? And as for my flock, they eat that which ye have trodden with your feet; and they drink that which ye have fouled with your feet.”

**Jerusalem shall know that the Lord reigns (Ezekiel 36:38)**

“As the holy flock, as the flock of Jerusalem in her solemn feasts; so shall the waste cities be filled with flocks of men: and they shall know that I am the Lord.”

***The Prophet Daniel Prophesies of the Kingdoms of Men and of Christ’s Coming to Adam***

**See Daniel 7-8**

**See Daniel 11-12**

***The Prophet Zechariah Prophesies of the Latter-day Gathering of Israel***

**The Lord sends his angels to fight for Jerusalem and her inhabitants (Zech 2:1-13)**

I lifted up mine eyes again, and looked, and behold a man with a measuring line in his hand. Then said I,

“Whither goest thou?”

And he said unto me,

“To measure Jerusalem, to see what is the breadth thereof, and what is the length thereof.”

And, behold, the angel that talked with me went forth, and another angel went out to meet him, And said unto him,

“Run, speak to this young man, saying,

‘Jerusalem shall be inhabited as towns without walls for the multitude of men and cattle therein:

For I, saith the Lord, will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midst of her. Ho, ho, come forth, and flee from the land of the north, saith the Lord: for I have spread you abroad as the four winds of the heaven, saith the Lord. Deliver thyself, O Zion, that dwellest with the daughter of Babylon. For thus saith the Lord of hosts; After the glory hath he sent me unto the nations which spoiled you: for he that toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye. For, behold, I will shake mine hand upon them, and they shall be a spoil to their servants: and ye shall know that the Lord of hosts hath sent me. Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion: for, lo, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord. And many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people: and I will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that the Lord of hosts hath sent me unto thee. And the Lord shall inherit Judah his portion in the holy land, and shall choose Jerusalem again. Be silent, O all flesh, before the Lord: for he is raised up out of his holy habitation.”

**The Lord’s people shall dwell in the midst of Jerusalem (Zech 8:1-23)**

Again the word of the Lord of hosts came to me, saying,

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts; I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy, and I was jealous for her with great fury… I am returned unto Zion, and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and Jerusalem shall be called a city of truth; and the mountain of the Lord of hosts the holy mountain… There shall yet old men and old women dwell in the streets of Jerusalem, and every man with his staff in his hand for very age. And the streets of the city shall be full of boys and girls playing in the streets thereof.

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts; If it be marvellous in the eyes of the remnant of this people in these days, should it also be marvellous in mine eyes? saith the Lord of hosts. Behold, I will save my people from the east country, and from the west country; And I will bring them, and they shall dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God, in truth and in righteousness. Let your hands be strong, ye that hear in these days these words by the mouth of the prophets, which were in the day that the foundation of the house of the Lord of hosts was laid, that the temple might be built.

For before these days there was no hire for man, nor any hire for beast; neither was there any peace to him that went out or came in because of the affliction: for I set all men every one against his neighbour.

“But now I will not be unto the residue of this people as in the former days, saith the Lord of hosts.

For the seed shall be prosperous; the vine shall give her fruit, and the ground shall give her increase, and the heavens shall give their dew; and I will cause the remnant of this people to possess all these things.

And it shall come to pass, that as ye were a curse among the heathen, O house of Judah, and house of Israel; so will I save you, and ye shall be a blessing: fear not, but let your hands be strong.

“For thus saith the Lord of hosts; As I thought to punish you, when your fathers provoked me to wrath, saith the Lord of hosts, and I repented not: So again have I thought in these days to do well unto Jerusalem and to the house of Judah: fear ye not. These are the things that ye shall do; Speak ye every man the truth to his neighbour; execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates: And let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his neighbour; and love no false oath: for all these are things that I hate, saith the Lord.

And the word of the Lord of hosts came unto me, saying,

“Thus saith the Lord of hosts; The fast of the fourth month, and the fast of the fifth, and the fast of the seventh, and the fast of the tenth, shall be to the house of Judah joy and gladness, and cheerful feasts; therefore love the truth and peace.; It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities: And the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the Lord, and to seek the Lord of hosts: I will go also. Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord. In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.”

**God will gather his people and smite the enemies of Israel (Zech 10:5-12)**

[And Zachariah prophesied, saying]

“And they shall be as mighty men, which tread down their enemies in the mire of the streets in the battle: and they shall fight, because the Lord is with them, and the riders on horses shall be confounded.

And I will strengthen the house of Judah, and I will save the house of Joseph, and I will bring them again to place them; for I have mercy upon them: and they shall be as though I had not cast them off: for I am the Lord their God, and will hear them. And they of Ephraim shall be like a mighty man, and their heart shall rejoice as through wine: yea, their children shall see it, and be glad; their heart shall rejoice in the Lord.

I will hiss for them, and gather them; for I have redeemed them: and they shall increase as they have increased.

“And I will sow them among the people: and they shall remember me in far countries; and they shall live with their children, and turn again. I will bring them again also out of the land of Egypt, and gather them out of Assyria; and I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon; and place shall not be found for them.

And he shall pass through the sea with affliction, and shall smite the waves in the sea, and all the deeps of the river shall dry up: and the pride of Assyria shall be brought down, and the sceptre of Egypt shall depart away. And I will strengthen them in the Lord; and they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the Lord.”

***9.2***

***THE LATTER-DAY GATHERING OF ISRAEL***

**What exactly is “The Gathering of Israel?”**

“The Lord is gathering those who will choose to let God be the most important influence in their lives. For centuries, prophets have foretold this gathering, and it is happening right now! As an essential prelude to the Second Coming of the Lord, it is the most important work in the world! This pre-millennial gathering is an individual saga of expanding faith and spiritual courage for millions of people. And as members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, or “latter-day covenant Israel,” we have been charged to assist the Lord with this pivotal work. When we speak of gathering Israel on both sides of the veil, we are referring, of course, to missionary, temple, and family history work. We are also referring to building faith and testimony in the hearts of those with whom we live, work, and serve. Anytime we do anything that helps anyone—on either side of the veil—to make and keep their covenants with God, we are helping to gather Israel” (Let God Prevail, Pres. Nelson, Oct 2020)

**We believe in the literal gathering of Israel (AOF 10)**

We believe in the literal gathering of Israel and in the restoration of the Ten Tribes; that Zion (the New Jerusalem) will be built upon the American continent; that Christ will reign personally upon the earth; and, that the earth will be renewed and receive its paradisiacal glory.

**The Lord promises to gather Israel in the latter-days (Deut 4:29-31)**

[And the Lord said unto Moses,]

“But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul. When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the latter days, if thou turn to the Lord thy God, and shalt be obedient unto his voice; (For the Lord thy God is a merciful God;) he will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which he sware unto them.”

**Israel will be gathered in the latter-days (Deut 4:29-31)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul. When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the latter days, if thou turn to the Lord thy God, and shalt be obedient unto his voice; (For the Lord thy God is a merciful God;) he will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which he sware unto them.”

**Israel will be gathered from all nations when they repent and return to the Lord (Deut 30:1-6)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And it shall come to pass, when all these things are come upon thee, the blessing and the curse, which I have set before thee, and thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations, whither the Lord thy God hath driven thee, And shalt return unto the Lord thy God, and shalt obey his voice according to all that I command thee this day, thou and thy children, with all thine heart, and with all thy soul;

That then the Lord thy God will turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee from all the nations, whither the Lord thy God hath scattered thee.

“If any of thine be driven out unto the outmost parts of heaven, from thence will the Lord thy God gather thee, and from thence will he fetch thee: And the Lord thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it; and he will do thee good, and multiply thee above thy fathers.

And the Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.”

**Isaiah sees the gathering of Israel in the latter-days, in connection to temple work (Isaiah 2:1-5)**

The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem. And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord’s house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.

**God’s promise to comfort Zion and Gather Israel in the latter-days (2 Ne 8/Isaiah 51 & 52:1-2)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged. Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him. For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody. Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

“My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust. Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished. Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings. For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

“Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon? Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over? Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away. I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

“And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor? The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail. But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name. And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

“Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out— And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up. These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee? Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

“Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again. But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over. Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean. Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.”

**Isaiah prophesies that 10% of the House of Israel will return to claim their lands in the latter-days (2 Ne 16:13)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.”

**The words of Isaiah are written for the House of Israel (2 Ne 25:4)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.”

**Both Jew and Gentile must feel after the Lord in faith in the latter days (Rom 9:22-33)**

[And Paul spake unto the Romans, saying]

“What if God, willing to shew his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction: And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared unto glory, Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles? As he saith also in Osee,

‘I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.’

And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.’

“Esaias also crieth concerning Israel, Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved: For he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth. And as Esaias said before,

‘Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.’

“What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith. But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness. Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumbling stone; As it is written,

‘Behold, I lay in Sion a stumbling stone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.”

**All who accept the gospel of Jesus Christ through baptism, become the seed of Abraham (Gal 3:27-29)**

[And Paul wrote, saying]

“For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for ye are all one in Christ Jesus. And if ye be Christ’s, then are ye Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.”

**The Promise to Gather Israel After Being Scattered, The Gentiles to be Grafted Into the House of Israel, and the Jews to Know that Jesus Christ is the Messiah (1 Ne 10:14)**

[And Nephi prophesied, saying]

“And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.”

**After Israel Begins to Be Gathered, All the Earth Shall See the Salvation of the Lord (1 Ne 19:17)**

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

**The Lord Will Redeem Scattered Israel in the Latter-days (1 Ne 21:14-16)**

But, behold, Zion hath said:

‘The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me’

“but he will show that he hath not. For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.”

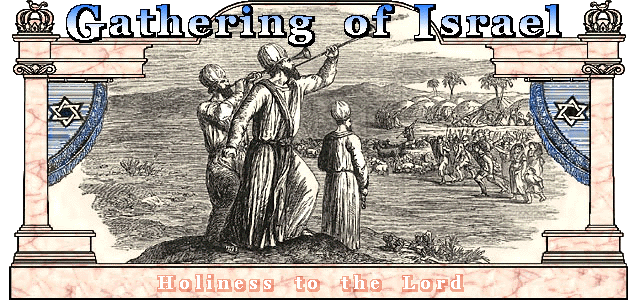
**The Specifics of How God Will Protect and Redeem Israel in the Latter-days (1 Ne 21:17-22)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live…thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride. For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

“The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell. Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been? Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

****

**In the Latter-days, God will Make Bare His Arm in the Eyes of the Nations, by Bringing His Covenants and Gospel to Those of the House of Israel (1 Ne 22:10-11)**

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations. Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

**The Time is Soon Coming When God will Gather ALL His Children from the 4 Quarters of the Earth (1 Ne 22:25)**

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

**God remembers and loves the House of Israel (Jacob 6:4)**

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

**The scattered remnants of Israel in the latter-days will be protected from the wickedness of the Gentiles and receive the fulness of the gospel (3 Ne 16:12)**

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

**As the prophecies of Isaiah are fulfilled, the covenant that God has made with the House of Israel, to gather them from the 4 quarters of the earth will begin to be fulfilled (3 Ne 20:11-13)**

[And the Lord spake unto the people, saying]

“Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them— And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel. And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.”

**The remnants of the House of Israel will be gathered in the latter-days (3 Ne 20:18, 21)**

“And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.  And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.”

**All who belong to the House of Israel are heirs to the promise made to Abraham (3 Ne 20:25-27)**

“And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant— And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.”

**God has promised to gather the Jews of the House of Israel back to Jerusalem in the latter-days (3 Ne 20:29)**

“And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.”

**The Gospel will be preached to the Jews in the latter-days and they’ll believe in Jesus Christ, fulfilling many prophecies of Isaiah (3 Ne 20:30-46)**

“And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them; And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name. Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye. Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance. Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

“The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one. And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion…Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak. And then shall they say:

‘How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!’

“And then shall a cry go forth:

‘Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.’

“For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward. Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high. As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men— So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.”

**Many great temporal blessings will be poured out upon the House of Israel, both before and after the cleansing of America**

**(3 Ne 22:1-17/Isaiah 54)**

“And then shall that which is written come to pass:

‘Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

“Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes; For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited. Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

“For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called. For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused… For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer. For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

“For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee. O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones. And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children. In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

“Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake. Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy. No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.”

**God promises to remember the covenant He made with Israel (3 Ne 29:3)**

“And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.”

**In the latter-days God will gather His elect from among the 4 quarters of the earth, in his own due time (D&C 33:5-6, 25)**

And verily, verily, I say unto you,

“that this church have I established and called forth out of the wilderness. And even so will I gather mine elect from the four quarters of the earth, even as many as will believe in me, and hearken unto my voice… And Israel shall be saved in mine own due time; and by the keys which I have given shall they be led, and no more be confounded at all.”

**The preaching of Gospel of Jesus Christ is the covenant God promises to recover the scattered people of Israel in the latter-days (D&C 39:11)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And if thou do this, I have prepared thee for a greater work. Thou shalt preach the fulness of my gospel, which I have sent forth in these last days, the covenant which I have sent forth to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel.”

**The gospel is to be taken to all nations of the world (D&C 39:15)**

“And inasmuch as my people shall assemble themselves at the Ohio, I have kept in store a blessing such as is not known among the children of men, and it shall be poured forth upon their heads. And from thence men shall go forth into all nations.”

**In the latter-days, the gospel is to go forth to the world one last time before its destruction prior to the Second Coming**

**(D&C 39:16-17)**

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you,

“that the people in Ohio call upon me in much faith, thinking I will stay my hand in judgment upon the nations, but I cannot deny my word. Wherefore lay to with your might and call faithful laborers into my vineyard, that it may be pruned for the last time.”

**In the latter-days, the earth shall be redeemed following the scattering and gathering of Israel (D&C 45:17)**

“For as ye have looked upon the long absence of your spirits from your bodies to be a bondage, I will show unto you how the day of redemption shall come, and also the restoration of the scattered Israel.”

**The remnants of scattered Israel are to remain so until the Times of the Gentiles are fulfilled (D&C 45:25)**

“But they shall be gathered again; but they shall remain until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.”

**The gathering of Israel will be presided over the by Elders of the Church (D&C 58:56)**

“And let the work of the gathering be not in haste, nor by flight; but let it be done as it shall be counseled by “the elders of the church at the conferences, according to the knowledge which they receive from time to time.”

**The Lord will keep and preserve those He chooses (D&C 63:2-4)**

“Yea, verily, I say, hear the word of him whose anger is kindled against the wicked and rebellious; Who willeth to take even them whom he will take, and preserveth in life them whom he will preserve; Who buildeth up at his own will and pleasure; and destroyeth when he pleases, and is able to cast the soul down to hell.”

**The gathering of Israel to Zion will not be done in haste (D&C 63:24)**

“And now, behold, this is the will of the Lord your God concerning his saints, that they should assemble themselves together unto the land of Zion, not in haste, lest there should be confusion, which bringeth pestilence.”

**The righteous to be gathered before the great destruction of the wicked (D&C 63:36-37)**

“Wherefore, seeing that I, the Lord, have decreed all these things upon the face of the earth, I will that my saints should be assembled upon the land of Zion; And that every man should take righteousness in his hands and faithfulness upon his loins, and lift a warning voice unto the inhabitants of the earth; and declare both by word and by flight that desolation shall come upon the wicked.”

**Israel will be gathered into the stakes of Zion and other holy places (D&C 101:20-22)**

“And, behold, there is none other place appointed than that which I have appointed; neither shall there be any other place appointed than that which I have appointed, for the work of the gathering of my saints— Until the day cometh when there is found no more room for them; and then I have other places which I will appoint unto them, and they shall be called stakes, for the curtains or the strength of Zion. Behold, it is my will, that all they who call on my name, and worship me according to mine everlasting gospel, should gather together, and stand in holy places;”

**The Saints of God will continue to be gathered in holy places until the time of the harvest comes (D&C 101:64-68)**

“That the work of the gathering together of my saints may continue, that I may build them up unto my name upon holy places; for the time of harvest is come, and my word must needs be fulfilled. Therefore, I must gather together my people, according to the parable of the wheat and the tares, that the wheat may be secured in the garners to possess eternal life, and be crowned with celestial glory, when I shall come in the kingdom of my Father to reward every man according as his work shall be;

“While the tares shall be bound in bundles, and their bands made strong, that they may be burned with unquenchable fire. Therefore, a commandment I give unto all the churches, that they shall continue to gather together unto the places which I have appointed. Nevertheless, as I have said unto you in a former commandment, let not your gathering be in haste, nor by flight; but let all things be prepared before you.”

**The Lord has declared that those who have been scattered shall return to the lands of their inheritance (D&C 103:11)**

“But verily I say unto you, I have decreed that your brethren which have been scattered shall return to the lands of their inheritances, and shall build up the waste places of Zion.”

**The Church is commanded to gather to the land of Zion (D&C 103:22)**

“Therefore let my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., say unto the strength of my house, my young men and the middle aged—Gather yourselves together unto the land of Zion, upon the land which I have bought with money that has been consecrated unto me.”

**The Lord has consecrated the land of Zion for the gathering of the saints (D&C 105:15)**

“Behold, the destroyer I have sent forth to destroy and lay waste mine enemies; and not many years hence they shall not be left to pollute mine heritage, and to blaspheme my name upon the lands which I have consecrated for the gathering together of my saints.”

**The seed of Abraham, Israel, must be led out of bondage (D&C 103:17-18)**

“For ye are the children of Israel, and of the seed of Abraham, and ye must needs be led out of bondage by power, and with a stretched-out arm. And as your fathers were led at the first, even so shall the redemption of Zion be."

**Zion will be gathered in many stakes (D&C 109:59; D&C 115:18; D&C 125:1-4; D&C 133:9)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“We ask thee to appoint unto Zion other stakes besides this one which thou hast appointed, that the gathering of thy people may roll on in great power and majesty, that thy work may be cut short in righteousness.”

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And also that other places should be appointed for stakes in the regions round about, as they shall be manifested unto my servant Joseph, from time to time.”

Q: What is the will of the Lord concerning the saints in the Territory of Iowa?

“Verily, thus saith the Lord, I say unto you, if those who call themselves by my name and are essaying to be my saints, if they will do my will and keep my commandments concerning them, let them gather themselves together unto the places which I shall appoint unto them by my servant Joseph, and build up cities unto my name, that they may be prepared for that which is in store for a time to come.

“Let them build up a city unto my name upon the land opposite the city of Nauvoo, and let the name of Zarahemla be named upon it. And let all those who come from the east, and the west, and the north, and the south, that have desires to dwell therein, take up their inheritance in the same, as well as in the city of Nashville, or in the city of Nauvoo, and in all the stakes which I have appointed.

“And behold, and lo, this shall be their cry, and the voice of the Lord unto all people: Go ye forth unto the land of Zion, that the borders of my people may be enlarged, and that her stakes may be strengthened, and that Zion may go forth unto the regions round about.”

**Scattered Israel is commanded to return to the lands of her inheritance (D&C 113:9-10)**

Q: What are we to understand by Zion loosing herself from the bands of her neck; [2d verse](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/52.2?lang=eng#p2)?

“We are to understand that the scattered remnants are exhorted to return to the Lord from whence they have fallen; which if they do, the promise of the Lord is that he will speak to them, or give them revelation. See the [6th, 7th, and 8th verses](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/52.6-8?lang=eng#p6). The bands of her neck are the curses of God upon her, or the remnants of Israel in their scattered condition among the Gentiles.”

**The Saints must seek out the lost sheep who are kept from the gospel because they don’t know where to find it**

**(D&C 123:11-15)**

[And Joseph wrote unto the Saints, saying]

“And also it is an imperative duty that we owe to all the rising generation, and to all the pure in heart—

For there are many yet on the earth among all sects, parties, and denominations, who are blinded by the subtle craftiness of men, whereby they lie in wait to deceive, and who are only kept from the truth because they know not where to find it— Therefore, that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they are truly manifest from heaven—

These should then be attended to with great earnestness. Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the saints, which depends upon these things.”

**The gathering of Israel not to be done in haste (D&C 133:15)**

But verily, thus saith the Lord,

“let not your flight be in haste, but let all things be prepared before you; and he that goeth, let him not look back lest sudden destruction shall come upon him.”

**In the latter days, Christ will gather, and continue to gather, His people up until the Second Coming when He comes in all His glory, and with angels assisting Him (D&C 29:1-11; Matt 16:27)**

“Listen to the voice of Jesus Christ, your Redeemer, the Great I Am, whose arm of mercy hath atoned for your sins; Who will gather his people even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, even as many as will hearken to my voice and humble themselves before me, and call upon me in mighty prayer.

“Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, that at this time your sins are forgiven you, therefore ye receive these things; but remember to sin no more, lest perils shall come upon you. Verily, I say unto you that ye are chosen out of the world to declare my gospel with the sound of rejoicing, as with the voice of a trump.

Lift up your hearts and be glad, for I am in your midst, and am your advocate with the Father; and it is his good will to give you the kingdom. And, as it is written—Whatsoever ye shall ask in faith, being united in prayer according to my command, ye shall receive.

“And ye are called to bring to pass the gathering of mine elect; for mine elect hear my voice and harden not their hearts; Wherefore the decree hath gone forth from the Father that they shall be gathered in unto one place upon the face of this land, to prepare their hearts and be prepared in all things against the day when tribulation and desolation are sent forth upon the wicked. For the hour is nigh and the day soon at hand when the earth is ripe; and all the proud and they that do wickedly shall be as stubble; and I will burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that wickedness shall not be upon the earth;

“For the hour is nigh, and that which was spoken by mine apostles must be fulfilled; for as they spoke so shall it come to pass; For I will reveal myself from heaven with power and great glory, with all the hosts thereof, and dwell in righteousness with men on earth a thousand years, and the wicked shall not stand.

“For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.”

**The people of the Lord will be gathered prior to His Second Coming (D&C 45:43-44, 64)**

“And the remnant shall be gathered unto this place; And then they shall look for me, and, behold, I will come; and they shall see me in the clouds of heaven, clothed with power and great glory; with all the holy angels; and he that watches not for me shall be cut off. Wherefore I, the Lord, have said, gather ye out from the eastern lands, assemble ye yourselves together ye elders of my church; go ye forth into the western countries, call upon the inhabitants to repent, and inasmuch as they do repent, build up churches unto me.”

**Scattered Israel will be converted to the gospel, lay down their weapons of rebellion, and begin to believe in Jesus Christ**

**(D&C 109:65-67)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“And [wilt thou] cause that the remnants of Jacob, who have been cursed and smitten because of their transgression, be converted from their wild and savage condition to the fulness of the everlasting gospel; That they may lay down their weapons of bloodshed, and cease their rebellions. And may all the scattered remnants of Israel, who have been driven to the ends of the earth, come to a knowledge of the truth, believe in the Messiah, and be redeemed from oppression, and rejoice before thee.”

**The elect will be gathered (JSM 1:27)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And now I show unto you a parable. Behold, wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together; so likewise shall mine elect be gathered from the four quarters of the earth.”

**Angels to participate in the gathering of the elect (JSM 1:37)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And whoso treasureth up my word, shall not be deceived, for the Son of Man shall come, and he shall send his angels before him with the great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together the remainder of his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.”

**The gathering of the elect will be quick and sudden (JSM 1:44-45)**

Then shall be fulfilled that which is written, that in the last days, two shall be in the field, the one shall be taken, and the other left; Two shall be grinding at the mill, the one shall be taken, and the other left;

***9.3***

***PROMISES MADE TO LEHI’S DESCENDANTS IN THE LATTER-DAYS***

**Joseph of Egypt, in Vision, Saw Lehi’s Descendants Being Taught the Gospel in the Latter-days (2 Ne 3:5)**

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

**In the Latter-days, the Gospel Will Go to the Gentiles, Who Will then Teach the Lamanites (1 Ne 15:13)**

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed.

**In the Latter-days, the Lamanites Will Accept the Gospel and then be Grafted Back into the House of Israel:**

**(1 Ne 15:14-16)**

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

**In the Latter-days, the Lamanites Will Accept the Gospel AFTER Having Been First Scattered Themselves, by the Gentiles**

**(1 Ne 15:17)**

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

**In the latter days, the Gentiles and descendants of Lehi will have the Bible (2 Ne 29:13)**

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

**In the latter-days Lehi’s descendants will know of their history and genealogy through the Book of Mormon, and the gospel of Jesus Christ declared unto them (2 Ne 30:5)**

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

**Lehi’s descendants, in the latter-days, will become pure as they embrace the gospel (2 Ne 30:6)**

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightsome people.

**The Lord will extend mercy to the Lamanites in the latter-days (Alma 9:16-17)**

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land. And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

**The Lord will bless the Lamanites in the latter-days by numbering them among His sheep …after they are scattered and afflicted (Hel 15:11-16)**

[And Helaman spake unto the people, saying]

“Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

“And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent. For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief. Therefore, saith the Lord:

‘I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me.”

**The Lamanites will be taught the gospel by the Gentiles in the latter-days (Morm 5:15-21)**

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry. For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind. They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they. And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land. But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel. And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

**Mormons record to come forth to the Nephites and Lamanites in the latter-days (Words of Mormon 1:1-2, 6-8)**

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them. But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will. And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

**The Nephites and Lamanites will receive the Book of Mormon through the Gentiles in the latter-days (Ether 12:22)**

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

**The knowledge of the visit of Christ to the Lamanites will come to their descendants in the latter-days (D&C 3:16-20)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Nevertheless, my work shall go forth, for inasmuch as the knowledge of a Savior has come unto the world, through the testimony of the Jews, even so shall the knowledge of a Savior come unto my people—

And to the Nephites, and the Jacobites, and the Josephites, and the Zoramites, through the testimony of their fathers— And this testimony shall come to the knowledge of the Lamanites, and the Lemuelites, and the Ishmaelites, who dwindled in unbelief because of the iniquity of their fathers, whom the Lord has suffered to destroy their brethren the Nephites, because of their iniquities and their abominations.

“And for this very purpose are these plates preserved, which contain these records—that the promises of the Lord might be fulfilled, which he made to his people; And that the Lamanites might come to the knowledge of their fathers, and that they might know the promises of the Lord, and that they may believe the gospel and rely upon the merits of Jesus Christ, and be glorified through faith in his name, and that through their repentance they might be saved. Amen.”

**The Book of Mormon to go to the Lamanites in the latter-days (D&C 10:45-48)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Behold, there are many things engraven upon the plates of Nephi which do throw greater views upon my gospel; therefore, it is wisdom in me that you should translate this first part of the engravings of Nephi, and send forth in this work. And, behold, all the remainder of this work does contain all those parts of my gospel which my holy prophets, yea, and also my disciples, desired in their prayers should come forth unto this people. And I said unto them, that it should be granted unto them according to their faith in their prayers; Yea, and this was their faith—that my gospel, which I gave unto them that they might preach in their days, might come unto their brethren the Lamanites, and also all that had become Lamanites because of their dissensions.”

**In the latter-days the Lord will reveal the marvelous works of the Nephites and Lamanites, who are a branch of Israel**

**(D&C 10:61-63)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And I will bring to light their marvelous works, which they did in my name; Yea, and I will also bring to light my gospel which was ministered unto them, and, behold, they shall not deny that which you have received, but they shall build it up, and shall bring to light the true points of my doctrine, yea, and the only doctrine which is in me. And this I do that I may establish my gospel, that there may not be so much contention; yea, Satan doth stir up the hearts of the people to contention concerning the points of my doctrine; and in these things they do err, for they do wrest the scriptures and do not understand them.”

**In the latter-days, the Lamanites to receive the gospel from the Gentiles (D&C 28:8; D&C 32:2)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And now, behold, I say unto you that you shall go unto the Lamanites and preach my gospel unto them; and inasmuch as they receive thy teachings thou shalt cause my church to be established among them; and thou shalt have revelations, but write them not by way of commandment. And that which I have appointed unto him is that he shall go with my servants, Oliver Cowdery and Peter Whitmer, Jun., into the wilderness among the Lamanites.”

**Before the Second Coming, the House of Israel will flourish and the Lamanites will blossom as the rose (D&C 49:24)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“But before the great day of the Lord shall come, Jacob shall flourish in the wilderness, and the Lamanites shall blossom as the rose.”

***9.4***

***THE GOSPEL TO GO TO THE GENTILES FIRST AND THEN TO THE JEWS***

**The Gentiles will join with the House of Israel (Isaiah 60:1-18)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee. For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee. And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising. Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side. Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of the sea shall be converted unto thee, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto thee.

“The multitude of camels shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall shew forth the praises of the Lord. All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory. Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows? Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the Lord thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.

“And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee: for in my wrath I smote thee, but in my favour have I had mercy on thee. Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that men may bring unto thee the forces of the Gentiles, and that their kings may be brought. For the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted. The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious. The sons also of them that afflicted thee shall come bending unto thee; and all they that despised thee shall bow themselves down at the soles of thy feet; and they shall call thee, The city of the Lord, The Zion of the Holy One of Israel.

“Whereas thou hast been forsaken and hated, so that no man went through thee, I will make thee an eternal excellency, a joy of many generations. Thou shalt also suck the milk of the Gentiles, and shalt suck the breast of kings: and thou shalt know that I the Lord am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob. For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness. Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls ‘Salvation’, and thy gates ‘Praise.”

**The Time Will Come that Jesus Christ Will Manifest Himself to Both the Jews and the Gentiles (1 Ne 13:40)**

And the angel spake unto me, saying:

“These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.”

**Covenants are extended to both the Jews and the Gentiles in the latter-days (2 Ne 6:12)**

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

**Lehi’s descendants to be afflicted by the Gentiles (2 Ne 10:18)**

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God:

“I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.”

**Gentiles that repent will be numbered with the House of Israel and Jews that don’t repent will not be numbered among Israel (2 Ne 30:2)**

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

**When the Gentiles are ripe in iniquity in the latter-days, the gospel will be taken from them and taken to the Jews**

**(3 Ne 16:8-11)**

[And Jesus spake unto the multitude, saying,]

“But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them; And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

“And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them. And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.”

**The Gentiles are grafted into the House of Israel (Rom 11:13-24)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the Gentiles, I magnify mine office: If by any means I may provoke to emulation them which are my flesh, and might save some of them. For if the casting away of them be the reconciling of the world, what shall the receiving of them be, but life from the dead? For if the firstfruit be holy, the lump is also holy: and if the root be holy, so are the branches.

And if some of the branches be broken off, and thou, being a wild olive tree, wert grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree; Boast not against the branches. But if thou boast, thou bearest not the root, but the root thee.

“Thou wilt say then, The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in. Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and thou standest by faith. Be not highminded, but fear: For if God spared not the natural branches, take heed lest he also spare not thee. Behold therefore the goodness and severity of God: on them which fell, severity; but toward thee, goodness, if thou continue in his goodness: otherwise thou also shalt be cut off. And they also, if they abide not still in unbelief, shall be grafted in: for God is able to graft them in again. For if thou wert cut out of the olive tree which is wild by nature, and wert grafted contrary to nature into a good olive tree: how much more shall these, which be the natural branches, be grafted into their own olive tree?”

**The Gentiles to receive the gospel before the Jews, until the day of the Gentiles is fulfilled (Rom 11:25)**

“For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.”

**In the latter-days, the fulness of the gospel will be taken from the Gentiles to the House of Israel**

**(D&C 14:10; D&C 19:26-27; D&C 20:8-9; D&C 90:9; D&C 107:34-35, 97; D&C 112:4; D&C 133:7-8)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Wherefore, I must bring forth the fulness of my gospel from the Gentiles unto the house of Israel.

“And again, I command thee that thou shalt not covet thine own property, but impart it freely to the printing of the Book of Mormon, which contains the truth and the word of God— Which is my word to the Gentile, that soon it may go to the Jew, of whom the Lamanites are a remnant, that they may believe the gospel, and look not for a Messiah to come who has already come.

“And gave him power from on high, by the means which were before prepared, to translate the Book of Mormon; Which contains a record of a fallen people, and the fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles and to the Jews also;

“That through your administration they may receive the word, and through their administration the word may go forth unto the ends of the earth, unto the Gentiles first, and then, behold, and lo, they shall turn unto the Jews.

“The Seventy are to act in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the Twelve or the traveling high council, in building up the church and regulating all the affairs of the same in all nations, first unto the Gentiles and then to the Jews—The Twelve being sent out, holding the keys, to open the door by the proclamation of the gospel of Jesus Christ, and first unto the Gentiles and then unto the Jews.

“Yea, verily I say unto you again, the time has come when the voice of the Lord is unto you: Go ye out of Babylon; gather ye out from among the nations, from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Send forth the elders of my church unto the nations which are afar off; unto the islands of the sea; send forth unto foreign lands; call upon all nations, first upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews.”

**In the latter-days, the gospel will be taken to both Jew and Gentile**

**(D&C 18:26)**

“And now, behold, there are others who are called to declare my gospel, both unto Gentile and unto Jew;”

**The Gentiles will receive the Gospel during the Millennium (Isaiah 66:19-24)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles. And they shall bring all your brethren for an offering unto the Lord out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the Lord, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the Lord.

“And I will also take of them for priests and for Levites. For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the Lord, so shall your seed and your name remain. And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me… And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcases of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh.”

***9.5***

***PROMISES MADE TO THE GENTILES IN THE LATTER-DAYS***

**The Gentiles to be Visited with the Mercies of God, Promised to the House of Israel (1 Ne 13:33)**

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God:

“I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.”

**Gentiles that Embrace the Gospel of Jesus Christ will Be Numbered Among the House of Israel (1 Ne 14:1-2)**

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

**The Gentiles Will Receive the Gospel in the Latter-days (1 Ne 21:22)**

Thus saith the Lord God:

“Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.”

**The Gentiles Will Preach the Gospel to the Jews (1 Ne 22:6)**

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

**In the latter days, the Gentiles and descendants of Lehi will have the Bible (2 Ne 29:13)**

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

**If the Gentiles repent, they will be numbered among the House of Israel and spared destruction (3 Ne 16:13-14)**

[And Jesus quoted the Father, saying]

“But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel. And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.”

**Gentiles that reject the gospel in the latter-days will be destroyed by the House of Israel (3 Ne 16:15)**

“But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.”

**If the Gentiles don’t repent, the remnants of the House of Israel will destroy them (3 Ne 20:16-17, 19-20)**

“Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

“Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off. For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it. And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.”

**The Gentiles will scatter Israel in the latter-days (3 Ne 20:27)**

“And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying:

‘In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.”

**After the Gentiles scatter Israel, they will have the option of accepting or rejecting the Gospel (3 Ne 20:28)**

“And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.”

**The Gentiles will be a free people in America, but bc of wickedness, will be destroyed (3 Ne 21:11-21)**

[And Jesus spake unto the multitude, saying]

“Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant. And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

“Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off. Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots; And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds; And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

“Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands; And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities. And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away. For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel; And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.”

**The full conversation between the Brother of Jared and Christ will be revealed once the Gentiles begin to repent and exercise faith in Jesus Christ (Ether 4:1-7, 13)**

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people. And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest. And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared. Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord. For the Lord said unto me:

“They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord. And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are. Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.”

**Those who receive the Lord to become the sons of God (D&C 11:30)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“But verily, verily, I say unto you, that as many as receive me, to them will I give power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on my name. Amen.”

**The Times of the Gentiles will be fulfilled after the Gospel is restored among them (D&C 45:28-30)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And when the times of the Gentiles is come in, a light shall break forth among them that sit in darkness, and it shall be the fulness of my gospel; But they receive it not; for they perceive not the light, and they turn their hearts from me because of the precepts of men. And in that generation shall the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.”

**During the latter-days is the last time the gospel will be offered to the Gentiles, to protect them from the judgments coming**

**(D&C 88:84-85)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Therefore, tarry ye, and labor diligently, that you may be perfected in your ministry to go forth among the Gentiles for the last time, as many as the mouth of the Lord shall name, to bind up the law and seal up the testimony, and to prepare the saints for the hour of judgment which is to come; That their souls may escape the wrath of God, the desolation of abomination which awaits the wicked, both in this world and in the world to come. Verily, I say unto you, let those who are not the first elders continue in the vineyard until the mouth of the Lord shall call them, for their time is not yet come; their garments are not clean from the blood of this generation.”

***9.6***

***PROMISES MADE TO THE JEWS IN THE LATTER-DAYS***

**Return of the Jews after Being Scattered and Taken Into Captivity (1 Ne 10:3)**

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

**The Gospel to be taken to the Jews after they Kill the Savior and Dwindle in Unbelief (1 Ne 10:11)**

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

**The Restoration of the Jews Would Take Place in the Latter-days (1 Ne 15:19-20)**

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days. And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

**When the Jews begin to accept Christ (in the latter-days), God Will Remember the Isles of the Sea & Gather Israel from the 4 Quarters of the Earth (1 Ne 19:15-16)**

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers. Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

**Promises to the Jews when they will be restored: Kings shall by thy nursing fathers, and their queens, thy nursing mothers**

**(1 Ne 21:22-23; 2 Ne 6:6-7; 2 Ne 10:8-9)**

Thus saith the Lord God:

“Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me. And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

“And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me. And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?”

**In the Latter-days, the Jews Would Be Gathered (restored) to Their Lands of Inheritance (1 Ne 22:12)**

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

**Jacob, in Vision, Saw the Return of the Jews to Jerusalem (2 Ne 6:9)**

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

**In the latter-days, the Jews will be restored again, and Christ will personally reveal Himself to them (2 Ne 6:14)**

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

**Cursings promised upon all who reject Jesus Christ when He shall manifest Himself to the Jews (2 Ne 6:15)**

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

**The Jews will eventually be restored to the True Church and Fold of God in the latter-days (they will accept the fullness of the gospel, including Temple Covenants) (2 Ne 9:1-2)**

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel— That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

**Once the Jews begin to accept Jesus as the Messiah, then they’ll be restored to their lands of inheritance, in the latter-days**

**(2 Ne 10:7)**

But behold, thus saith the Lord God:

“When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.”

**The Jews will be restored in the latter-days (2 Ne 15:25-30)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them. None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken; Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses’ hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion. They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver. And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.”

**Once the wicked are destroyed, the Jews will be gathered once more and believe in the Savior, Jesus Christ (2 Ne 20:20-22)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth. The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God. For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.”

**The Jews to be restored to the lands of their inheritance in the latter-days (2 Ne 25:11)**

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

**Once the Jews start to believe that Jesus is the Messiah, they will begin to be gathered to their lands of inheritance (Jerusalem) (2 Ne 25:17)**

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

**After being gathered in Jerusalem once more, the Jews will have the gospel preached to them (2 Ne 25:18)**

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

**In the latter-days, the Jews will be gathered home to the lands of their possessions, as God covenanted with Abraham**

**(2 Ne 29:14)**

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

**In the latter-days, the Jews, as they begin to believe in Christ, will begin to be gathered to their lands of inheritance, and will become a delightsome people (2 Ne 30:7)**

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

**After the Jews have been restored to their lands the second time (following 1948), the end soon cometh (Jacob 6:2)**

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

**When things that have not yet been revealed begin to be revealed, and the Jews begin to call upon God in the name of Christ, the covenants between them and God will see fulfillment (Ether 4:15)**

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

**After the gospel is revealed to the Jews, then the arm of the Lord will be revealed to all nations and the House of Joseph**

**(D&C 90:10)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And then cometh the day when the arm of the Lord shall be revealed in power in convincing the nations, the heathen nations, the house of Joseph, of the gospel of their salvation.”

**Commanded to take the gospel to the Jews (D&C 98:17)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And again, the hearts of the Jews unto the prophets, and the prophets unto the Jews; lest I come and smite the whole earth with a curse, and all flesh be consumed before me.”

***9.7***

***COVENANT ISRAEL MUST BE TRIED IN ALL THINGS***

**God covenants with his people that all their afflictions will be for their good (D&C 58:2-4; D&C 98:1-3)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“For verily I say unto you, blessed is he that keepeth my commandments, whether in life or in death; and he that is faithful in tribulation, the reward of the same is greater in the kingdom of heaven. Ye cannot behold with your natural eyes, for the present time, the design of your God concerning those things which shall come hereafter, and the glory which shall follow after much tribulation. For after much tribulation come the blessings. Wherefore the day cometh that ye shall be crowned with much glory; the hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand.

“Verily I say unto you my friends, fear not, let your hearts be comforted; yea, rejoice evermore, and in everything give thanks; Waiting patiently on the Lord, for your prayers have entered into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, and are recorded with this seal and testament—the Lord hath sworn and decreed that they shall be granted. Therefore, he giveth this promise unto you, with an immutable covenant that they shall be fulfilled; and all things wherewith you have been afflicted shall work together for your good, and to my name’s glory, saith the Lord.”

**God will prove us in all things to see if we will keep our covenants (D&C 98:14-15)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Therefore, be not afraid of your enemies, for I have decreed in my heart, saith the Lord, that I will prove you in all things, whether you will abide in my covenant, even unto death, that you may be found worthy. For if ye will not abide in my covenant ye are not worthy of me.”

**Allow who follow God must be tried, even as Abraham was tried (D&C 101:1-5)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Verily I say unto you, concerning your brethren who have been afflicted, and persecuted, and cast out from the land of their inheritance— I, the Lord, have suffered the affliction to come upon them, wherewith they have been afflicted, in consequence of their transgressions; Yet I will own them, and they shall be mine in that day when I shall come to make up my jewels. Therefore, they must needs be chastened and tried, even as Abraham, who was commanded to offer up his only son. For all those who will not endure chastening, but deny me, cannot be sanctified.”

**Those who call themselves after the name of the Lord must be chastened for a season (D&C 103:4)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And that those who call themselves after my name might be chastened for a little season with a sore and grievous chastisement, because they did not hearken altogether unto the precepts and commandments which I gave unto them.”

**Necessary for the saints to be chastened (D&C 105:6)**

And my people must needs be chastened until they learn obedience, if it must needs be, by the things which they suffer.

**To go where Abraham is…in heaven…one must sacrifice and covenant as Abraham did (D&C 132:49-51)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“For I am the Lord thy God, and will be with thee even unto the end of the world, and through all eternity; for verily I seal upon you your exaltation, and prepare a throne for you in the kingdom of my Father, with Abraham your father. Behold, I have seen your sacrifices, and will forgive all your sins; I have seen your sacrifices in obedience to that which I have told you. Go, therefore, and I make a way for your escape, as I accepted the offering of Abraham of his son Isaac. Verily, I say unto you: A commandment I give unto mine handmaid, Emma Smith, your wife, whom I have given unto you, that she stay herself and partake not of that which I commanded you to offer unto her; for I did it…to prove you all, as I did Abraham, and that I might require an offering at your hand, by covenant and sacrifice.”

**God will test, try, and chastise his people to make them worthy of living in Zion (D&C 136:31-32, 37)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“My people must be tried in all things, that they may be prepared to receive the glory that I have for them, even the glory of Zion; and he that will not bear chastisement is not worthy of my kingdom. Let him that is ignorant learn wisdom by humbling himself and calling upon the Lord his God, that his eyes may be opened that he may see, and his ears opened that he may hear; Therefore, marvel not at these things, for ye are not yet pure; ye can not yet bear my glory; but ye shall behold it if ye are faithful in keeping all my words that I have given you, from the days of Adam to Abraham, from Abraham to Moses, from Moses to Jesus and his apostles, and from Jesus and his apostles to Joseph Smith, whom I did call upon by mine angels, my ministering servants, and by mine own voice out of the heavens, to bring forth my work;”

**After much tribulations come the blessings (D&C 103:12)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“For after much tribulation, as I have said unto you in a former commandment, cometh the blessing.”

**Great blessings follow great tribulation (D&C 58:3-4)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Ye cannot behold with your natural eyes, for the present time, the design of your God concerning those things which shall come hereafter, and the glory which shall follow after much tribulation. For after much tribulation come the blessings. Wherefore the day cometh that ye shall be crowned with much glory; the hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand.”

*WHY THIS STUDY MATTERS:*

*GET READY FOR THE GOOD STUFF*

“As you study your scriptures during the next six months, I encourage you to make a list of all that the Lord has promised He will do for covenant Israel. I think you will be astounded! Ponder these promises. Talk about them with your family and friends. Then…*live and watch for these promises to be fulfilled in your own life*!”

-President Russell M. Nelson, Oct 2020



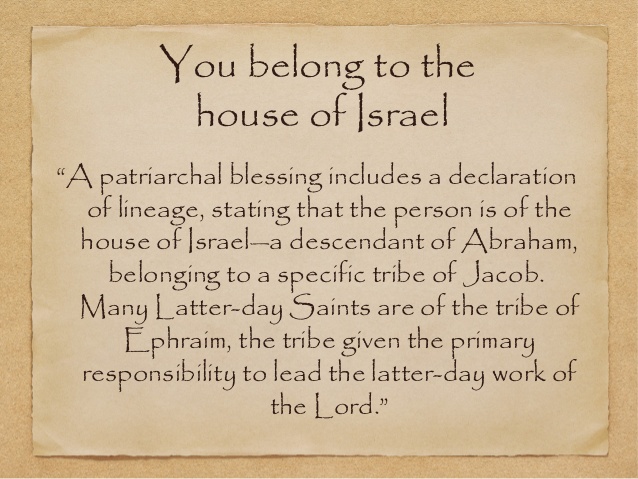


******

***CHAPTER 10:***

***ANCIENT AND LATTER-DAY***

***PROMISES TO ISRAEL***

******

***10.1***

***BLESSINGS GIVEN TO THE TRIBES OF ISRAEL***

**Blessings given to Reuben (Gen 49:3-4; Deut 33:6)**

[And Jacob blessed Reuben, saying]

“Reuben, thou art my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power: Unstable as water, thou shalt not excel; because thou wentest up to thy father’s bed; then defiledst thou it: he went up to my couch.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Let Reuben live, and not die; and let not his men be few.”

**Blessings and cursings pronounced upon Simeon and Lehi (Gen 49:5-7; Deut 33:8-11)**

[And Jacob spake unto Simeon and Levi, saying,]

“Simeon and Levi are brethren; instruments of cruelty are in their habitations. O my soul, come not thou into their secret; unto their assembly, mine honour, be not thou united: for in their anger they slew a man, and in their selfwill they digged down a wall. Cursed be their anger, for it was fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel: I will divide them in Jacob, and scatter them in Israel.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“And of Levi he said, Let thy Thummim and thy Urim be with thy holy one, whom thou didst prove at Massah, and with whom thou didst strive at the waters of Meribah; Who said unto his father and to his mother, I have not seen him; neither did he acknowledge his brethren, nor knew his own children: for they have observed thy word, and kept thy covenant. They shall teach Jacob thy judgments, and Israel thy law: they shall put incense before thee, and whole burnt sacrifice upon thine altar. Bless, Lord, his substance, and accept the work of his hands: smite through the loins of them that rise against him, and of them that hate him, that they rise not again.

**Blessings to Judah, through whom Jesus Christ would be born (Gen 49:8-12; Deut 33:7;1 Chron 5:2)**

[And Jacob blessed, Judah, saying,]

“Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father’s children shall bow down before thee.  Judah is a lion’s whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up? The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be. Binding his foal unto the vine, and his ass’s colt unto the choice vine; he washed his garments in wine, and his clothes in the blood of grapes: His eyes shall be red with wine, and his teeth white with milk.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people: let his hands be sufficient for him; and be thou an help to him from his enemies.”

[And Ezra wrote, saying,]

“For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph’s”

**Blessings given to Zebulon (Gen 49:13; Deut 33:18-19)**

[And Jacob blessed Zebulon, saying,]

“Zebulun shall dwell at the haven of the sea; and he shall be for an haven of ships; and his border shall “be unto Zidon.

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“ Rejoice, Zebulun, in thy going out; and, Issachar, in thy tents. They shall call the people unto the mountain; there they shall offer sacrifices of righteousness: for they shall suck of the abundance of the seas, and of treasures hid in the sand.”

**Blessings given to Issachar (Gen 49:14-15)**

[And Jacob blessed Issachar ,saying,]

“Issachar is a strong ass couching down between two burdens: And he saw that rest was good, and the land that it was pleasant; and bowed his shoulder to bear, and became a servant unto tribute.

**Jacob blesses Dan (Gen 49:16-18)**

[And Jacob blessed Dan, saying,]

“Dan shall judge his people, as one of the tribes of Israel. Dan shall be a serpent by the way, an adder in the path, that biteth the horse heels, so that his rider shall fall backward. I have waited for thy salvation, O Lord.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Dan is a lion’s whelp: he shall leap from Bashan.”

**Blessings pronounced upon Gad (Gen 49:19; Deut 33:20-21)**

[And Jacob blessed Gad, saying,]

“Gad, a troop shall overcome him: but he shall overcome at the last.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Blessed be he that enlargeth Gad: he dwelleth as a lion, and teareth the arm with the crown of the head.

And he provided the first part for himself, because there, in a portion of the lawgiver, was he seated; and he came with the heads of the people, he executed the justice of the Lord, and his judgments with Israel.”

**Blessings pronounced upon Asher (Gen 49:20; Deut 33:24-25)**

[And Jacob blessed Asher, saying,]

“Out of Asher his bread shall be fat, and he shall yield royal dainties.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Let Asher be blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil. Thy shoes shall be iron and brass; and as thy days, so shall thy strength be.”

**Blessings pronounced upon Naphtali (Gen 49:21)**

[And Jacob blessed Naphtali, saying,]

“Naphtali is a hind let loose: he giveth goodly words.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“O Naphtali, satisfied with favour, and full with the blessing of the Lord: possess thou the west and the south.”

**Blessings pronounced upon Benjamin (Gen 49:27; Deut 33:12)**

[And Jacob blessed Benjamin, saying,]

“Benjamin shall ravin as a wolf: in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night he shall divide the spoil.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“The beloved of the Lord shall dwell in safety by him; and the Lord shall cover him all the day long, and he shall dwell between his shoulders.

**Blessings pronounced upon Joseph (Gen 49:22-26; Deut 33:13-17)**

[And Jacob blessed Joseph, saying,]

“Joseph is a fruitful bough, even a fruitful bough by a well; whose branches run over the wall: The archers have sorely grieved him, and shot at him, and hated him: But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob; (from thence is the shepherd, the stone of Israel:) Even by the God of thy father, who shall help thee; and by the Almighty, who shall bless thee with blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that lieth under, blessings of the breasts, and of the womb: The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills: they shall be on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him that was separate from his brethren.”

[And Moses prophesied, saying]

“Blessed of the Lord be his land, for the precious things of heaven, for the dew, and for the deep that coucheth beneath, And for the precious fruits brought forth by the sun, and for the precious things put forth by the moon, And for the chief things of the ancient mountains, and for the precious things of the lasting hills, And for the precious things of the earth and fulness thereof, and for the good will of him that dwelt in the bush: let the blessing come upon the head of Joseph, and upon the top of the head of him that was separated from his brethren. His glory is like the firstling of his bullock, and his horns are like the horns of unicorns: with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth: and they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh.”

**Jacob tells Joseph of the blessings the Lord promised him (Gen 48:3-4)**

And Jacob said unto Joseph,

“God Almighty appeared unto me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and blessed me, And said unto me,

‘Behold, I will make thee fruitful, and multiply thee, and I will make of thee a multitude of people; and will give this land to thy seed after thee for an everlasting possession.”

**Jacob adopts Ephraim and Manasseh as his own children (Gen 48:5)**

[And Jacob blessed the sons of Joseph, saying,]

“And now thy two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, which were born unto thee in the land of Egypt before I came unto thee into Egypt, are mine; as Reuben and Simeon, they shall be mine.”

**Jacob blesses Ephraim above Manasseh (Gen 48:8-20)**

And Israel beheld Joseph’s sons, and said,

“Who are these?”

And Joseph said unto his father,

“They are my sons, whom God hath given me in this place.”

And [Israel] said,

“Bring them, I pray thee, unto me, and I will bless them.”

Now the eyes of Israel were dim for age, so that he could not see. And he brought them near unto him; and he kissed them, and embraced them. And Israel said unto Joseph,

“I had not thought to see thy face: and, lo, God hath shewed me also thy seed.”

And Joseph brought them out from between his knees, and he bowed himself with his face to the earth. And Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel’s left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel’s right hand, and brought them near unto him. And Israel stretched out his right hand, and laid it upon Ephraim’s head, who was the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh’s head, guiding his hands wittingly; for Manasseh was the firstborn. And he blessed Joseph, and said,

“God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long unto this day, The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.”

And when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him: and he held up his father’s hand, to remove it from Ephraim’s head unto Manasseh’s head. And Joseph said unto his father,

“Not so, my father: for this is the firstborn; put thy right hand upon his head.”

And his father refused, and said,

“I know it, my son, I know it: he also shall become a people, and he also shall be great: but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his seed shall become a multitude of nations.”

And he blessed them that day, saying,

“In thee shall Israel bless, saying, God make thee as Ephraim and as Manasseh: and he set Ephraim before Manasseh.”

**Ephraim’s birthright over Manasseh re-iterated (Jer 31:18-21)**

[And the Lord said,]

“I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus;

‘Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the Lord my God. Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth.’

“Is Ephraim my dear son? Is he a pleasant child? For since I spake against him, I do earnestly remember him still: therefore my bowels are troubled for him; I will surely have mercy upon him…

Set thee up waymarks, make thee high heaps: set thine heart toward the highway, even the way which thou wentest: turn again, O virgin of Israel, turn again to these thy cities.”

**Joseph was blessed with a greater portion than his brothers inheritance (Gen 48:21-22)**

And Israel said unto Joseph,

“Behold, I die: but God shall be with you, and bring you again unto the land of your fathers. Moreover I have given to thee one portion above thy brethren, which I took out of the hand of the Amorite with my sword and with my bow.”

**Joseph, and by default, his son’s, given Reuben’s birthright (1 Chron 5:1-2)**

Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel, (for he was the firstborn; but, forasmuch as he defiled his father’s bed, his birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph the son of Israel: and the genealogy is not to be reckoned after the birthright. For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph’s:)

**God Promised to Preserve the Seed of Joseph of Egypt (Ephraim and Manasseh) forever (2 Ne 3:16)**

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph:

“I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.”

**God Promised Joseph of Egypt that Moses, Israel’s Deliverer, Would Come From His Seed (2 Ne 3:10, 17-18)**

[And Lehi spake, saying,

“thus saith Joseph, who was taken captive into Egypt,]

‘And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt. And the Lord hath said:

‘I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.’

‘And the Lord said unto me also:

‘I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.”

**Joseph of Egypt promised that his seed would never perish (2 Ne 25:21)**

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

**Moses praises the blessings bestowed to Israel by the God of Jacob (Deut 33:26-29)**

[And Moses spake, saying,]

“There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun (Jacob), who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and

he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say,

‘Destroy them.’

“Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew. Happy art thou, O Israel: who is like unto thee, O people saved by the Lord, the shield of thy help, and who is the sword of thy Excellency! and thine enemies shall be found liars unto thee; and thou shalt tread upon their high places.”

******

*The lost “Ten Tribes” were: Reuben, Simeon, Issachar, Zebulun, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Benjamin, and then Ephraim and Manasseh counting as 1 tribe, falling under their father’s inheritance, Joseph. That leaves 2 more tribes, but only 1 is referenced. Judah is the remaining kingdom, as Levi was never given physical lands of inheritance, but tasked with serving the Lord all of their days.*

***10.2:***

***ANCIENT PROMISES GIVEN TO THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL***

***OLD TESTAMENT***

**Peace and blessings promised to those who worship God (Lev 26:3-13)**

[And the Lord said unto them,]

“If ye walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, and do them; Then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land.

“And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword. For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish my covenant with you.

“And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new. And I will set my tabernacle among you: and my soul shall not abhor you. And I will walk among you, and will be your God, and ye shall be my people. I am the Lord your God, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bands of your yoke, and made you go upright.”

**God promises to do marvels never before seen (Exodus 34:5-7, 10-11)**

And the Lord descended in the cloud, and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the Lord. And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed,

“The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin…

“Behold, I make a covenant: before all thy people I will do marvels, such as have not been done in all the earth, nor in any nation: and all the people among which thou art shall see the work of the Lord: for it is a terrible thing that I will do with thee. Observe thou that which I command thee this day: behold, I drive out before thee the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.”

**Aaron’s blessing to the Israelites, as revealed by the Lord (Num 6:22-27)**

And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying,

“Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons, saying, On this wise ye shall bless the children of Israel, saying unto them, The Lord bless thee, and keep thee: The Lord make his face shine upon thee, and be gracious unto thee: The Lord lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace. And they shall put my name upon the children of Israel; and I will bless them.”

**Balaam, offered money to curse Israel, does the exact opposite (Num 23:7-12; Num 24:10)**

And he took up his parable, and said, Balak the king of Moab hath brought me from Aram, out of the mountains of the east, saying,

“Come, curse me Jacob, and come, defy Israel.”

[But] how shall I curse, whom God hath not cursed? Or how shall I defy, whom the Lord hath not defied? For from the top of the rocks I see him, and from the hills I behold him: lo, the people shall dwell alone, and shall not be reckoned among the nations. Who can count the dust of Jacob, and the number of the fourth part of Israel? Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his! And Balak said unto Balaam,

“What hast thou done unto me? I took thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast blessed them altogether.”

And [Balaam] answered and said,

“Must I not take heed to speak that which the Lord hath put in my mouth?”

And Balak’s anger was kindled against Balaam, and he smote his hands together: and said unto Balaam,

“I called thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast altogether blessed them these three times.”

**Inheritances shall stay in each family’s tribe (Num 36:7)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“So shall not the inheritance of the children of Israel remove from tribe to tribe: for every one of the children of Israel shall keep himself to the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers.”

**The Lord promises to multiply Israel 1000 times (Deut 1:10-11)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“The Lord your God hath multiplied you, and, behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude. The Lord God of your fathers make you a thousand times so many more as ye are, and bless you, as he hath promised you!”

**What the Lord promises to do for Israel (Deut 7:6-26)**

[And Moses spake unto the people, saying]

“For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. The Lord did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the Lord loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.

“Know therefore that the Lord thy God, he is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations; And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face.

Thou shalt therefore keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which I command thee this day, to do them. Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which he sware unto thy fathers:

“And he will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee: he will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which he sware unto thy fathers to give thee. Thou shalt be blessed above all people: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle. And the Lord will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.

“And thou shalt consume all the people which the Lord thy God shall deliver thee; thine eye shall have no pity upon them: neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee. If thou shalt say in thine heart,

‘These nations are more than I; how can I dispossess them?’

“Thou shalt not be afraid of them: but shalt well remember what the Lord thy God did unto Pharaoh, and unto all Egypt; The great temptations which thine eyes saw, and the signs, and the wonders, and the mighty hand, and the stretched out arm, whereby the Lord thy God brought thee out: so shall the Lord thy God do unto all the people of whom thou art afraid. Moreover the Lord thy God will send the hornet among them, until they that are left, and hide themselves from thee, be destroyed.

“Thou shalt not be affrighted at them: for the Lord thy God is among you, a mighty God and terrible.

And the Lord thy God will put out those nations before thee by little and little: thou mayest not consume them at once, lest the beasts of the field increase upon thee. But the Lord thy God shall deliver them unto thee, and shall destroy them with a mighty destruction, until they be destroyed. And he shall deliver their kings into thine hand, and thou shalt destroy their name from under heaven: there shall no man be able to stand before thee, until thou have destroyed them.

“The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire: thou shalt not desire the silver or gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein: for it is an abomination to the Lord thy God.

Neither shalt thou bring an abomination into thine house, lest thou be a cursed thing like it: but thou shalt utterly detest it, and thou shalt utterly abhor it; for it is a cursed thing.”

**The Lord promises to bless Israel with wealth (Deut 8:18)**

[And Moses spake, saying]

“But thou shalt remember the Lord thy God: for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day.”

**Israel promised great abundance and strength if they are obedient (Deut 11:8-15, 18-25)**

[And Moses spake, saying]

“Therefore shall ye keep all the commandments which I command you this day, that ye may be strong, and go in and possess the land, whither ye go to possess it; And that ye may prolong your days in the land, which the Lord sware unto your fathers to give unto them and to their seed, a land that floweth with milk and honey. For the land, whither thou goest in to possess it, is not as the land of Egypt, from whence ye came out, where thou sowedst thy seed, and wateredst it with thy foot, as a garden of herbs:

But the land, whither ye go to possess it, is a land of hills and valleys, and drinketh water of the rain of heaven:

“A land which the Lord thy God careth for: the eyes of the Lord thy God are always upon it, from the beginning of the year even unto the end of the year. And it shall come to pass, if ye shall hearken diligently unto my commandments which I command you this day, to love the Lord your God, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul, That I will give you the rain of your land in his due season, the first rain and the latter rain, that thou mayest gather in thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil. And I will send grass in thy fields for thy cattle, that thou mayest eat and be full.

“Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes. And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. And thou shalt write them upon the door posts of thine house, and upon thy gates: That your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which the Lord sware unto your fathers to give them, as the days of heaven upon the earth.

“For if ye shall diligently keep all these commandments which I command you, to do them, to love the Lord your God, to walk in all his ways, and to cleave unto him; Then will the Lord drive out all these nations from before you, and ye shall possess greater nations and mightier than yourselves. Every place whereon the soles of your feet shall tread shall be yours: from the wilderness and Lebanon, from the river, the river Euphrates, even unto the uttermost sea shall your coast be. There shall no man be able to stand before you: for the Lord your God shall lay the fear of you and the dread of you upon all the land that ye shall tread upon, as he hath said unto you.”

**Blessings of triple increase promised to Israel (Deut 19:8-9)**

[And Moses spake saying,]

“And if the Lord thy God enlarge thy coast, as he hath sworn unto thy fathers, and give thee all the land which he promised to give unto thy fathers; If thou shalt keep all these commandments to do them, which I command thee this day, to love the Lord thy God, and to walk ever in his ways; then shalt thou add three cities more for thee, beside these three.”

**The Lord promises to make Israel high above all nations (Deut 26:16-19)**

[And Moses spake saying,]

“This day the Lord thy God hath commanded thee to do these statutes and judgments: thou shalt therefore keep and do them with all thine heart, and with all thy soul. Thou hast avouched the Lord this day to be thy God, and to walk in his ways, and to keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and to hearken unto his voice: And the Lord hath avouched thee this day to be his peculiar people, as he hath promised thee, and that thou shouldest keep all his commandments; And to make thee high above all nations which he hath made, in praise, and in name, and in honour; and that thou mayest be an holy people unto the Lord thy God, as he hath spoken.”

**Temporal and spiritual blessings promised to Israel if they are obedient (Deut 28:1-13)**

[And Moses spake saying,]

“And it shall come to pass, if thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to observe and to do all his commandments which I command thee this day, that the Lord thy God will set thee on high above all nations of the earth: And all these blessings shall come on thee, and overtake thee, if thou shalt hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God.

“Blessed shalt thou be in the city, and blessed shalt thou be in the field. Blessed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy cattle, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep. Blessed shall be thy basket and thy store. Blessed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and blessed shalt thou be when thou goest out.

“The Lord shall cause thine enemies that rise up against thee to be smitten before thy face: they shall come out against thee one way, and flee before thee seven ways. The Lord shall command the blessing upon thee in thy storehouses, and in all that thou settest thine hand unto; and he shall bless thee in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee. The Lord shall establish thee an holy people unto himself, as he hath sworn unto thee, if thou shalt keep the commandments of the Lord thy God, and walk in his ways.

And all people of the earth shall see that thou art called by the name of the Lord; and they shall be afraid of thee.

“And the Lord shall make thee plenteous in goods, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy ground, in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers to give thee. The Lord shall open unto thee his good treasure, the heaven to give the rain unto thy land in his season, and to bless all the work of thine hand: and thou shalt lend unto many nations, and thou shalt not borrow. And the Lord shall make thee the head, and not the tail; and thou shalt be above only, and thou shalt not be beneath; if that thou hearken unto the commandments of the Lord thy God, which I command thee this day, to observe and to do them.”

**Blessings promised to Israel in the latter days once they begin to be gathered (Deut 30:4-16)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“If any of thine be driven out unto the outmost parts of heaven, from thence will the Lord thy God gather thee, and from thence will he fetch thee. And the Lord thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it; and he will do thee good, and multiply thee above thy fathers.

And the Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live. And the Lord thy God will put all these curses upon thine enemies, and on them that hate thee, which persecuted thee. And thou shalt return and obey the voice of the Lord, and do all his commandments which I command thee this day.

“And the Lord thy God will make thee plenteous in every work of thine hand, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy land, for good: for the Lord will again rejoice over thee for good, as he rejoiced over thy fathers: If thou shalt hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to keep his commandments and his statutes which are written in this book of the law, and if thou turn unto the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul. For this commandment which I command thee this day, it is not hidden from thee, neither is it far off. It is not in heaven, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it?

“Neither is it beyond the sea, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go over the sea for us, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it? But the word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that thou mayest do it. See, I have set before thee this day life and good, and death and evil; In that I command thee this day to love the Lord thy God, to walk in his ways, and to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments, that thou mayest live and multiply: and the Lord thy God shall bless thee in the land whither thou goest to possess it.”

**Moses pronounces blessings upon Israel (Deut 33:26-29)**

[And Moses spake saying,]

“There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them. Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew. Happy art thou, O Israel: who is like unto thee, O people saved by the Lord, the shield of thy help, and who is the sword of thy excellency! and thine enemies shall be found liars unto thee; and thou shalt tread upon their high places.”

**David praises the power and blessings of the Lord (2 Sam 22:1-50)**

And David spake unto the Lord the words of this song in the day that the Lord had delivered him out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul: And he said,

“The Lord is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; The God of my rock; in him will I trust: he is my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my high tower, and my refuge, my saviour; thou savest me from violence. I will call on the Lord, who is worthy to be praised: so shall I be saved from mine enemies. When the waves of death compassed me, the floods of ungodly men made me afraid; The sorrows of hell compassed me about; the snares of death prevented me; In my distress I called upon the Lord, and cried to my God: and he did hear my voice out of his temple, and my cry did enter into his ears.

“Then the earth shook and trembled; the foundations of heaven moved and shook, because he was wroth.

There went up a smoke out of his nostrils, and fire out of his mouth devoured: coals were kindled by it.

He bowed the heavens also, and came down; and darkness was under his feet. And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: and he was seen upon the wings of the wind. And he made darkness pavilions round about him, dark waters, and thick clouds of the skies. Through the brightness before him were coals of fire kindled.

The Lord thundered from heaven, and the most High uttered his voice.

“And he sent out arrows, and scattered them; lightning, and discomfited them. And the channels of the sea appeared, the foundations of the world were discovered, at the rebuking of the Lord, at the blast of the breath of his nostrils. He sent from above, he took me; he drew me out of many waters; He delivered me from my strong enemy, and from them that hated me: for they were too strong for me. They prevented me in the day of my calamity: but the Lord was my stay. He brought me forth also into a large place: he delivered me, because he delighted in me.

“The Lord rewarded me according to my righteousness: according to the cleanness of my hands hath he recompensed me. For I have kept the ways of the Lord, and have not wickedly departed from my God. For all his judgments were before me: and as for his statutes, I did not depart from them. I was also upright before him, and have kept myself from mine iniquity. Therefore the Lord hath recompensed me according to my righteousness; according to my cleanness in his eye sight. With the merciful thou wilt shew thyself merciful, and with the upright man thou wilt shew thyself upright. With the pure thou wilt shew thyself pure; and with the froward thou wilt shew thyself unsavoury. And the afflicted people thou wilt save: but thine eyes are upon the haughty, that thou mayest bring them down.

“For thou art my lamp, O Lord: and the Lord will lighten my darkness. For by thee I have run through a troop: by my God have I leaped over a wall. As for God, his way is perfect; the word of the Lord is tried: he is a buckler to all them that trust in him. For who is God, save the Lord? And who is a rock, save our God?

God is my strength and power: and he maketh my way perfect. He maketh my feet like hinds’ feet: and setteth me upon my high places. He teacheth my hands to war; so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms. Thou hast also given me the shield of thy salvation: and thy gentleness hath made me great.

Thou hast enlarged my steps under me; so that my feet did not slip.

“I have pursued mine enemies, and destroyed them; and turned not again until I had consumed them.

And I have consumed them, and wounded them, that they could not arise: yea, they are fallen under my feet. For thou hast girded me with strength to battle: them that rose up against me hast thou subdued under me. Thou hast also given me the necks of mine enemies, that I might destroy them that hate me.

They looked, but there was none to save; even unto the Lord, but he answered them not. Then did I beat them as small as the dust of the earth, I did stamp them as the mire of the street, and did spread them abroad.

“Thou also hast delivered me from the strivings of my people, thou hast kept me to be head of the heathen: a people which I knew not shall serve me. Strangers shall submit themselves unto me: as soon as they hear, they shall be obedient unto me. Strangers shall fade away, and they shall be afraid out of their close places.

The Lord liveth; and blessed be my rock; and exalted be the God of the rock of my salvation. It is God that avengeth me, and that bringeth down the people under me, And that bringeth me forth from mine enemies: thou also hast lifted me up on high above them that rose up against me: thou hast delivered me from the violent man. Therefore I will give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the heathen, and I will sing praises unto thy name.”

**God fulfilled every promise of rest spoken by Moses (1 Kings 8:55-56)**

And [Solomon] stood, and blessed all the congregation of Israel with a loud voice, saying,

“Blessed be the Lord, that hath given rest unto his people Israel, according to all that he promised: there hath not failed one word of all his good promise, which he promised by the hand of Moses his servant.”

**Nehemiah recalls the promises of God to his people (Neh 1:5)**

And [I] said,

“I beseech thee, O Lord God of heaven, the great and terrible God, that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments.”

**Peace, safety, and security promised to Israel in the latter-days (Hosea 2:14-23)**

[And Hosea spake in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Therefore, behold, I will allure her, and bring her into the wilderness, and speak comfortably unto her.

And I will give her her vineyards from thence, and the valley of Achor for a door of hope: and she shall sing there, as in the days of her youth, and as in the day when she came up out of the land of Egypt.

And it shall be at that day, saith the Lord, that thou shalt call me Ishi; and shalt call me no more Baali.

For I will take away the names of Baalim out of her mouth, and they shall no more be remembered by their name. And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely.

“And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord. And it shall come to pass in that day, I will hear, saith the Lord, I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth; And the earth shall hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil; and they shall hear Jezreel. And I will sow her unto me in the earth; and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I will say to them which were not my people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, Thou art my God.”

**All things taken from Israel will be restored in the latter-days (Joel 2:18-27)**

[And Joel prophesied, saying]

“Then will the Lord be jealous for his land, and pity his people. Yea, the Lord will answer and say unto his people, Behold, I will send you corn, and wine, and oil, and ye shall be satisfied therewith: and I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen: But I will remove far off from you the northern army, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, with his face toward the east sea, and his hinder part toward the utmost sea, and his stink shall come up, and his ill savour shall come up, because he hath done great things. Fear not, O land; be glad and rejoice: for the Lord will do great things. Be not afraid, ye beasts of the field: for the pastures of the wilderness do spring, for the tree beareth her fruit, the fig tree and the vine do yield their strength.

“Be glad then, ye children of Zion, and rejoice in the Lord your God: for he hath given you the former rain moderately, and he will cause to come down for you the rain, the former rain, and the latter rain in the first month. And the floors shall be full of wheat, and the fats shall overflow with wine and oil.

And I will restore to you the years that the locust hath eaten, the cankerworm, and the caterpiller, and the palmerworm, my great army which I sent among you. And ye shall eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the Lord your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you: and my people shall never be ashamed. And ye shall know that I am in the midst of Israel, and that I am the Lord your God, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.”

**The yoke of bondage will be taken from off of Israel (Nahum 1:13-15)**

[And Nahum spake, saying]

“For now will I break his yoke from off thee, and will burst thy bonds in sunder. And the Lord hath given a commandment concerning thee, that no more of thy name be sown: out of the house of thy gods will I cut off the graven image and the molten image: I will make thy grave; for thou art vile. Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off.”

**Israel’s God is incomparably great (Isaiah 40:28-31)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying]

“Hast thou not known? Hast thou not heard, that the everlasting God, the Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary? There is no searching of his understanding.

He giveth power to the faint; and to them that have no might he increaseth strength.

Even the youths shall faint and be weary, and the young men shall utterly fall:

But they that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.”

**Numerous blessings bestowed upon Israel as the power of God is declared (Isaiah 45:5-25)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“I am the Lord, and there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me: That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that there is none beside me. I am the Lord, and there is none else. I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the Lord do all these things. Drop down, ye heavens, from above, and let the skies pour down righteousness: let the earth open, and let them bring forth salvation, and let righteousness spring up together; I the Lord have created it.

“Woe unto him that striveth with his Maker! Let the potsherd strive with the potsherds of the earth. Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou? or thy work, He hath no hands?

Woe unto him that saith unto his father, What begettest thou? or to the woman, What hast thou brought forth? Thus saith the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker, Ask me of things to come concerning my sons, and concerning the work of my hands command ye me. I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their host have I commanded.

I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the Lord of hosts.

“Thus saith the Lord, The labour of Egypt, and merchandise of Ethiopia and of the Sabeans, men of stature, shall come over unto thee, and they shall be thine: they shall come after thee; in chains they shall come over, and they shall fall down unto thee, they shall make supplication unto thee, saying,

‘Surely God is in thee; and there is none else, there is no God. Verily thou art a God that hidest

thyself, O God of Israel, the Saviour.’

“They shall be ashamed, and also confounded, all of them: they shall go to confusion together that are makers of idols. But Israel shall be saved in the Lord with an everlasting salvation: ye shall not be ashamed nor confounded world without end. For thus saith the Lord that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the Lord; and there is none else. I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the earth: I said not unto the seed of Jacob, Seek ye me in vain: I the Lord speak righteousness, I declare things that are right.

“Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, ye that are escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save.

Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? Who hath told it from that time? Have not I the Lord? And there is no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; there is none beside me. Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else.

“I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear. Surely, shall one say,

‘in the Lord have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed. In the Lord shall all the seed of Israel be justified, and shall glory.”

**It is impossible for the Lord to forget His people (Isaiah 49:13-25)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted. But Zion said,

‘The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.’

“Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee. Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me. Thy children shall make haste; thy destroyers and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee. Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, and come to thee. As I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth.

“For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away. The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell. Then shalt thou say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been?

“Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me. Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.”

**The Lord will comfort all the waste places of Zion; The Lord will fight those who fight against us (Isaiah 51:1-23)**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Hearken to me, ye that follow after righteousness, ye that seek the Lord: look unto the rock whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit whence ye are digged. Look unto Abraham your father, and unto Sarah that bare you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and increased him. For the Lord shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.

“My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust. Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished. Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart is my law; fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings. For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

“Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon? Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

Therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away. I, even I, am he that comforteth you: who art thou, that thou shouldest be afraid of a man that shall die, and of the son of man which shall be made as grass;

“And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor? The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail. But I am the Lord thy God, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The Lord of hosts is his name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens, and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion, Thou art my people. Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury; thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, and wrung them out. There is none to guide her among all the sons whom she hath brought forth; neither is there any that taketh her by the hand of all the sons that she hath brought up. These two things are come unto thee; who shall be sorry for thee? Desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee?

“Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God. Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord the Lord, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people,

‘Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again:’

“But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul,

‘Bow down, that we may go over:’

“and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.”

**The Lord speaks on behalf of His people; All nations shall see the salvation of our God Isaiah 52:1-12**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean. Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord,

‘Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money.’

“For thus saith the Lord God,

‘My people went down aforetime into Egypt to sojourn there; and the Assyrian oppressed them without cause.’

“Now therefore, what have I here…that my people is taken away for nought? They that rule over them make them to howl, saith the Lord; and my name continually every day is blasphemed. Therefore my people shall know my name: therefore they shall know in that day that I am he that doth speak:

‘behold, it is I.’

“How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion,

‘Thy God reigneth!’

“Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing: for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion. Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem. The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God. Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch no unclean thing; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean, that bear the vessels of the Lord. For ye shall not go out with haste, nor go by flight: for the Lord will go before you; and the God of Israel will be your rearward.”

**God promises to make jewels out of the stones of Israel’s lives, and peace where darkness resides (Isaiah 54:11-16)**

“O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones. And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children. In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee. Behold, they shall surely gather together, but not by me: whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake. Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.”

**God promises that no weapon formed against Israel shall prosper (Isaiah 54:17)**

“No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.”

**The glory of the Lord shall be upon Israel Isaiah 60:1-2**

[And Isaiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee. For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.”

**Israel promised double rewards for their pains and sorrows (Isaiah 61:7-9)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“For your shame ye shall have double; and for confusion they shall rejoice in their portion: therefore in their land they shall possess the double: everlasting joy shall be unto them. For I the Lord love judgment, I hate robbery for burnt offering; and I will direct their work in truth, and I will make an everlasting covenant with them. And their seed shall be known among the Gentiles, and their offspring among the people: all that see them shall acknowledge them, that they are the seed which the Lord hath blessed.”

**Former troubles will be forgotten for those who swear by the God of truth (Isaiah 65:16)**

“That he who blesseth himself in the earth shall bless himself in the God of truth; and he that sweareth in the earth shall swear by the God of truth; because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from mine eyes.”

**The Lord will recompense the injustices done to Israel by causing her to be fruitful and to increase (Jer 23:1-4)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Woe be unto the pastors that destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture! Therefore thus saith the Lord God of Israel against the pastors that feed my people; Ye have scattered my flock, and driven them away, and have not visited them: behold, I will visit upon you the evil of your doings, saith the Lord. And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase. And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the Lord.”

**God will go before the enemies of Israel with a whirlwind of fury (Jer 30:15-24)**

“Why criest thou for thine affliction? thy sorrow is incurable for the multitude of thine iniquity: because because thy sins were increased, I have done these things unto thee. Therefore all they that devour thee shall be devoured; and all thine adversaries, every one of them, shall go into captivity; and they that spoil thee shall be a spoil, and all that prey upon thee will I give for a prey. For I will restore health unto thee, and I will heal thee of thy wounds, saith the Lord; because they called thee an Outcast, saying, This is Zion, whom no man seeketh after.

“Thus saith the Lord; Behold, I will bring again the captivity of Jacob’s tents, and have mercy on his dwelling places; and the city shall be builded upon her own heap, and the palace shall remain after the manner thereof. And out of them shall proceed thanksgiving and the voice of them that make merry: and I will multiply them, and they shall not be few; I will also glorify them, and they shall not be small. Their children also shall be as aforetime, and their congregation shall be established before me, and I will punish all that oppress them.

“And their nobles shall be of themselves, and their governor shall proceed from the midst of them; and I will cause him to draw near, and he shall approach unto me: for who is this that engaged his heart to approach unto me? And ye shall be my people, and I will be your God. Behold, the whirlwind of the Lord goeth forth with fury, a continuing whirlwind: it shall fall with pain upon the head of the wicked. The fierce anger of the Lord shall not return, until he have done it, and until he have performed the intents of his heart: in the latter days ye shall consider it.”

**Israel promised health and restoration in the latter-days (Jer 30:10-24)**

[And Jeremiah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“Therefore fear thou not, O my servant Jacob, saith the Lord; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid. For I am with thee, saith the Lord, to save thee: though I make a full end of all nations whither I have scattered thee, yet will I not make a full end of thee: but I will correct thee in measure, and will not leave thee altogether unpunished.

“For thus saith the Lord, Thy bruise is incurable, and thy wound is grievous. There is none to plead thy cause, that thou mayest be bound up: thou hast no healing medicines. All thy lovers have forgotten thee; they seek thee not; for I have wounded thee with the wound of an enemy, with the chastisement of a cruel one, for the multitude of thine iniquity; because thy sins were increased. Why criest thou for thine affliction? thy sorrow is incurable for the multitude of thine iniquity: because thy sins were increased, I have done these things unto thee. Therefore all they that devour thee shall be devoured; and all thine adversaries, every one of them, shall go into captivity; and they that spoil thee shall be a spoil, and all that prey upon thee will I give for a prey.

“For I will restore health unto thee, and I will heal thee of thy wounds, saith the Lord; because they called thee an Outcast, saying, This is Zion, whom no man seeketh after. Thus saith the Lord; Behold, I will bring again the captivity of Jacob’s tents, and have mercy on his dwelling places; and the city shall be builded upon her own heap, and the palace shall remain after the manner thereof. And out of them shall proceed thanksgiving and the voice of them that make merry: and I will multiply them, and they shall not be few; I will also glorify them, and they shall not be small. Their children also shall be as aforetime, and their congregation shall be established before me, and I will punish all that oppress them.

“And their nobles shall be of themselves, and their governor shall proceed from the midst of them; and I will cause him to draw near, and he shall approach unto me: for who is this that engaged his heart to approach unto me? saith the Lord. And ye shall be my people, and I will be your God. Behold, the whirlwind of the Lord goeth forth with fury, a continuing whirlwind: it shall fall with pain upon the head of the wicked.

The fierce anger of the Lord shall not return, until he have done it, and until he have performed the intents of his heart: in the latter days ye shall consider it.”

**The Lord to bless the wilderness of Israel and go before her face in the day of deliverance (Ezekiel 20:35-44)**

[And Ezekiel prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying]

“And I will bring you into the wilderness of the people, and there will I plead with you face to face.

Like as I pleaded with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so will I plead with you, saith the Lord God. And I will cause you to pass under the rod, and I will bring you into the bond of the covenant:

And I will purge out from among you the rebels, and them that transgress against me: I will bring them forth out of the country where they sojourn, and they shall not enter into the land of Israel: and ye shall know that I am the Lord. As for you, O house of Israel, thus saith the Lord God; Go ye, serve ye every one his idols, and hereafter also, if ye will not hearken unto me: but pollute ye my holy name no more with your gifts, and with your idols.

“For in mine holy mountain, in the mountain of the height of Israel, saith the Lord God, there shall all the house of Israel, all of them in the land, serve me: there will I accept them, and there will I require your offerings, and the firstfruits of your oblations, with all your holy things. I will accept you with your sweet savour, when I bring you out from the people, and gather you out of the countries wherein ye have been scattered; and I will be sanctified in you before the heathen.

“And ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I shall bring you into the land of Israel, into the country for the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to your fathers. And there shall ye remember your ways, and all your doings, wherein ye have been defiled; and ye shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for all your evils that ye have committed. And ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I have wrought with you for my name’s sake, not according to your wicked ways, nor according to your corrupt doings, O ye house of Israel, saith the Lord God.”

**God will shower down blessings upon Israel (Ezekiel 34:20-31)**

Therefore thus saith the Lord God unto them;

“ Behold, I, even I, will judge between the fat cattle and between the lean cattle. Because ye have thrust with side and with shoulder, and pushed all the diseased with your horns, till ye have scattered them abroad; Therefore will I save my flock, and they shall no more be a prey; and I will judge between cattle and cattle. And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken it. And I will make with them a covenant of peace, and will cause the evil beasts to cease out of the land: and they shall dwell safely in the wilderness, and sleep in the woods.

“And I will make them and the places round about my hill a blessing; and I will cause the shower to come down in his season; there shall be showers of blessing. And the tree of the field shall yield her fruit, and the earth shall yield her increase, and they shall be safe in their land, and shall know that I am the Lord, when I have broken the bands of their yoke, and delivered them out of the hand of those that served themselves of them. And they shall no more be a prey to the heathen, neither shall the beast of the land devour them; but they shall dwell safely, and none shall make them afraid. And I will raise up for them a plant of renown, and they shall be no more consumed with hunger in the land, neither bear the shame of the heathen any more. Thus shall they know that I the Lord their God am with them, and that they, even the house of Israel, are my people, saith the Lord God. And ye my flock, the flock of my pasture, are men, and I am your God.”

**Israel will prosper in every way imaginable in the latter-days (Zech 8:9-15, 23)**

Thus saith the Lord of hosts;

“Let your hands be strong, ye that hear in these days these words by the mouth of the prophets, which were in the day that the foundation of the house of the Lord of hosts was laid, that the temple might be built. For before these days there was no hire for man, nor any hire for beast; neither was there any peace to him that went out or came in because of the affliction: for I set all men every one against his neighbour. But now I will not be unto the residue of this people as in the former days, saith the Lord of hosts.

“For the seed shall be prosperous; the vine shall give her fruit, and the ground shall give her increase, and the heavens shall give their dew; and I will cause the remnant of this people to possess all these things.

And it shall come to pass, that as ye were a curse among the heathen, O house of Judah, and house of Israel; so will I save you, and ye shall be a blessing: fear not, but let your hands be strong…As I thought to punish you, when your fathers provoked me to wrath, saith the Lord of hosts, and I repented not: So again have I thought in these days to do well unto Jerusalem and to the house of Judah: fear ye not.”

**The Lord will send Israel the rain she needs in the latter-days (Zech 10:1)**

“Ask ye of the Lord rain in the time of the latter rain; so the Lord shall make bright clouds, and give them showers of rain, to everyone grass in the field.”

**The Lord will take up Israel, as if they are his jewels (Mal 3:17)**

“And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.”

***NEW TESTAMENT***

**If God be for us, nothing can be against us (Rom 8:28-31)**

[And Paul spake, saying,]

“And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose. For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified. What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?”

**Nothing can separate the elect of God from His love (Rom 8:32-39)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? Who shall lay anything to the charge of God’s elect? It is God that justifieth. Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? As it is written,

‘For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.’

“Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.”

**Unimaginable blessings promised to those that love God (1 Cor 2:9-12)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“But as it is written,

‘Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.’

“But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? Even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.”

**Inasmuch as we are partakers of sufferings, we are also partakers of the Consolation of Christ (2 Cor 1:7)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“And our hope of you is steadfast, knowing, that as ye are partakers of the sufferings, so shall ye be also of the consolation.”

**God is able to make all grace abound (2 Cor 9:8)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“And God is able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things, may abound to every good work.”

**All the blessings of Abraham are promised to the faithful (Gal 3:6-9, 27-29)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness. Know ye therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham. And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed. So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham.”

**The blessings of Israel are pre-destined as their inheritance (Eph 1:11-12, 18-19)**

[And Paul spake, saying]

“In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will. That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.”

***BOOK OF MORMON***

**The Power of the Lamb of God Would Descend Upon the Covenant People of the Lord, Scattered Upon the Earth (1 Ne 14:14)**

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

**The Promises of God to the House of Israel: (2 Ne 6:6-7)**

And now, these are the words:

“Thus saith the Lord God:

‘Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.”

**God will fight the battles of His people in the latter-days (2 Ne 6:17-18)**

But thus saith the Lord:

“Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.”

***10.3***

***MODERN BLESSINGS PROMISED TO***

***THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL***

**All who accept the gospel become the sons and daughters of God (D&C 11:28-30; D&C 25:1-2)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I am the life and the light of the world. I am the same who came unto mine own and mine own received me not; But verily, verily, I say unto you, that as many as receive me, to them will I give power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on my name. Amen.

Hearken unto the voice of the Lord your God, while I speak unto you, Emma Smith, my daughter; for verily I say unto you, all those who receive my gospel are sons and daughters in my kingdom. A revelation I give unto you concerning my will; and if thou art faithful and walk in the paths of virtue before me, I will preserve thy life, and thou shalt receive an inheritance in Zion.”

**The Lord promises to save Israel (D&C 38:33)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And from thence, whosoever I will shall go forth among all nations, and it shall be told them what they shall do; for I have a great work laid up in store, for Israel shall be saved, and I will lead them whithersoever I will, and no power shall stay my hand.”

**Those who receive Christ, through baptism, become His sons (D&C 39:1-6)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Hearken and listen to the voice of him who is from all eternity to all eternity, the Great I Am, even Jesus Christ— The light and the life of the world; a light which shineth in darkness and the darkness comprehendeth it not; The same which came in the meridian of time unto mine own, and mine own received me not; But to as many as received me, gave I power to become my sons; and even so will I give unto as many as will receive me, power to become my sons. And verily, verily, I say unto you, he that receiveth my gospel receiveth me; and he that receiveth not my gospel receiveth not me. And this is my gospel—repentance and baptism by water, and then cometh the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, even the Comforter, which showeth all things, and teacheth the peaceable things of the kingdom.”

**God delights to bless those who hear him with the greatest of blessings (D&C 41:1)**

“Hearken and hear, O ye my people, saith the Lord and your God, ye whom I delight to bless with the greatest of all blessings, ye that hear me;”

**Supreme blessings promised to the Saints (D&C 59:1-4, 15- )**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“Behold, blessed, saith the Lord, are they who have come up unto this land with an eye single to my glory, according to my commandments. For those that live shall inherit the earth, and those that die shall rest from all their labors, and their works shall follow them; and they shall receive a crown in the mansions of my Father, which I have prepared for them. Yea, blessed are they whose feet stand upon the land of Zion, who have obeyed my gospel; for they shall receive for their reward the good things of the earth, and it shall bring forth in its strength. And they shall also be crowned with blessings from above, yea, and with commandments not a few, and with revelations in their time—they that are faithful and diligent before me.

“And inasmuch as ye do these things (keep the Sabbath day holy through prayer and fasting) with thanksgiving, with cheerful hearts and countenances, not with much laughter, for this is sin, but with a glad heart and a cheerful countenance— Verily I say, that inasmuch as ye do this, the fulness of the earth is yours, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and that which climbeth upon the trees and walketh upon the earth; Yea, and the herb, and the good things which come of the earth, whether for food or for raiment, or for houses, or for barns, or for orchards, or for gardens, or for vineyards;

“Yea, all things which come of the earth, in the season thereof, are made for the benefit and the use of man, both to please the eye and to gladden the heart; Yea, for food and for raiment, for taste and for smell, to strengthen the body and to enliven the soul. And it pleaseth God that he hath given all these things unto man; for unto this end were they made to be used, with judgment, not to excess, neither by extortion.

And in nothing doth man offend God, or against none is his wrath kindled, save those who confess not his hand in all things, and obey not his commandments.

“Behold, this is according to the law and the prophets; wherefore, trouble me no more concerning this matter. But learn that he who doeth the works of righteousness shall receive his reward, even peace in this world, and eternal life in the world to come. I, the Lord, have spoken it, and the Spirit beareth record. Amen.”

**The poor in heart will be rewarded with seeing the Savior when He comes again (D&C 56:18-20)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“But blessed are the poor who are pure in heart, whose hearts are broken, and whose spirits are contrite, for they shall see the kingdom of God coming in power and great glory unto their deliverance; for the fatness of the earth shall be theirs. For behold, the Lord shall come, and his recompense shall be with him, and he shall reward every man, and the poor shall rejoice; And their generations shall inherit the earth from generation to generation, forever and ever. And now I make an end of speaking unto you. Even so. Amen.”

**The land of Zion to be blessed by God in the latter-days (D&C 61:17)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“And, as I, the Lord, in the beginning cursed the land, even so in the last days have I blessed it, in its time, for the use of my saints, that they may partake the fatness thereof.”

**100 Fold blessings promised to the Church of the Firstborn; Christ prepares blessings for us before we receive them (D&C 78:17-22)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye are little children, and ye have not as yet understood how great blessings the Father hath in his own hands and prepared for you; And ye cannot bear all things now; nevertheless, be of good cheer, for I will lead you along. The kingdom is yours and the blessings thereof are yours, and the riches of eternity are yours. And he who receiveth all things with thankfulness shall be made glorious; and the things of this earth shall be added unto him, even an hundred fold, yea, more.  Wherefore, do the things which I have commanded you, saith your Redeemer, even the Son Ahman, who prepareth all things before he taketh you; For ye are the church of the Firstborn, and he will take you up in a cloud, and appoint every man his portion. And he that is a faithful and wise steward shall inherit all things. Amen.”

**The inhabitants of Zion, the New Jerusalem, will have a multiplicity of blessings forever (D&C 97:28)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And I will bless her with blessings, and multiply a multiplicity of blessings upon her, and upon her generations forever and ever, saith the Lord your God. Amen.”

**God promises mercy in the day of wrath to those who repent (D&C 101:6-9)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“Behold, I say unto you, there were jarrings, and contentions, and envyings, and strifes, and lustful and covetous desires among them; therefore by these things they polluted their inheritances. They were slow to hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; therefore, the Lord their God is slow to hearken unto their prayers, to answer them in the day of their trouble. In the day of their peace they esteemed lightly my counsel; but, in the day of their trouble, of necessity they feel after me. Verily I say unto you, notwithstanding their sins, my bowels are filled with compassion towards them. I will not utterly cast them off; and in the day of wrath I will remember mercy.”

**God promises to fight the battles of His people (D&C 98:37-38; D&C 101:10)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“And I, the Lord, would fight their battles, and their children’s battles, and their children’s children’s, until they had avenged themselves on all their enemies, to the third and fourth generation. Behold, this is an ensample unto all people, saith the Lord your God, for justification before me. I have sworn, and the decree hath gone forth by a former commandment which I have given unto you, that I would let fall the sword of mine indignation in behalf of my people; and even as I have said, it shall come to pass.”

**The promises of God to scattered Zion (D&C 101:14-18)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“And all they who have mourned shall be comforted. And all they who have given their lives for my name shall be crowned. Therefore, let your hearts be comforted concerning Zion; for all flesh is in mine hands; be still and know that I am God. Zion shall not be moved out of her place, notwithstanding her children are scattered. They that remain, and are pure in heart, shall return, and come to their inheritances, they and their children, with songs of everlasting joy, to build up the waste places of Zion.”

**Redemption follows tribulation (D&C 103:13)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“Behold, this is the blessing which I have promised after your tribulations, and the tribulations of your brethren—your redemption, and the redemption of your brethren, even their restoration to the land of Zion, to be established, no more to be thrown down.”

**The humble and faithful are promised a multiplicity of blessings (D&C 104:23, 25, 33, 38, 42, 44, 46; D&C 124:13)**

[And the Lord spake saying]

“And I will multiply blessings upon him, inasmuch as he will be humble before me. And inasmuch as he is faithful, I will multiply blessings upon him and his seed after him. And, inasmuch as they are faithful, I will multiply blessings upon them and their seed after them, even a multiplicity of blessings.

“And inasmuch as he is faithful, I will multiply a multiplicity of blessings upon him. And inasmuch as he is faithful in keeping my commandments, which I have given unto him, I will multiply blessings upon him and his seed after him, even a multiplicity of blessings.

“And this is the beginning of the stewardship which I have appointed unto him, for a blessing upon him, and upon his father. And I will multiply blessings upon the house of my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., inasmuch as he is faithful, even a multiplicity of blessings. Let him, therefore, hearken to your counsel, and I will bless him with a multiplicity of blessings; let him be faithful and true in all things from henceforth, and he shall be great in mine eyes;”

**God promises that no weapon shall prosper against those who keep their covenants (D&C 109:24-32)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying,]

“We ask thee, Holy Father, to establish the people that shall worship, and honorably hold a name and standing in this thy house, to all generations and for eternity; That no weapon formed against them shall prosper; that he who diggeth a pit for them shall fall into the same himself; That no combination of wickedness shall have power to rise up and prevail over thy people upon whom thy name shall be put in this house;

“And if any people shall rise against this people, that thine anger be kindled against them; And if they shall smite this people thou wilt smite them; thou wilt fight for thy people as thou didst in the day of battle, that they may be delivered from the hands of all their enemies. We ask thee, Holy Father, to confound, and astonish, and to bring to shame and confusion, all those who have spread lying reports abroad, over the world, against thy servant or servants, if they will not repent, when the everlasting gospel shall be proclaimed in their ears;

“And that all their works may be brought to naught, and be swept away by the hail, and by the judgments which thou wilt send upon them in thine anger, that there may be an end to lyings and slanders against thy people. For thou knowest, O Lord, that thy servants have been innocent before thee in bearing record of thy name, for which they have suffered these things. Therefore we plead before thee for a full and complete deliverance from under this yoke;”

**God to make bare His arm and redeem Zion from their wicked persecutors (D&C 109:51)**

“But if [the wicked mob repent] not, make bare thine arm, O Lord, and redeem that which thou didst appoint a Zion unto thy people.”

**God’s promise of deliverance for His people (D&C 121:12-33)**

[And the Lord spake to Joseph, saying,]

“And also that God hath set his hand and seal to change the times and seasons, and to blind their minds, that they may not understand his marvelous workings; that he may prove them also and take them in their own craftiness; Also because their hearts are corrupted, and the things which they are willing to bring upon others, and love to have others suffer, may come upon themselves to the very uttermost; That they may be disappointed also, and their hopes may be cut off; And not many years hence, that they and their posterity shall be swept from under heaven, saith God, that not one of them is left to stand by the wall.

“Cursed are all those that shall lift up the heel against mine anointed, saith the Lord, and cry they have sinned when they have not sinned before me, saith the Lord, but have done that which was meet in mine eyes, and which I commanded them. But those who cry transgression do it because they are the servants of sin, and are the children of disobedience themselves. And those who swear falsely against my servants, that they might bring them into bondage and death— Wo unto them; because they have offended my little ones they shall be severed from the ordinances of mine house.

“Their basket shall not be full, their houses and their barns shall perish, and they themselves shall be despised by those that flattered them. They shall not have right to the priesthood, nor their posterity after them from generation to generation. It had been better for them that a millstone had been hanged about their necks, and they drowned in the depth of the sea. Wo unto all those that discomfort my people, and drive, and murder, and testify against them, saith the Lord of Hosts; a generation of vipers shall not escape the damnation of hell.

“Behold, mine eyes see and know all their works, and I have in reserve a swift judgment in the season thereof, for them all; For there is a time appointed for every man, according as his works shall be.

God shall give unto you knowledge by his Holy Spirit, yea, by the unspeakable gift of the Holy Ghost, that has not been revealed since the world was until now; Which our forefathers have awaited with anxious expectation to be revealed in the last times, which their minds were pointed to by the angels, as held in reserve for the fulness of their glory;

“A time to come in the which nothing shall be withheld, whether there be one God or many gods, they shall be manifest. All thrones and dominions, principalities and powers, shall be revealed and set forth upon all who have endured valiantly for the gospel of Jesus Christ. And also, if there be bounds set to the heavens or to the seas, or to the dry land, or to the sun, moon, or stars— All the times of their revolutions, all the appointed days, months, and years, and all the days of their days, months, and years, and all their glories, laws, and set times, shall be revealed in the days of the dispensation of the fulness of times—

“According to that which was ordained in the midst of the Council of the Eternal God of all other gods before this world was, that should be reserved unto the finishing and the end thereof, when every man shall enter into his eternal presence and into his immortal rest. How long can rolling waters remain impure? What power shall stay the heavens? As well might man stretch forth his puny arm to stop the Missouri river in its decreed course, or to turn it up stream, as to hinder the Almighty from pouring down knowledge from heaven upon the heads of the Latter-day Saints.”

**Inasmuch as the saints obey the commandments they shall prevail over all of their enemies until the Lord comes again**

**(D&C 103:5-7)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“But verily I say unto you, that I have decreed a decree which my people shall realize, inasmuch as they hearken from this very hour unto the counsel which I, the Lord their God, shall give unto them. Behold they shall, for I have decreed it, begin to prevail against mine enemies from this very hour. And by hearkening to observe all the words which I, the Lord their God, shall speak unto them, they shall never cease to prevail until the kingdoms of the world are subdued under my feet, and the earth is given unto the saints, to possess it forever and ever.”

**God promises Israel that his angels shall go before them (D&C 103:19-20)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Therefore, let not your hearts faint, for I say not unto you as I said unto your fathers: Mine angel shall go up before you, but not my presence. But I say unto you: Mine angels shall go up before you, and also my presence, and in time ye shall possess the goodly land.”

**The Saints commanded to pray for the Second Coming and to praise God for the miracles sent us (D&C 65:4-6)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Pray unto the Lord, call upon his holy name, make known his wonderful works among the people. Call upon the Lord, that his kingdom may go forth upon the earth, that the inhabitants thereof may receive it, and be prepared for the days to come, in the which the Son of Man shall come down in heaven, clothed in the brightness of his glory, to meet the kingdom of God which is set up on the earth. Wherefore, may the kingdom of God go forth, that the kingdom of heaven may come, that thou, O God, mayest be glorified in heaven so on earth, that thine enemies may be subdued; for thine is the honor, power and glory, forever and ever. Amen.”

******

***CHAPTER 11:***

***THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST***

******

***11.1***

***THE GOSPEL IS SENT FORTH TO PREPARE THE WORLD FOR***

***THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST***

**Commanded to always be ready for the arrival of the Bridegroom (D&C 33:17-18)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Wherefore, be faithful, praying always, having your lamps trimmed and burning, and oil with you, that you may be ready at the coming of the Bridegroom— For behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, that I come quickly. Even so. Amen.”

**The preaching of the gospel prepares the way for the Second Coming (D&C 34:6-7)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“[You must] lift up your voice as with the sound of a trump, both long and loud, and cry repentance unto a crooked and perverse generation, preparing the way of the Lord for his second coming. For behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, the time is soon at hand that I shall come in a cloud with power and great glory.”

**The Elders are called to prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 43:15-22)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Again I say, hearken ye elders of my church, whom I have appointed: Ye are not sent forth to be taught, but to teach the children of men the things which I have put into your hands by the power of my Spirit;

And ye are to be taught from on high. Sanctify yourselves and ye shall be endowed with power, that ye may give even as I have spoken. Hearken ye, for, behold, the great day of the Lord is nigh at hand. For the day cometh that the Lord shall utter his voice out of heaven; the heavens shall shake and the earth shall tremble, and the trump of God shall sound both long and loud, and shall say to the sleeping nations: Ye saints arise and live; ye sinners stay and sleep until I shall call again.

“Wherefore gird up your loins lest ye be found among the wicked. Lift up your voices and spare not. Call upon the nations to repent, both old and young, both bond and free, saying:

‘Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord;’

“For if I, who am a man, do lift up my voice and call upon you to repent, and ye hate me, what will ye say when the day cometh when the thunders shall utter their voices from the ends of the earth, speaking to the ears of all that live, saying—Repent, and prepare for the great day of the Lord? Yea, and again, when the lightnings shall streak forth from the east unto the west, and shall utter forth their voices unto all that live, and make the ears of all tingle that hear, saying these words—Repent ye, for the great day of the Lord is come?”

**The Lord calls upon the inhabitants of the earth to repent and prepare for His Second Coming through the elements**

**(D&C 43:23-27)**

And again, the Lord shall utter his voice out of heaven, saying:

“Hearken, O ye nations of the earth, and hear the words of that God who made you. O, ye nations of the earth, how often would I have gathered you together as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, but ye would not! How oft have I called upon you by the mouth of my servants, and by the ministering of angels, and by mine own voice, and by the voice of thunderings, and by the voice of lightnings, and by the voice of tempests, and by the voice of earthquakes, and great hailstorms, and by the voice of famines and pestilences of every kind, and by the great sound of a trump, and by the voice of judgment, and by the voice of mercy all the day long, and by the voice of glory and honor and the riches of eternal life, and would have saved you with an everlasting salvation, but ye would not! Behold, the day has come, when the cup of the wrath of mine indignation is full. Behold, verily I say unto you, that these are the words of the Lord your God.”

**The everlasting covenant of the Gospel is to prepare the Gentiles for the Second Coming (D&C 45:9)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And even so I have sent mine everlasting covenant into the world, to be a light to the world, and to be a standard for my people, and for the Gentiles to seek to it, and to be a messenger before my face to prepare the way before me.”

**Christ commands us to look and prepare for His Second Coming (D&C 49:23)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Wherefore, be not deceived, but continue in steadfastness, looking forth for the heavens to be shaken, and the earth to tremble and to reel to and fro as a drunken man, and for the valleys to be exalted, and for the mountains to be made low, and for the rough places to become smooth—and all this when the angel shall sound his trumpet.”

**The latter-days are a day of warning (D&C 63:58-59)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“For this is a day of warning, and not a day of many words. For I, the Lord, am not to be mocked in the last days. Behold, I am from above, and my power lieth beneath. I am over all, and in all, and through all, and search all things, and the day cometh that all things shall be subject unto me.”

**The gospel is to prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 65:2-6)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“The keys of the kingdom of God are committed unto man on the earth, and from thence shall the gospel roll forth unto the ends of the earth, as the stone which is cut out of the mountain without hands shall roll forth, until it has filled the whole earth. Yea, a voice crying—Prepare ye the way of the Lord, prepare ye the supper of the Lamb, make ready for the Bridegroom. Pray unto the Lord, call upon his holy name, make known his wonderful works among the people. Call upon the Lord, that his kingdom may go forth upon the earth, that the inhabitants thereof may receive it, and be prepared for the days to come, in the which the Son of Man shall come down in heaven, clothed in the brightness of his glory, to meet the kingdom of God which is set up on the earth. Wherefore, may the kingdom of God go forth, that the kingdom of heaven may come, that thou, O God, mayest be glorified in heaven so on earth, that thine enemies may be subdued; for thine is the honor, power and glory, forever and ever. Amen.”

**Those who preach and receive the gospel will be blessed with understanding the signs of the Second Coming (D&C 68:8-11)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Go ye into all the world, preach the gospel to every creature, acting in the authority which I have given you, baptizing in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, and he that believeth not shall be damned. And he that believeth shall be blest with signs following, even as it is written. And unto you it shall be given to know the signs of the times, and the signs of the coming of the Son of Man;”

**The Elders are to teach the world of the wars and judgments that are coming upon the land (D&C 88:78-79)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Teach ye diligently and my grace shall attend you, that you may be instructed more perfectly in theory, in principle, in doctrine, in the law of the gospel, in all things that pertain unto the kingdom of God, that are expedient for you to understand; Of things both in heaven and in the earth, and under the earth; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms.

**Once gathered, Israel must prepare for the day when the veil covering the face of the Lord will be taken off (Second Coming)**

**(D&C 101:23)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And prepare for the revelation which is to come, when the veil of the covering of my temple, in my tabernacle, which hideth the earth, shall be taken off, and all flesh shall see me together.”

**Those who have made covenants are obligated to warn the world of the judgments yet to come (D&C 109:38)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Put upon thy servants the testimony of the covenant, that when they go out and proclaim thy word they may seal up the law, and prepare the hearts of thy saints for all those judgments thou art about to send, in thy wrath, upon the inhabitants of the earth, because of their transgressions, that thy people may not faint in the day of trouble.”

**Those who have made covenants to be prepared against the day of burning (D&C 109:46)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“Therefore, O Lord, deliver thy people from the calamity of the wicked; enable thy servants to seal up the law, and bind up the testimony, that they may be prepared against the day of burning.”

**The Church is to prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 109:72-76)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying]

“Remember all thy church, O Lord, with all their families, and all their immediate connections, with all their sick and afflicted ones, with all the poor and meek of the earth; that the kingdom, which thou hast set up without hands, may become a great mountain and fill the whole earth; That thy church may come forth out of the wilderness of darkness, and shine forth fair as the moon, clear as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners;

“And be adorned as a bride for that day when thou shalt unveil the heavens, and cause the mountains to flow down at thy presence, and the valleys to be exalted, the rough places made smooth; that thy glory may fill the earth; That when the trump shall sound for the dead, we shall be caught up in the cloud to meet thee, that we may ever be with the Lord; That our garments may be pure, that we may be clothed upon with robes of righteousness, with palms in our hands, and crowns of glory upon our heads, and reap eternal joy for all our sufferings.”

**The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is to be a beacon to the world and a defense against the wrath of God to come**

**(D&C 115:3-6)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“And also unto my faithful servants who are of the high council of my church in Zion, for thus it shall be called, and unto all the elders and people of my Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, scattered abroad in all the world; For thus shall my church be called in the last days, even The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Verily I say unto you all: Arise and shine forth, that thy light may be a standard for the nations;

And that the gathering together upon the land of Zion, and upon her stakes, may be for a defense, and for a refuge from the storm, and from wrath when it shall be poured out without mixture upon the whole earth.”

**The saints commanded to prepare for the Second Coming (D&C 133:1-6)**

[And the Lord spake unto them, saying]

“Hearken, O ye people of my church, saith the Lord your God, and hear the word of the Lord concerning you— The Lord who shall suddenly come to his temple; the Lord who shall come down upon the world with a curse to judgment; yea, upon all the nations that forget God, and upon all the ungodly among you. For he shall make bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of their God. Wherefore, prepare ye, prepare ye, O my people; sanctify yourselves; gather ye together, O ye people of my church, upon the land of Zion, all you that have not been commanded to tarry. Go ye out from Babylon. Be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord. Call your solemn assemblies, and speak often one to another. And let every man call upon the name of the Lord.”

**The gospel was restored so that the servants of God could be prepared themselves & also prepare the world for what is about to come leading up to the Second Coming (D&C 133:36-38, 57-59)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And now, verily saith the Lord, that these things might be known among you, O inhabitants of the earth, I have sent forth mine angel flying through the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel, who hath appeared unto some and hath committed it unto man, who shall appear unto many that dwell on the earth.

And this gospel shall be preached unto every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people. And the servants of God shall go forth, saying with a loud voice: Fear God and give glory to him, for the hour of his judgment is come;

“And for this cause, that men might be made partakers of the glories which were to be revealed, the Lord sent forth the fulness of his gospel, his everlasting covenant, reasoning in plainness and simplicity—

To prepare the weak for those things which are coming on the earth, and for the Lord’s errand in the day when the weak shall confound the wise, and the little one become a strong nation, and two shall put their tens of thousands to flight. And by the weak things of the earth the Lord shall thresh the nations by the power of his Spirit.”

**The righteous members of the Church to declare the destructions awaiting the earth (D&C 63:37)**

And that every man should take righteousness in his hands and faithfulness upon his loins, and lift a warning voice unto the inhabitants of the earth; and declare both by word and by flight that desolation shall come upon the wicked.

**The gospel must be preached to the uttermost parts of the earth (D&C 58:64)**

For, verily, the sound must go forth from this place into all the world, and unto the uttermost parts of the earth—the gospel must be preached unto every creature, with signs following them that believe.

**In the latter-days, the gospel will go forth throughout all the earth (D&C 65:2)**

The keys of the kingdom of God are committed unto man on the earth, and from thence shall the gospel roll forth unto the ends of the earth, as the stone which is cut out of the mountain without hands shall roll forth, until it has filled the whole earth.

**The world is to receive the Gospel through the Elders of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (D&C 90:9)**

That through your administration they may receive the word, and through their administration the word may go forth unto the ends of the earth, unto the Gentiles first, and then, behold, and lo, they shall turn unto the Jews.

**Commanded to preach the gospel and to turn the hearts of the fathers of the world to their children (D&C 98:16)**

Therefore, renounce war and proclaim peace, and seek diligently to turn the hearts of the children to their fathers, and the hearts of the fathers to the children;

**Those who preach and accept the gospel are to be blessed with understanding the signs of the Second Coming**

**(D&C 68:11)**

And unto you it shall be given to know the signs of the times, and the signs of the coming of the Son of Man;

**The Great day of the Lord is at hand…Go to the temple and prepare for it! (D&C 128:22-24)**

Brethren, shall we not go on in so great a cause? Go forward and not backward. Courage, brethren; and on, on to the victory! Let your hearts rejoice, and be exceedingly glad. Let the earth break forth into singing. Let the dead speak forth anthems of eternal praise to the King Immanuel, who hath ordained, before the world was, that which would enable us to redeem them out of their prison; for the prisoners shall go free. Let the mountains shout for joy, and all ye valleys cry aloud; and all ye seas and dry lands tell the wonders of your Eternal King! And ye rivers, and brooks, and rills, flow down with gladness. Let the woods and all the trees of the field praise the Lord; and ye solid rocks weep for joy! And let the sun, moon, and the morning stars sing together, and let all the sons of God shout for joy! And let the eternal creations declare his name forever and ever! And again I say, how glorious is the voice we hear from heaven, proclaiming in our ears, glory, and salvation, and honor, and immortality, and eternal life; kingdoms, principalities, and powers!

Behold, the great day of the Lord is at hand; and who can abide the day of his coming, and who can stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner’s fire, and like fuller’s soap; and he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver, and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness. Let us, therefore, as a church and a people, and as Latter-day Saints, offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness; and let us present in his holy temple, when it is finished, a book containing the records of our dead, which shall be worthy of all acceptation.

**The Saints to prepare the world for the Second Coming (D&C 133:10-11)**

Yea, let the cry go forth among all people:

“Awake and arise and go forth to meet the Bridegroom; behold and lo, the Bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord. Watch, therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour.”

***11.2***

***JESUS CHRIST DECLARES HIS SECOND COMING IS SOON\****

**\*And this was 180-200 years ago**

**Consider This!**

It’s impossible to study the fulfillment of all of God’s Promises to Israel without studying the Second Coming. The reason this is so is because all the promises of God to Israel are to take place in the latter, or last days, before the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. The ultimate fulfillment of God’s promises to Israel is to gather, AND, prepare, them for the Second Coming of the Savior. Preparation is had in the Telestial sphere. The action takes place in the Terrestrial Sphere. Prophecies have been made since the beginning of time, the Telestial times. In the latter-days, the Terrestrial Times, is when everything ramps up. Prophecies are fulfilled. Promises are fulfilled. Covenants are made and kept, etc. The Gentiles are to receive the Gospel first. Then the Jews who rejected and crucified Christ, are to receive the gospel in preparation for receiving the Savior among them. Just like in the Temple wherein all the action, the good, exciting stuff, takes place in the Terrestrial room prior to entering the Celestial Room, the pinnacle experience of the Temple, so too, does all the action between God and Israel take place in the latter days, before the Savior comes back to the World in Celestial Glory. Telestial Room activity in the temple is all about getting ready and prepared to enter God’s presence. So, too, then, is the latter days all about getting the earth and her people ready…separating the righteous from the wicked… in preparation to be in the Savior’s presence.

**Christ declares that the time of His Second Coming is at hand and will surely come (D&C 39:20-21)**

“Go forth baptizing with water, preparing the way before my face for the time of my coming; For the time is at hand; the day or the hour no man knoweth; but it surely shall come.”

**Christ declares that He comes quickly (D&C 33:18; D&C 34:7, 12; D&C 35:27; D&C 39:24; D&C 41:4; D&C 49:28; D&C 54:10)**

“For behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, that I come quickly. Even so. Amen. For behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, the time is soon at hand that I shall come in a cloud with power and great glory. And verily, verily, I say unto you, I come quickly. I am your Lord and your Redeemer. Even so. Amen. Fear not, little flock, the kingdom is yours until I come. Behold, I come quickly. Even so. Amen. Behold, I come quickly. Even so. Amen. And I will be your ruler when I come; and behold, I come quickly, and ye shall see that my law is kept.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, and I come quickly. Even so. Amen. And again, be patient in tribulation until I come; and, behold, I come quickly, and my reward is with me, and they who have sought me early shall find rest to their souls. Even so. Amen.”

**No one will know the specific day nor hour of Christ’s Second Coming until it happens (D&C 49:7; D&C 58:65; D&C 87:8;**

**D&C 88:126)**

“I, the Lord God, have spoken it; but the hour and the day no man knoweth, neither the angels in heaven, nor shall they know until he comes. And behold the Son of Man cometh. Amen. Wherefore, stand ye in holy places, and be not moved, until the day of the Lord come; for behold, it cometh quickly, saith the Lord. Amen. Pray always, that ye may not faint, until I come. Behold, and lo, I will come quickly, and receive you unto myself. Amen.”

**Christ commands us to be prepared, as Christ is coming soon (D&C 38:7-9)**

But behold, verily, verily, I say unto you that mine eyes are upon you. I am in your midst and ye cannot see me; But the day soon cometh that ye shall see me, and know that I am; for the veil of darkness shall soon be rent, and he that is not purified shall not abide the day. Wherefore, gird up your loins and be prepared. Behold, the kingdom is yours, and the enemy shall not overcome.

**Let’s Be Practical!**

Numerous scriptures state that no many knows the day nor the hour of the Second Coming. However, Amos 3:7 also teaches that God will do nothing except he first reveal it to the prophets. D&C 101:23 tells us to “prepare for the revelation which is to come…” concerning the Second Coming of the Savior. It heavily hints at the possibility that the actual date of the Second Coming will come to the prophet alive at the time of His coming. Additionally, we know for certain that Christ told Nephi 3rd the night before His birth that the next day was when He would be born into the world, which gives us scriptural evidence of the Savior giving detailed information about His coming to His prophet. Lastly, we are told in the New Testament that the Saints will know of the season of the Second Coming 1 Thess 5:1-11

As already discussed, no one knows the specific day or hour when the Second Coming will be. However, the following questions should be considered:

-Does that mean we shouldn’t look/prepare for the Second Coming?

-If no one is supposed to know when the Second Coming will be, then why do we have so many prophecies about what will take place leading up to it?

Now consider the following two scenarios:

1-A woman may not know when she’s specifically going to go into labor, but doctors can give her a very good estimate within days. And the closer she gets to going into labor, the woman can listen to what her body is telling her as to how close it is.

2-When driving from one destination to another, it’s common to see signs that show how many miles are left. The same holds true for following the signs of the times. Through the scriptures and modern prophets, we have been given signs to look for. These signs don’t tell us specifically when the Second Coming will be, but as each event takes place, and we have less and less events to look for, one can begin to gauge just how close we are to the Second Coming.

***11.3***

***THE DOCTRINE OF THE SECOND COMING***

***ANCIENT DAY MEETS MODERN DAY***

**Daniel shown events of the latter-days (Dan 10:1-6, 12-21)**

In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.

“In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled. And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is Hiddekel; Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz: His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude. Then said he unto me,

‘Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.

‘Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision is for many days.’

“And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb. And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me,

‘O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? For as for me, straightway there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me.’

“Then there came again and touched me one like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me, And said,

‘O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong.’

“And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said,

‘Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me.’

“Then said he,

‘Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? And now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come. But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.”

**The prophecies of Isaiah will be fulfilled in the latter-days (2 Ne 25:7-8)**

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass. Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

**The apostle John promised immortality, to prophesy before nations, kindreds, tongues, and people (D&C 7:1-3)**

And the Lord said unto me:

“John, my beloved, what desirest thou? For if you shall ask what you will, it shall be granted unto you.”

And I said unto him:

“Lord, give unto me power over death, that I may live and bring souls unto thee.”

And the Lord said unto me:

“Verily, verily, I say unto thee, because thou desirest this thou shalt tarry until I come in my glory, and shalt prophesy before nations, kindreds, tongues and people.”

**John the Revelator is to help gather Israel in the latter-days (D&C 77:14)**

Q. What are we to understand by the little book which was eaten by John, as mentioned in the [10th chapter of Revelation](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/rev/10?lang=eng)?

A. We are to understand that it was a mission, and an ordinance, for him to gather the tribes of Israel; behold, this is Elias, who, as it is written, must come and restore all things.

**John sees the events of the 6th and 7th Seals**

**(See Rev 6:12-11; Rev 14; Rev 16; Rev 19)**

**The Three Nephites promised immortality, to live to see all things fulfilled upon the earth spoken by the Father**

**(3 Ne 28:6-7)**

And [Jesus] said unto them:

“Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me. Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.”

**All remaining prophecies from Book of Mormon Prophets, unfulfilled to the time of Moroni, will be fulfilled in the latter-days**

**(Words of Mormon1:4)**

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass…

**All prophecies and promises between God and the House of Israel that have not yet been revealed will be revealed in the latter-days (Ether 4:14-15)**

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared. Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord. For the Lord said unto me:

“They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord. And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me…even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are. And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

“And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire. And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day. But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

“And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world. Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

“Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.”

***THE CHURCH NEEDS TO BE READY***

**Christ gives the parable of the Ten Virgins in relation to watching for His Second Coming (Matt 25:1-13)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.

“While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps.

And the foolish said unto the wise,

‘Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out.’

“But the wise answered, saying,

‘Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves.’

“And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying,

‘Lord, Lord, open to us.’

“But he answered and said,

‘Verily I say unto you, I know you not.’

“Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.”

**The Lord will begin the cleansing of the wicked from the world by cleansing first from among His people (D&C 112:23-26)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, darkness covereth the earth, and gross darkness the minds of the people, and all flesh has become corrupt before my face. Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth, a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation; and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth... And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord; First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.”

**Apostasy from within the Church and the preaching of false doctrines outside of the Church (1 Tim 4:1-3; 2 Tim 3:1-13;**

**1 Peter 4:17-18; 2 Peter 2:1-2; Jude 1:17-19)**

[And Paul prophesied, saying,]

“Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth.

“This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, without natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good, Traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God; Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away.

“For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth. Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith. But they shall proceed no further: for their folly shall be manifest unto all men, as theirs also was.

“But thou hast fully known my doctrine, manner of life, purpose, faith, longsuffering, charity, patience,

Persecutions, afflictions, which came unto me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra; what persecutions I endured: but out of them all the Lord delivered me. Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution. But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.”

[And Peter prophesied, saying,]

“For the time is come that judgment must begin at the house of God: and if it first begin at us, what shall the end be of them that obey not the gospel of God? And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear?”

“But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of.”

[And Jude prophesied, saying]

“But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ;

How that they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. These be they who separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit.”

***THE DOCTRINE***

**Israel commanded to pray for the Second Coming (Isaiah 64:1-12)**

[And Isaiah prayed, saying]

“Oh that thou wouldest rend the heavens, that thou wouldest come down, that the mountains might flow down at thy presence, As when the melting fire burneth, the fire causeth the waters to boil, to make thy name known to thine adversaries, that the nations may tremble at thy presence! When thou didst terrible things which we looked not for, thou camest down, the mountains flowed down at thy presence. For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.

“Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved. But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away. And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities.

“But now, O Lord, thou art our father; we are the clay, and thou our potter; and we all are the work of thy hand. Be not wroth very sore, O Lord, neither remember iniquity for ever: behold, see, we beseech thee, we are all thy people. Thy holy cities are a wilderness, Zion is a wilderness, Jerusalem a desolation. Our holy and our beautiful house, where our fathers praised thee, is burned up with fire: and all our pleasant things are laid waste. Wilt thou refrain thyself for these things, O Lord? Wilt thou hold thy peace, and afflict us very sore?”

**Many in the latter-days will be given dreams and visions (Joel 2:28-32)**

[And Joel prophesied, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit. And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke. The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the Lord come. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.”

**The Saints commanded to look for the Second Coming (2 Peter 3:10-13)**

[And Peter prophesied, saying,]

“But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness, Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.”

**The Saints will know of the season of the Second Coming (1 Thess 5:1-11)**

[And Paul wrote, saying]

“But of the times and the seasons, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you. For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. Ye are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness.

“Therefore let us not sleep, as do others; but let us watch and be sober. For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night. But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation. For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ, Who died for us, that, whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do.”

**The opening of the 7th Seal will happen before the Second Coming (D&C 77:13)**

Q. When are the things to be accomplished, which are written in the [9th chapter of Revelation](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/rev/9?lang=eng)?

A. They are to be accomplished after the opening of the seventh seal, before the coming of Christ.

**Many will deny the validity of the Second Coming, saying it won’t happen (2 Peter 3:1-5)**

This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in both which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance:

That ye may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour:

“Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts, and saying,

‘Where is the promise of his coming? For since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation. For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water.”

**Men will lose faith and become evil before the Second Coming (D&C 45:26-27)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And in that day shall be heard of wars and rumors of wars, and the whole earth shall be in commotion, and men’s hearts shall fail them, and they shall say that Christ delayeth his coming until the end of the earth. And the love of men shall wax cold, and iniquity shall abound.”

**We are commanded to look for the signs of the Second Coming (D&C 63:53-54)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“These things are the things that ye must look for; and, speaking after the manner of the Lord, they are now nigh at hand, and in a time to come, even in the day of the coming of the Son of Man. And until that hour there will be foolish virgins among the wise; and at that hour cometh an entire separation of the righteous and the wicked; and in that day will I send mine angels to pluck out the wicked and cast them into unquenchable fire.”

**The Second Coming is to happen in the latter-days (D&C 33:10)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“Yea, open your mouths and they shall be filled, saying:

‘Repent, repent, and prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.”

**Watch for the fulfillment of signs to know the season of the Second Coming (JSM 1:38-43)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“Now learn a parable of the fig tree—When its branches are yet tender, and it begins to put forth leaves, you know that summer is nigh at hand; So likewise, mine elect, when they shall see all these things, they shall know that he is near, even at the doors; But of that day, and hour, no one knoweth; no, not the angels of God in heaven, but my Father only. But as it was in the days of Noah, so it shall be also at the coming of the Son of Man; For it shall be with them, as it was in the days which were before the flood; for until the day that Noah entered into the ark they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage; And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be.”

**The Second Coming will happen when many are not looking for it (JSM 1:46-55)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And what I say unto one, I say unto all men; watch, therefore, for you know not at what hour your Lord doth come. But know this, if the good man of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to have been broken up, but would have been ready. Therefore be ye also ready, for in such an hour as ye think not, the Son of Man cometh. Who, then, is a faithful and wise servant, whom his lord hath made ruler over his household, to give them meat in due season?

“Blessed is that servant whom his lord, when he cometh, shall find so doing; and verily I say unto you, he shall make him ruler over all his goods. But if that evil servant shall say in his heart: My lord delayeth his coming, And shall begin to smite his fellow-servants, and to eat and drink with the drunken, the lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for him, and in an hour that he is not aware of,  And shall cut him asunder, and shall appoint him his portion with the hypocrites; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. And thus cometh the end of the wicked, according to the prophecy of Moses, saying: They shall be cut off from among the people; but the end of the earth is not yet, but by and by.”

**Understanding the signs to precede the Second Coming (D&C 45:341-39)**

“And now, when I the Lord had spoken these words unto my disciples, they were troubled. And I said unto them:

‘Be not troubled, for, when all these things shall come to pass, ye may know that the promises which have been made unto you shall be fulfilled. And when the light shall begin to break forth, it shall be with them like unto a parable which I will show you— Ye look and behold the fig trees, and ye see them with your eyes, and ye say when they begin to shoot forth, and their leaves are yet tender, that summer is now nigh at hand; Even so it shall be in that day when they shall see all these things, then shall they know that the hour is nigh. And it shall come to pass that he that feareth me shall be looking forth for the great day of the Lord to come, even for the signs of the coming of the Son of Man.”

“Before the second coming of Jesus Christ, certain promised signs and wonders are to take place, making it possible for his Saints to know the approximate time of his coming. Jesus said:

‘Now learn a parable of the fig tree; When his branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, ye know that summer is nigh: So likewise ye, when ye shall see all these things, know that it is near, even at the doors.’ ([Matt. 24:32–33](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/matt/24.32-33?lang=eng#p32).)

“President Kimball gave this counsel,

‘The leaves are commencing to show on the fig tree.’ That is prophetic.”

(The Leaves Are Commencing To Show on the Fig Tree, Bernard P. Brockbank, Apr 1976)

***11.4***

***EVENTS TO PRECEDE THE SECOND COMING***

**False prophets will falsely proclaim the Second Coming of Christ (JSM 1:22-26)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“For in those days there shall also arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders, insomuch, that, if possible, they shall deceive the very elect, who are the elect according to the covenant. Behold, I speak these things unto you for the elect’s sake; and you also shall hear of wars, and rumors of wars; see that ye be not troubled, for all I have told you must come to pass; but the end is not yet. Wherefore, if they shall say unto you: Behold, he is in the desert; go not forth: Behold, he is in the secret chambers; believe it not; For as the light of the morning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west, and covereth the whole earth, so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be.”

***NATURAL DISASTERS***

**Many burnings and earthquakes to take place at the Second Coming (Nahum 1:1-12)**

The burden of Nineveh. The book of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite.

“God is jealous, and the Lord revengeth; the Lord revengeth, and is furious; the Lord will take vengeance on his adversaries, and he reserveth wrath for his enemies. The Lord is slow to anger, and great in power, and will not at all acquit the wicked: the Lord hath his way in the whirlwind and in the storm, and the clouds are the dust of his feet. He rebuketh the sea, and maketh it dry, and drieth up all the rivers: Bashan languisheth, and Carmel, and the flower of Lebanon languisheth.

“The mountains quake at him, and the hills melt, and the earth is burned at his presence, yea, the world, and all that dwell therein. Who can stand before his indignation? And who can abide in the fierceness of his anger? His fury is poured out like fire, and the rocks are thrown down by him. The Lord is good, a strong hold in the day of trouble; and he knoweth them that trust in him.

“But with an overrunning flood he will make an utter end of the place thereof, and darkness shall pursue his enemies. What do ye imagine against the Lord? He will make an utter end: affliction shall not rise up the second time. For while they be folden together as thorns, and while they are drunken as drunkards, they shall be devoured as stubble fully dry. There is one come out of thee, that imagineth evil against the Lord, a wicked counsellor. Thus saith the Lord;

‘Though they be quiet, and likewise many, yet thus shall they be cut down, when he shall pass through. Though I have afflicted thee, I will afflict thee no more.”

**Great astronomical events (D&C 29:14; 34:8-9, D&C 45:40-42)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“But, behold, I say unto you that before this great day shall come the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall be turned into blood, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and there shall be greater signs in heaven above and in the earth beneath;

“And it shall be a great day at the time of my coming, for all nations shall tremble. But before that great day shall come, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon be turned into blood; and the stars shall refuse their shining, and some shall fall, and great destructions await the wicked.”

“And they shall see signs and wonders, for they shall be shown forth in the heavens above, and in the earth beneath. And they shall behold blood, and fire, and vapors of smoke. And before the day of the Lord shall come, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon be turned into blood, and the stars fall from heaven.”

**Massive earthquakes (D&C 45:33)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And there shall be earthquakes also in divers places, and many desolations; yet men will harden their hearts against me, and they will take up the sword, one against another, and they will kill one another.”

**Following the testimony of the prophets, apostles, and elders, the wrath of God will be unleashed (D&C 88:88-91)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And after your testimony cometh wrath and indignation upon the people. For after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes, that shall cause groanings in the midst of her, and men shall fall upon the ground and shall not be able to stand. And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea heaving themselves beyond their bounds. And all things shall be in commotion; and surely, men’s hearts shall fail them; for fear shall come upon all people.”

**God will hold back His judgments until the testimony of His servants has gone throughout the earth**

**(D&C 109:39-40)**

[And Joseph prayed, saying,]

“And whatsoever city thy servants shall enter, and the people of that city receive their testimony, let thy peace and thy salvation be upon that city; that they may gather out of that city the righteous, that they may come forth to Zion, or to her stakes, the places of thine appointment, with songs of everlasting joy; And until this be accomplished, let not thy judgments fall upon that city.”

**The Abomination of Desolation to take place in our generation, prior to major astronomical events (JSM 1:32-35)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“And again shall the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, be fulfilled. And immediately after the tribulation of those days, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of heaven shall be shaken. Verily, I say unto you, this generation, in which these things shall be shown forth, shall not pass away until all I have told you shall be fulfilled. Although, the days will come, that heaven and earth shall pass away; yet my words shall not pass away, but all shall be fulfilled.”

***THE ANGELS ARE GETTING READY***

**Angels are ready to begin reaping the righteous from the wicked, as the gospel grows throughout the earth**

**(D&C 86:4-7)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“But behold, in the last days, even now while the Lord is beginning to bring forth the word, and the blade is springing up and is yet tender— Behold, verily I say unto you, the angels are crying unto the Lord day and night, who are ready and waiting to be sent forth to reap down the fields; But the Lord saith unto them, pluck not up the tares while the blade is yet tender (for verily your faith is weak), lest you destroy the wheat also. Therefore, let the wheat and the tares grow together until the harvest is fully ripe; then ye shall first gather out the wheat from among the tares, and after the gathering of the wheat, behold and lo, the tares are bound in bundles, and the field remaineth to be burned.”

**Great signs in heaven will be seen as angels sound their trumps in preparation for the Second Coming (D&C 88:92-94)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And angels shall fly through the midst of heaven, crying with a loud voice, sounding the trump of God, saying: Prepare ye, prepare ye, O inhabitants of the earth; for the judgment of our God is come. Behold, and lo, the Bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. And immediately there shall appear a great sign in heaven, and all people shall see it together. And another angel shall sound his trump, saying: That great church, the mother of abominations, that made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, that persecuteth the saints of God, that shed their blood—she who sitteth upon many waters, and upon the islands of the sea—behold, she is the tares of the earth; she is bound in bundles; her bands are made strong, no man can loose them; therefore, she is ready to be burned. And he shall sound his trump both long and loud, and all nations shall hear it.”

**The angel of God declares the coming of the Bridegroom (D&C 133:16-17, 19)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Hearken and hear, O ye inhabitants of the earth. Listen, ye elders of my church together, and hear the voice of the Lord; for he calleth upon all men, and he commandeth all men everywhere to repent. For behold, the Lord God hath sent forth the angel crying through the midst of heaven, saying: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight, for the hour of his coming is nigh Wherefore, prepare ye for the coming of the Bridegroom; go ye, go ye out to meet him.”

**An angel to preside over a resurrection prior to the Second coming (D&C 45:45-47)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“But before the arm of the Lord shall fall, an angel shall sound his trump, and the saints that have slept shall come forth to meet me in the cloud. Wherefore, if ye have slept in peace blessed are you; for as you now behold me and know that I am, even so shall ye come unto me and your souls shall live, and your redemption shall be perfected; and the saints shall come forth from the four quarters of the earth. Then shall the arm of the Lord fall upon the nations.”

***SPECIFIC EVENTS YET TO COME***

**Great hailstorm (D&C 29:15-16)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And there shall be weeping and wailing among the hosts of men; And there shall be a great hailstorm sent forth to destroy the crops of the earth.”

**Desolating scourge to cover the land (D&C 29:17-20; 45:31-33)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass, because of the wickedness of the world, that I will take vengeance upon the wicked, for they will not repent; for the cup of mine indignation is full; for behold, my blood shall not cleanse them if they hear me not. Wherefore, I the Lord God will send forth flies upon the face of the earth, which shall take hold of the inhabitants thereof, and shall eat their flesh, and shall cause maggots to come in upon them; And their tongues shall be stayed that they shall not utter against me; and their flesh shall fall from off their bones, and their eyes from their sockets; And it shall come to pass that the beasts of the forest and the fowls of the air shall devour them up.

“And there shall be men standing in that generation, that shall not pass until they shall see an overflowing scourge; for a desolating sickness shall cover the land. But my disciples shall stand in holy places, and shall not be moved; but among the wicked, men shall lift up their voices and curse God and die.”

**Adam will return to the earth at Spring Hill, or Adam-ondi-Ahman before the Second Coming (D&C 116:1)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Spring Hill is named by the Lord Adam-ondi-Ahman, because, said he, it is the place where Adam shall come to visit his people, or the Ancient of Days shall sit, as spoken of by Daniel the prophet.”

**A descendant of Jesus Christ, Ephraim, and Joseph will rise with great power in the latter-days (D&C 113:3-4)**

Q: What is the rod spoken of in the [first verse of the 11th chapter of Isaiah](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/11.1?lang=eng#p1), that should come of the Stem of Jesse?

A:Behold, thus saith the Lord: It is a servant in the hands of Christ, who is partly a descendant of Jesse as well as of Ephraim, or of the house of Joseph, on whom there is laid much power.

**A descendant of Jesus Christ and Joseph will have birthright authority to the priesthood in the latter-days**

**(D&C 113:5-6)**

Q:What is the root of Jesse spoken of in the [10th verse of the 11th chapter](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/11.10?lang=eng#p10)?

A:Behold, thus saith the Lord, it is a descendant of Jesse, as well as of Joseph, unto whom rightly belongs the priesthood, and the keys of the kingdom, for an ensign, and for the gathering of my people in the last days.

**2 Prophets/apostles will be sent to Jerusalem to preach to the Jews prior to the Second Coming (D&C 77:15)**

Q. What is to be understood by the two witnesses, in the [eleventh chapter of Revelation](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/rev/11?lang=eng)?

A. They are two prophets that are to be raised up to the Jewish nation in the last days, at the time of the restoration, and to prophesy to the Jews after they are gathered and have built the city of Jerusalem in the land of their fathers.

**The land of Far West will have a temple and be a place of gathering for the Saints of Zion (D&C 115:7-10)**

[Thus said the Lord,]

“Let the city, Far West, be a holy and consecrated land unto me; and it shall be called most holy, for the ground upon which thou standest is holy. Therefore, I command you to build a house unto me, for the gathering together of my saints, that they may worship me. And let there be a beginning of this work, and a foundation, and a preparatory work, this following summer;

And let the beginning be made on the fourth day of July next; and from that time forth let my people labor diligently to build a house unto my name;”

***THE JEWS TO BUILD THE TEMPLE IN JERUSALEM***

**The building of the latter-day Temple in Jerusalem; Waters will flow from it which will heal the Dead Sea**

**(See Ezekiel 40-47)**

**Lands are named in Jerusalem for the tribes of Israel in Jerusalem, next to the newly built temple**

**(See Ezekiel 48)**

**The sons of Levi to make an offering in righteousness (Mal 3:2-3)**

[And Malachi prophesied, saying,]

“But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner’s fire, and like fullers’ soap: And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.”

**When John the Baptist gave the Aaronic Priesthood to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, he promised that the Priesthood would not be taken from the earth (from the Gentiles?) until the sons of Levi (direct descendants) offered an offering in righteousness (D&C 13:1)**

[And John the Baptist spake, saying,]

“Upon you my fellow servants, in the name of Messiah I confer the Priesthood of Aaron, which holds the keys of the ministering of angels, and of the gospel of repentance, and of baptism by immersion for the remission of sins; and this shall never be taken again from the earth, until the sons of Levi do offer again an offering unto the Lord in righteousness.”

**In the latter-days, literal descendants of Aaron will have a right to the priesthood of Aaron (D&C 68:13-18, 20-21; 107:13-16)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And now, concerning the items in addition to the covenants and commandments, they are these—

There remain hereafter, in the due time of the Lord, other bishops to be set apart unto the church, to minister even according to the first; Wherefore they shall be high priests who are worthy, and they shall be appointed by the First Presidency of the Melchizedek Priesthood, except they be literal descendants of Aaron.

“And if they be literal descendants of Aaron they have a legal right to the bishopric, if they are the firstborn among the sons of Aaron; For the firstborn holds the right of the presidency over this priesthood, and the keys or authority of the same. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant and the firstborn of Aaron. And a literal descendant of Aaron, also, must be designated by this Presidency, and found worthy, and anointed, and ordained under the hands of this Presidency, otherwise they are not legally authorized to officiate in their priesthood.

“But, by virtue of the decree concerning their right of the priesthood descending from father to son, they may claim their anointing if at any time they can prove their lineage, or do ascertain it by revelation from the Lord under the hands of the above named Presidency. The second priesthood is called the Priesthood of Aaron, because it was conferred upon Aaron and his seed, throughout all their generations. Why it is called the lesser priesthood is because it is an appendage to the greater, or the Melchizedek Priesthood, and has power in administering outward ordinances. The bishopric is the presidency of this priesthood, and holds the keys or authority of the same. No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant of Aaron.”

**In the latter-days, the sons of Moses and of Aaron will once again offer sacrifice in the Temple (D&C 84:31-32)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Therefore, as I said concerning the sons of Moses—for the sons of Moses and also the sons of Aaron shall offer an acceptable offering and sacrifice in the house of the Lord, which house shall be built unto the Lord in this generation, upon the consecrated spot as I have appointed— And the sons of Moses and of Aaron shall be filled with the glory of the Lord, upon Mount Zion in the Lord’s house, whose sons are ye; and also many whom I have called and sent forth to build up my church.”

**The Sons of Levi and their “Offering in Righteousness”**

Malachi, the last book and prophet of the Old Testament, gives a brief handful of prophecies, as well as words of exhortation, before ending his very short record. Most are familiar with his counsel to pay tithing, as well as his prophecy that Elijah will return prior to the Second Coming. But he also prophesies how the gospel will be restored and go forth to prepare the world for the Second Coming, and how the Savior will suddenly come to His Temple. But after this, he states that prior to the Second Coming, that the Lord will cleanse the world of wickedness. And prior to this cleansing, the sons of Levi will offer an offering unto the Lord in righteousness (Mal 3:3). This prophecy was given approximately 500 years before Christ. Then, over 2000 years later, when John the Baptist restored the Aaronic Priesthood to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery in 1829, he, too, mentioned the offering that the sons of Levi would give to the Lord prior to the Second Coming.

So, what exactly is this “offering by the sons of Levi?” Officially, the Church has no answer. However, there are some who believe that it will be the properly performed ritual of animal sacrifices done by pure-blood descendants of the tribe of Levi, once the Jews build their 3rd temple, prior to the Second Coming. In one case, it could be argued that they don’t have the priesthood to perform that ordinance, however, per D&C 68:13-21, we learn that direct descendants of Aaron have a right to officiate in that office. It’s possible that this ordinance is performed without “proper” priesthood authority, but done by “birthright” priesthood authority.

It’s also possible that this ordinance comes about in 1 of 2 possible ways. First, the Jews have the gospel preached to them, which leads to the performing of the ordinance after the building of the temple, or it is after the performance of such a sacred ordinance that the time is officially announced to then take the gospel from the Gentiles to the Jews.

**In the latter-days, Jerusalem will be rebuilt as a Holy City unto the Lord, built by, and for, the House of Israel (Ether 13:5)**

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel.

**The inhabitants of the rebuilt Jerusalem will be washed clean in the blood of the Lamb and gathered from the 4 corners of the earth and the north countries, partakers of the covenant between God and Abraham (Ether 13:11-12)**

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham. And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

***A DAY OF DESTRUCTION AND WRATH***

**The Lord will remove all wickedness from upon the earth (Mal 3:5)**

[And Malachi prophesied, saying,]

“And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger from his right, and fear not me, saith the Lord of hosts.”

**The prophecies of Moses and Malachi concerning the destruction of the wicked and the burning of the world is about to come to pass (D&C 133:63-64)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And upon them that hearken not to the voice of the Lord shall be fulfilled that which was written by the prophet Moses, that they should be cut off from among the people. And also that which was written by the prophet Malachi: For, behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven, and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.”

**The Day when the wrath of god is Poured out Upon the Wicked, God will Also Prepare A Way For All of His Covenants With Israel (1 Ne 14:17)**

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

**In the Latter-days the Wrath of God will Be Poured Out Upon the Children of Men. These Things Are Gonna Happen Soon:**

**(1 Ne 22:16, 18)**

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous. Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

**When the Wrath of God Is Poured Out, God Will Protect His People, Even If He Has to Send Down Fire From Heaven**

**(1 Ne 22:17, 19)**

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire. For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

**The destruction of Assyria parallels the destruction of the wicked at the Second Coming**

**(See Isaiah 10:1-19)**

**The destruction of Babylon is a parallel to the destruction of the wicked at the Second Coming**

**(See Isaiah 13:1-22)**

**The destruction of Nineveh will parallel the destruction of the wicked at the Second Coming**

**(See Nahum 2-3)**

**The destruction of the wicked to precede the Second Coming (2 Ne 30:9-10)**

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

**When the day of wrath arrives, only those who are of Israel, who have been gathered, will be saved and protected**

**(D&C 101:11-13)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Mine indignation is soon to be poured out without measure upon all nations; and this will I do when the cup of their iniquity is full. And in that day all who are found upon the watch-tower, or in other words, all mine Israel, shall be saved. And they that have been scattered shall be gathered.”

**Men will be destroyed for transgressing the law and the breaking the everlasting covenant**

**(See Isaiah 24:1-22)**

**When the people of God can no longer opportune the government for redress of wrongs and grievances, then the Lord will come out of His hiding place and vex the nation (D&C 101:81-91)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Now, unto what shall I liken the children of Zion? I will liken them unto the parable of the woman and the unjust judge, for men ought always to pray and not to faint, which saith—

‘There was in a city a judge which feared not God, neither regarded man. And there was a widow in that city, and she came unto him, saying:

‘Avenge me of mine adversary.’

‘And he would not for a while, but afterward he said within himself:

‘Though I fear not God, nor regard man, yet because this widow troubleth me I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me.’

“Thus will I liken the children of Zion. Let them importune at the feet of the judge; And if he heed them not, let them importune at the feet of the governor; And if the governor heed them not, let them importune at the feet of the president; And if the president heed them not, then will the Lord arise and come forth out of his hiding place, and in his fury vex the nation; And in his hot displeasure, and in his fierce anger, in his time, will cut off those wicked, unfaithful, and unjust stewards, and appoint them their portion among hypocrites, and unbelievers; Even in outer darkness, where there is weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth.”

**The Church of the Devil to be destroyed by fire (D&C 29:26-27)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And the great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall be cast down by devouring fire, according as it is spoken by the mouth of Ezekiel the prophet, who spoke of these things, which have not come to pass but surely must, as I live, for abominations shall not reign.”

***MASSIVE WORLD WARS***

**In the last days, all the inhabitants of the earth shall be at war**

**(See Jer 25:15-38)**

**War, desolation and astronomical signs to precede the Second Coming**

**(See Joel 2:1-11; Joel 3:1-15)**

**Wars to be poured out upon all nations (JSM 1:28-30)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“And they shall hear of wars, and rumors of wars. Behold I speak for mine elect’s sake; for nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places. And again, because iniquity shall abound, the love of men shall wax cold; but he that shall not be overcome, the same shall be saved.”

**Wars pronounced upon America (D&C 45:62-63)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“For verily I say unto you, that great things await you; Ye hear of wars in foreign lands; but, behold, I say unto you, they are nigh, even at your doors, and not many years hence ye shall hear of wars in your own lands.”

**The Lord has decreed wars throughout all the earth (D&C 63:33-35)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“I have sworn in my wrath, and decreed wars upon the face of the earth, and the wicked shall slay the wicked, and fear shall come upon every man; And the saints also shall hardly escape; nevertheless, I, the Lord, am with them, and will come down in heaven from the presence of my Father and consume the wicked with unquenchable fire. And behold, this is not yet, but by and by.”

**Civil War and other wars to envelope America and the world (D&C 87:1-8)**

Verily, thus saith the Lord concerning the wars that will shortly come to pass, beginning at the rebellion of South Carolina, which will eventually terminate in the death and misery of many souls;

“And the time will come that war will be poured out upon all nations, beginning at this place. For behold, the Southern States shall be divided against the Northern States, and the Southern States will call on other nations, even the nation of Great Britain, as it is called, and they shall also call upon other nations, in order to defend themselves against other nations; and then war shall be poured out upon all nations. And it shall come to pass, after many days, slaves shall rise up against their masters, who shall be marshaled and disciplined for war.

“And it shall come to pass also that the remnants who are left of the land will marshal themselves, and shall become exceedingly angry, and shall vex the Gentiles with a sore vexation. And thus, with the sword and by bloodshed the inhabitants of the earth shall mourn; and with famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven, and the fierce and vivid lightning also, shall the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God, until the consumption decreed hath made a full end of all nations;

“That the cry of the saints, and of the blood of the saints, shall cease to come up into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, from the earth, to be avenged of their enemies. Wherefore, stand ye in holy places, and be not moved, until the day of the Lord come; for behold, it cometh quickly, saith the Lord. Amen.”

**All nations will be at battle with the inhabitants of Jerusalem (Zech 12:1-8)**

The burden of the word of the Lord for Israel, saith the Lord, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him.

“Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling unto all the people round about, when they shall be in the siege both against Judah and against Jerusalem. And in that day will I make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people: all that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces, though all the people of the earth be gathered together against it. In that day…I will smite every horse with astonishment, and his rider with madness: and I will open mine eyes upon the house of Judah, and will smite every horse of the people with blindness.

“And the governors of Judah shall say in their heart, The inhabitants of Jerusalem shall be my strength in the Lord of hosts their God. In that day will I make the governors of Judah like an hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left: and Jerusalem shall be inhabited again in her own place, even in Jerusalem. The Lord also shall save the tents of Judah first, that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem do not magnify themselves against Judah. In that day shall the Lord defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and he that is feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David shall be as God, as the angel of the Lord before them.”

**The battle of Gog and Magog against Israel shall usher in the Second Coming (Ezekiel 38:1-16)**

And the word of the Lord came unto me, saying,

“Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him, And say,

‘Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: And I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords: Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them; all of them with shield and helmet: Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarters, and all his bands: and many people with thee.

‘Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself, thou, and all thy company that are assembled unto thee, and be thou a guard unto them. After many days thou shalt be visited: in the latter years thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them.

‘Thou shalt ascend and come like a storm, thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land, thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee…It shall also come to pass, that at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and thou shalt think an evil thought:

“And thou shalt say,

‘I will go up to the land of unwalled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates, To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land. Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto thee,

‘Art thou come to take a spoil? Hast thou gathered thy company to take a prey? To carry away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil?’

“Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog,

‘Thus saith the Lord God;

‘In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shalt thou not know it? And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army: And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes.

***11.5***

***THE NEW JERUSALEM***

**The Saints are to prepare for the marriage supper of the Lamb and the Supper of the Lord, to take place at the New Jerusalem (D&C 58:6-12)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Behold, verily I say unto you, for this cause I have sent you—that you might be obedient, and that your hearts might be prepared to bear testimony of the things which are to come; And also that you might be honored in laying the foundation, and in bearing record of the land upon which the Zion of God shall stand;

And also that a feast of fat things might be prepared for the poor; yea, a feast of fat things, of wine on the lees well refined, that the earth may know that the mouths of the prophets shall not fail;

“Yea, a supper of the house of the Lord, well prepared, unto which all nations shall be invited. First, the rich and the learned, the wise and the noble; And after that cometh the day of my power; then shall the poor, the lame, and the blind, and the deaf, come in unto the marriage of the Lamb, and partake of the supper of the Lord, prepared for the great day to come. Behold, I, the Lord, have spoken it.”

**Ether saw the New Jerusalem in vision, being built upon the American Continent (Ether 13:2-4, 6-8)**

[And Ether prophesied, saying,]

“For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof; And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

“Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land. And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type. For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

“Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.”

**The New Jerusalem to be built upon the borders of Lamanite lands (D&C 28:9-10)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And now, behold, I say unto you that it is not revealed, and no man knoweth where the city Zion shall be built, but it shall be given hereafter. Behold, I say unto you that it shall be on the borders by the Lamanites. Thou shalt not leave this place until after the conference; and my servant Joseph shall be appointed to preside over the conference by the voice of it, and what he saith to thee thou shalt tell.”

**The New Jerusalem is to be in Independence, Missouri (D&C 57:1-3; D&C 84:1-5)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Hearken, O ye elders of my church, saith the Lord your God, who have assembled yourselves together, according to my commandments, in this land, which is the land of Missouri, which is the land which I have appointed and consecrated for the gathering of the saints. Wherefore, this is the land of promise, and the place for the city of Zion. And thus saith the Lord your God, if you will receive wisdom here is wisdom. Behold, the place which is now called Independence is the center place; and a spot for the temple is lying westward, upon a lot which is not far from the courthouse.”

**The sons of Jacob/Israel will build the New Jerusalem (D&C 109:58)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“That from among all these, thy servants, the sons of Jacob, may gather out the righteous to build a holy city to thy name, as thou hast commanded them.”

**Lehi’s descendants will build the New Jerusalem in the latter-days (3 Ne 20:22)**

[And Jesus spake unto them, saying,]

“And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.”

**After the cleansing of America (& the Gentiles), then will the 10 Tribes gather in the New Jerusalem & missionary work will rapidly increase (3 Ne 21:22-29)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance; And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem. And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

“And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst. And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

“Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name. Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance. And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.”

**Scattered Israel will be restored to the land of Zion, the New Jerusalem (D&C 103:13)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Behold, this is the blessing which I have promised after your tribulations, and the tribulations of your brethren—your redemption, and the redemption of your brethren, even their restoration to the land of Zion, to be established, no more to be thrown down.”

**Gentiles are to be gathered in the New Jerusalem while the Jews are to be gathered in Jerusalem (D&C 133:12-13)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Let them, therefore, who are among the Gentiles flee unto Zion. And let them who be of Judah flee unto Jerusalem, unto the mountains of the Lord’s house.”

**The people who will reside in the New Jerusalem will be the people of God, presided over by Jesus Christ (D&C 42:9)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Until the time shall come when it shall be revealed unto you from on high, when the city of the New Jerusalem shall be prepared, that ye may be gathered in one, that ye may be my people and I will be your God.”

**The pure in heart will dwell in Zion, the New Jerusalem (D&C 97:21)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Therefore, verily, thus saith the Lord, let Zion rejoice, for this is Zion—the pure in heart; therefore, let Zion rejoice, while all the wicked shall mourn.”

**The righteous from every nation will be gathered in the New Jerusalem prior to the Second Coming (D&C 45:66-71)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And it shall be called the New Jerusalem, a land of peace, a city of refuge, a place of safety for the saints of the Most High God; And the glory of the Lord shall be there, and the terror of the Lord also shall be there, insomuch that the wicked will not come unto it, and it shall be called Zion. And it shall come to pass among the wicked, that every man that will not take his sword against his neighbor must needs flee unto Zion for safety.

“And there shall be gathered unto it out of every nation under heaven; and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another. And it shall be said among the wicked: Let us not go up to battle against Zion, for the inhabitants of Zion are terrible; wherefore we cannot stand. And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion, singing with songs of everlasting joy.”

**Life in the New Jerusalem is described (Ether 13:9-10)**

[And Ether prophesied, saying,]

“And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new. And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.”

**Life in the New Jerusalem (D&C 63:49)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Yea, and blessed are the dead that die in the Lord, from henceforth, when the Lord shall come, and old things shall pass away, and all things become new, they shall rise from the dead and shall not die after, and shall receive an inheritance before the Lord, in the holy city.”

**The nations of the earth will honor Zion, the New Jerusalem, which God will protect (D&C 97:19-20)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And the nations of the earth shall honor her, and shall say: Surely Zion is the city of our God, and surely Zion cannot fall, neither be moved out of her place, for God is there, and the hand of the Lord is there; And he hath sworn by the power of his might to be her salvation and her high tower.”

**The great scourge to cover the earth, while the inhabitants of Zion are protected (D&C 97:22-25)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“For behold, and lo, vengeance cometh speedily upon the ungodly as the whirlwind; and who shall escape it? The Lord’s scourge shall pass over by night and by day, and the report thereof shall vex all people; yea, it shall not be stayed until the Lord come; For the indignation of the Lord is kindled against their abominations and all their wicked works. Nevertheless, Zion shall escape if she observe to do all things whatsoever I have commanded her.”

***11.6***

***UNDERSTANDING THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST***

**A great sign in the heavens to come shortly before the Second Coming (JSM 1:36)**

[And Jesus spake, saying,]

“And, as I said before, after the tribulation of those days, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken, then shall appear the sign of the Son of Man in heaven, and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn; and they shall see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven, with power and great glory;”

**Christ’s Second Coming will come as surely as the flood of Noah came: the elements will pass away when it happens**

**(2 Peter 3:5-10)**

[And Peter spake, saying,]

“For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water: Whereby the world that then was, being overflowed with water, perished: But the heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men. But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day. The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance. But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.”

**The Second Coming WILL NOT come as a thief in the night to the children of light (D&C 106:4-5)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And again, verily I say unto you, the coming of the Lord draweth nigh, and it overtaketh the world as a thief in the night—Therefore, gird up your loins, that you may be the children of light, and that day shall not overtake you as a thief.”

**When the Second Coming happens, the parable of the ten virgins will be fulfilled (D&C 45:56-59)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And at that day, when I shall come in my glory, shall the parable be fulfilled which I spake concerning the ten virgins. For they that are wise and have received the truth, and have taken the Holy Spirit for their guide, and have not been deceived—verily I say unto you, they shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire, but shall abide the day. And the earth shall be given unto them for an inheritance; and they shall multiply and wax strong, and their children shall grow up without sin unto salvation. For the Lord shall be in their midst, and his glory shall be upon them, and he will be their king and their lawgiver.”

**The sounding of the Trumps upon the Second Coming (D&C 88:100-116)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And again, another trump shall sound, which is the third trump; and then come the spirits of men who are to be judged, and are found under condemnation; And these are the rest of the dead; and they live not again until the thousand years are ended, neither again, until the end of the earth. And another trump shall sound, which is the fourth trump, saying: There are found among those who are to remain until that great and last day, even the end, who shall remain filthy still. And another trump shall sound, which is the fifth trump, which is the fifth angel who committeth the everlasting gospel—flying through the midst of heaven, unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people;

“And this shall be the sound of his trump, saying to all people, both in heaven and in earth, and that are under the earth—for every ear shall hear it, and every knee shall bow, and every tongue shall confess, while they hear the sound of the trump, saying: Fear God, and give glory to him who sitteth upon the throne, forever and ever; for the hour of his judgment is come. And again, another angel shall sound his trump, which is the sixth angel, saying: She is fallen who made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication; she is fallen, is fallen! And again, another angel shall sound his trump, which is the seventh angel, saying: It is finished; it is finished! The Lamb of God hath overcome and trodden the wine-press alone, even the wine-press of the fierceness of the wrath of Almighty God.

“And then shall the angels be crowned with the glory of his might, and the saints shall be filled with his glory, and receive their inheritance and be made equal with him. And then shall the first angel again sound his trump in the ears of all living, and reveal the secret acts of men, and the mighty works of God in the first thousand years. And then shall the second angel sound his trump, and reveal the secret acts of men, and the thoughts and intents of their hearts, and the mighty works of God in the second thousand years—

“And so on, until the seventh angel shall sound his trump; and he shall stand forth upon the land and upon the sea, and swear in the name of him who sitteth upon the throne, that there shall be time no longer; and Satan shall be bound, that old serpent, who is called the devil, and shall not be loosed for the space of a thousand years. And then he shall be loosed for a little season, that he may gather together his armies.

And Michael, the seventh angel, even the archangel, shall gather together his armies, even the hosts of heaven.

“And the devil shall gather together his armies; even the hosts of hell, and shall come up to battle against Michael and his armies. And then cometh the battle of the great God; and the devil and his armies shall be cast away into their own place, that they shall not have power over the saints any more at all. For Michael shall fight their battles, and shall overcome him who seeketh the throne of him who sitteth upon the throne, even the Lamb. This is the glory of God, and the sanctified; and they shall not anymore see death.”

**All wickedness will be destroyed when the Savior appears at the Second Coming (D&C 101:24-26)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And every corruptible thing, both of man, or of the beasts of the field, or of the fowls of the heavens, or of the fish of the sea, that dwells upon all the face of the earth, shall be consumed; And also that of element shall melt with fervent heat; and all things shall become new, that my knowledge and glory may dwell upon all the earth. And in that day the enmity of man, and the enmity of beasts, yea, the enmity of all flesh, shall cease from before my face.”

**The Lord will return to the earth in anger and devouring fire upon the wicked (Isaiah 30:27-33; Isaiah 33:13-14)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“Behold, the name of the Lord cometh from far, burning with his anger, and the burden thereof is heavy: his lips are full of indignation, and his tongue as a devouring fire: And his breath, as an overflowing stream, shall reach to the midst of the neck, to sift the nations with the sieve of vanity: and there shall be a bridle in the jaws of the people, causing them to err. Ye shall have a song, as in the night when a holy solemnity is kept; and gladness of heart, as when one goeth with a pipe to come into the mountain of the Lord, to the mighty One of Israel.

“And the Lord shall cause his glorious voice to be heard, and shall shew the lighting down of his arm, with the indignation of his anger, and with the flame of a devouring fire, with scattering, and tempest, and hailstones. For through the voice of the Lord shall the Assyrian be beaten down, which smote with a rod.

And in every place where the grounded staff shall pass, which the Lord shall lay upon him, it shall be with tabrets and harps: and in battles of shaking will he fight with it.

“For Tophet is ordained of old; yea, for the king it is prepared; he hath made it deep and large: the pile thereof is fire and much wood; the breath of the Lord, like a stream of brimstone, doth kindle it. Hear, ye that are far off, what I have done; and, ye that are near, acknowledge my might. The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings?”

**The Second Coming will be a day of vengeance and judgment upon the wicked (Isaiah 34:1-17; Isaiah 63:1-14)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“Come near, ye nations, to hear; and hearken, ye people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein; the world, and all things that come forth of it. For the indignation of the Lord is upon all nations, and his fury upon all their armies: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter. Their slain also shall be cast out, and their stink shall come up out of their carcases, and the mountains shall be melted with their blood. And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree.

“For my sword shall be bathed in heaven: behold, it shall come down upon Idumea, and upon the people of my curse, to judgment. The sword of the Lord is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, and with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams: for the Lord hath a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea. And the unicorns shall come down with them, and the bullocks with the bulls; and their land shall be soaked with blood, and their dust made fat with fatness. For it is the day of the Lord’s vengeance, and the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion.

“And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone, and the land thereof shall become burning pitch. It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it for ever and ever. But the cormorant and the bittern shall possess it; the owl also and the raven shall dwell in it: and he shall stretch out upon it the line of confusion, and the stones of emptiness. They shall call the nobles thereof to the kingdom, but none shall be there, and all her princes shall be nothing.

“And thorns shall come up in her palaces, nettles and brambles in the fortresses thereof: and it shall be an habitation of dragons, and a court for owls. The wild beasts of the desert shall also meet with the wild beasts of the island, and the satyr shall cry to his fellow; the screech owl also shall rest there, and find for herself a place of rest. There shall the great owl make her nest, and lay, and hatch, and gather under her shadow: there shall the vultures also be gathered, every one with her mate.

“Seek ye out of the book of the Lord, and read: no one of these shall fail, none shall want her mate: for my mouth it hath commanded, and his spirit it hath gathered them. And he hath cast the lot for them, and his hand hath divided it unto them by line: they shall possess it for ever, from generation to generation shall they dwell therein.

“Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save. Wherefore art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat? I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment.

“For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me. And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth. I will mention the loving kindnesses of the Lord, and the praises of the Lord, according to all that the Lord hath bestowed on us, and the great goodness toward the house of Israel, which he hath bestowed on them according to his mercies, and according to the multitude of his loving kindnesses. For he said,

‘Surely they are my people, children that will not lie:’

So he was their Saviour. In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them. Then he remembered the days of old, Moses, and his people, saying, Where is he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherd of his flock? where is he that put his holy Spirit within him?

“That led them by the right hand of Moses with his glorious arm, dividing the water before them, to make himself an everlasting name? That led them through the deep, as an horse in the wilderness, that they should not stumble? As a beast goeth down into the valley, the Spirit of the Lord caused him to rest: so didst thou lead thy people, to make thyself a glorious name.”

**The wicked will be afraid of the Lord at His Second Coming (D&C 45:74-75)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“For when the Lord shall appear he shall be terrible unto them, that fear may seize upon them, and they shall stand afar off and tremble. And all nations shall be afraid because of the terror of the Lord, and the power of his might. Even so. Amen.”

**All the wicked and proud will be burned and the righteous protected and gathered (Mal 4:1-3)**

[And Malachi prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying,]

“For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of hosts.”

**Christ will punish the ungodly and glorify His saints (2 Thess 1:7-10; Heb 9:28)**

[And Paul prophesied, saying]

“And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.”

***11.7***

***THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST***

**Following the half hour of silence in heaven, the face of the Lord will be unveiled, many saints quickened (translated?), and many of the dead will be resurrected (D&C 88:95-99)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And there shall be silence in heaven for the space of half an hour; and immediately after shall the curtain of heaven be unfolded, as a scroll is unfolded after it is rolled up, and the face of the Lord shall be unveiled;

And the saints that are upon the earth, who are alive, shall be quickened and be caught up to meet him.

And they who have slept in their graves shall come forth, for their graves shall be opened; and they also shall be caught up to meet him in the midst of the pillar of heaven—

“They are Christ’s, the first fruits, they who shall descend with him first, and they who are on the earth and in their graves, who are first caught up to meet him; and all this by the voice of the sounding of the trump of the angel of God. And after this another angel shall sound, which is the second trump; and then cometh the redemption of those who are Christ’s at his coming; who have received their part in that prison which is prepared for them, that they might receive the gospel, and be judged according to men in the flesh.”

**Jesus Christ will return amidst war; the world will shake at His presence (Ezekiel 38:17-23; Joel 3:9-21; Zeph 3:1-8)**

Thus saith the Lord God;

“Art thou he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days many years that I would bring thee against them? And it shall come to pass at the same time when Gog shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord God, that my fury shall come up in my face.

For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath have I spoken, Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel;

“So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord God: every man’s sword shall be against his brother.

“And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone.

Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the Lord.”

[And Joel prophesied, saying,]

“Egypt shall be a desolation, and Edom shall be a desolate wilderness, for the violence against the children of Judah, because they have shed innocent blood in their land. But Judah shall dwell for ever, and Jerusalem from generation to generation. For I will cleanse their blood that I have not cleansed: for the Lord dwelleth in Zion.”

[And Zephaniah prophesied, saying,]

“Woe to her that is filthy and polluted, to the oppressing city! She obeyed not the voice; she received not correction; she trusted not in the Lord; she drew not near to her God. Her princes within her are roaring lions; her judges are evening wolves; they gnaw not the bones till the morrow. Her prophets are light and treacherous persons: her priests have polluted the sanctuary, they have done violence to the law. The just Lord is in the midst thereof; he will not do iniquity: every morning doth he bring his judgment to light, he faileth not; but the unjust knoweth no shame.

“I have cut off the nations: their towers are desolate; I made their streets waste, that none passeth by: their cities are destroyed, so that there is no man, that there is none inhabitant. I said,

‘Surely thou wilt fear me, thou wilt receive instruction; so their dwelling should not be cut off, howsoever I punished them: but they rose early, and corrupted all their doings.’

“Therefore wait ye upon me, saith the Lord, until the day that I rise up to the prey: for my determination is to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, even all my fierce anger: for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy.”

**At the Second Coming, the Lord will fight for Israel and will destroy all plagues upon the earth (Zech 14:1-21)**

[And Zechariah prophesied, saying,]

“Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, and thy spoil shall be divided in the midst of thee. For I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half of the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the people shall not be cut off from the city. Then shall the Lord go forth, and fight against those nations, as when he fought in the day of battle. And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east, and the mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east and toward the west, and there shall be a very great valley; and half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south.

“And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains; for the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal: yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled from before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah: and the Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the light shall not be clear, nor dark: But it shall be one day which shall be known to the Lord, not day, nor night: but it shall come to pass, that at evening time it shall be light. And it shall be in that day, that living waters shall go out from Jerusalem; half of them toward the former sea, and half of them toward the hinder sea: in summer and in winter shall it be.

“And the Lord shall be king over all the earth: in that day shall there be one Lord, and his name one.

All the land shall be turned as a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem: and it shall be lifted up, and inhabited in her place, from Benjamin’s gate unto the place of the first gate, unto the corner gate, and from the tower of Hananeel unto the king’s winepresses. And men shall dwell in it, and there shall be no more utter destruction; but Jerusalem shall be safely inhabited. And this shall be the plague wherewith the Lord will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth.

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that a great tumult from the Lord shall be among them; and they shall lay hold every one on the hand of his neighbour, and his hand shall rise up against the hand of his neighbour. And Judah also shall fight at Jerusalem; and the wealth of all the heathen round about shall be gathered together, gold, and silver, and apparel, in great abundance. And so shall be the plague of the horse, of the mule, of the camel, and of the ass, and of all the beasts that shall be in these tents, as this plague. And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles.

“And it shall be, that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain. And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, that have no rain; there shall be the plague, wherewith the Lord will smite the heathen that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles. This shall be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles. In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD; and the pots in the Lord’s house shall be like the bowls before the altar. Yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the Lord of hosts: and all they that sacrifice shall come and take of them, and seethe therein: and in that day there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the Lord of hosts.”

**Gog and Magog will be destroyed (Ezekiel 39:1-10)**

Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say,

“Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal:

And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause thee to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel: And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand. Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured. Thou shalt fall upon the open field: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God. And I will send a fire on Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles: and they shall know that I am the Lord.

“So will I make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel; and I will not let them pollute my holy name any more: and the heathen shall know that I am the Lord, the Holy One in Israel. Behold, it is come, and it is done, saith the Lord God; this is the day whereof I have spoken. And they that dwell in the cities of Israel shall go forth, and shall set on fire and burn the weapons, both the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the handstaves, and the spears, and they shall burn them with fire seven years: So that they shall take no wood out of the field, neither cut down any out of the forests; for they shall burn the weapons with fire: and they shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord God.”

**What Christ will be wearing and what He will say at the Second Coming (D&C 133:49-52)**

[And the Lord prophesied, saying,]

“And so great shall be the glory of his presence that the sun shall hide his face in shame, and the moon shall withhold its light, and the stars shall be hurled from their places. And his voice shall be heard: I have trodden the wine-press alone, and have brought judgment upon all people; and none were with me; And I have trampled them in my fury, and I did tread upon them in mine anger, and their blood have I sprinkled upon my garments, and stained all my raiment; for this was the day of vengeance which was in my heart. And now the year of my redeemed is come; and they shall mention the loving kindness of their Lord, and all that he has bestowed upon them according to his goodness, and according to his loving kindness, forever and ever.”

**An earthquake will happen at t he Second Coming of the Lord (D&C 45:48-50)**

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And then shall the Lord set his foot upon this mount, and it shall cleave in twain, and the earth shall tremble, and reel to and fro, and the heavens also shall shake. And the Lord shall utter his voice, and all the ends of the earth shall hear it; and the nations of the earth shall mourn, and they that have laughed shall see their folly. And calamity shall cover the mocker, and the scorner shall be consumed; and they that have watched for iniquity shall be hewn down and cast into the fire.”

**At the Second Coming, a great earthquake will cause all the lands of the earth to become one land mass (D&C 133:20-24)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“For behold, he shall stand upon the mount of Olivet, and upon the mighty ocean, even the great deep, and upon the islands of the sea, and upon the land of Zion. And he shall utter his voice out of Zion, and he shall speak from Jerusalem, and his voice shall be heard among all people; And it shall be a voice as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder, which shall break down the mountains, and the valleys shall not be found. He shall command the great deep, and it shall be driven back into the north countries, and the islands shall become one land; And the land of Jerusalem and the land of Zion shall be turned back into their own place, and the earth shall be like as it was in the days before it was divided.”

**Following the great earthquake at the Second Coming, those scattered of Israel will return from the North countries; the land will be healed (D&C 133:25-29)**

“And the Lord, even the Savior, shall stand in the midst of his people, and shall reign over all flesh. And they who are in the north countries shall come in remembrance before the Lord; and their prophets shall hear his voice, and shall no longer stay themselves; and they shall smite the rocks, and the ice shall flow down at their presence. And an highway shall be cast up in the midst of the great deep. Their enemies shall become a prey unto them, And in the barren deserts there shall come forth pools of living water; and the parched ground shall no longer be a thirsty land.”

**The scattered remnants of Israel returning from the North will give their treasures with to the children of Ephraim and be ordained of them (D&C 133:30-35)**

“And they shall bring forth their rich treasures unto the children of Ephraim, my servants. And the boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence. And there shall they fall down and be crowned with glory, even in Zion, by the hands of the servants of the Lord, even the children of Ephraim. And they shall be filled with songs of everlasting joy. Behold, this is the blessing of the everlasting God upon the tribes of Israel, and the richer blessing upon the head of Ephraim and his fellows. And they also of the tribe of Judah, after their pain, shall be sanctified in holiness before the Lord, to dwell in his presence day and night, forever and ever.”

**What many will see and say when the Savior comes again (D&C 133:42-46)**

‘[And the servants of God shall say,]

‘O Lord, thou shalt come down to make thy name known to thine adversaries, and all nations shall tremble at thy presence— When thou doest terrible things, things they look not for; Yea, when thou comest down, and the mountains flow down at thy presence, thou shalt meet him who rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, who remembereth thee in thy ways. For since the beginning of the world have not men heard nor perceived by the ear, neither hath any eye seen, O God, besides thee, how great things thou hast prepared for him that waiteth for thee.’

“And it shall be said:

‘Who is this that cometh down from God in heaven with dyed garments; yea, from the regions which are not known, clothed in his glorious apparel, traveling in the greatness of his strength?’

**At the Second Coming, the Lord will stand with the 144,000 (D&C 133:18)**

“When the Lamb shall stand upon Mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand, having his Father’s name written on their foreheads.”

**The 144,000…12,000 from every tribe of Israel…are High Priests (D&C 77:11)**

Q. What are we to understand by sealing the one hundred and forty-four thousand, out of all the tribes of Israel— twelve thousand out of every tribe?

A. We are to understand that those who are sealed are high priests, ordained unto the holy order of God, to administer the everlasting gospel; for they are they who are ordained out of every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, by the angels to whom is given power over the nations of the earth, to bring as many as will come to the church of the Firstborn.

**At the Second Coming, the Jews will be surprised that Jesus is the Messiah (D&C 45:51-53)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And then shall the Jews look upon me and say: What are these wounds in thine hands and in thy feet? Then shall they know that I am the Lord; for I will say unto them: These wounds are the wounds with which I was wounded in the house of my friends. I am he who was lifted up. I am Jesus that was crucified. I am the Son of God. And then shall they weep because of their iniquities; then shall they lament because they persecuted their king.”

**Many prophets of old, including Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and many resurrected, will accompany the Savior at the Second Coming (D&C 133:53-56)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“In all their afflictions he was afflicted. And the angel of his presence saved them; and in his love, and in his pity, he redeemed them, and bore them, and carried them all the days of old; Yea, and Enoch also, and they who were with him; the prophets who were before him; and Noah also, and they who were before him; and Moses also, and they who were before him; And from Moses to Elijah, and from Elijah to John, who were with Christ in his resurrection, and the holy apostles, with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, shall be in the presence of the Lamb. And the graves of the saints shall be opened; and they shall come forth and stand on the right hand of the Lamb, when he shall stand upon Mount Zion, and upon the holy city, the New Jerusalem; and they shall sing the song of the Lamb, day and night forever and ever.”

**The Jews will mourn for their killing of the Savior (Zech 12:9-14; Zech 13:1-6)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon.

“And the land shall mourn, every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart; The family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart; All the families that remain, every family apart, and their wives apart. In that day there shall be a fountain opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin and for uncleanness.

“And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord of hosts, that I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall no more be remembered: and also I will cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land. And it shall come to pass, that when any shall yet prophesy, then his father and his mother that begat him shall say unto him, Thou shalt not live; for thou speakest lies in the name of the Lord: and his father and his mother that begat him shall thrust him through when he prophesieth.

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that the prophets shall be ashamed every one of his vision, when he hath prophesied; neither shall they wear a rough garment to deceive: But he shall say,

‘I am no prophet, I am an husbandman; for man taught me to keep cattle from my youth.’

“And one shall say unto him,

‘What are these wounds in thine hands?’

“Then he shall answer,

‘Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends.”

**Those who are alive at the Second Coming, their posterity will inherit the earth forever (D&C 56:19-20)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“For behold, the Lord shall come, and his recompense shall be with him, and he shall reward every man, and the poor shall rejoice; And their generations shall inherit the earth from generation to generation, forever and ever. And now I make an end of speaking unto you. Even so. Amen.”

**Some appointed to die after the Second Coming; Children to be translated (D&C 63:50-51)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And he that liveth when the Lord shall come, and hath kept the faith, blessed is he; nevertheless, it is appointed to him to die at the age of man. Wherefore, children shall grow up until they become old; old men shall die; but they shall not sleep in the dust, but they shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye.”

**In the latter-days, Christ will partake of the sacrament with Joseph Smith and other past prophets (D&C 27:5-12)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Behold, this is wisdom in me; wherefore, marvel not, for the hour cometh that I will drink of the fruit of the vine with you on the earth, and with Moroni, whom I have sent unto you to reveal the Book of Mormon, containing the fulness of my everlasting gospel, to whom I have committed the keys of the record of the stick of Ephraim; And also with Elias, to whom I have committed the keys of bringing to pass the restoration of all things spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets since the world began, concerning the last days;

“And also John the son of Zacharias, which Zacharias he (Elias) visited and gave promise that he should have a son, and his name should be John, and he should be filled with the spirit of Elias; Which John I have sent unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jun., and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you unto the first priesthood which you have received, that you might be called and ordained even as Aaron; And also Elijah, unto whom I have committed the keys of the power of turning the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to the fathers, that the whole earth may not be smitten with a curse;

“And also with Joseph and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, your fathers, by whom the promises remain;

And also with Michael, or Adam, the father of all, the prince of all, the ancient of days; And also with Peter, and James, and John, whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you and confirmed you to be apostles, and especial witnesses of my name, and bear the keys of your ministry and of the same things which I revealed unto them;”

**Gog and Magog will burn their weapons of war for seven years and bury their dead for 7 months after the Savior comes**

**(Ezekiel 39:11-16)**

[And Ezekiel prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will give unto Gog a place there of graves in Israel, the valley of the passengers on the east of the sea: and it shall stop the noses of the passengers: and there shall they bury Gog and all his multitude: and they shall call it The valley of Hamon-gog. And seven months shall the house of Israel be burying of them, that they may cleanse the land. Yea, all the people of the land shall bury them; and it shall be to them a renown the day that I shall be glorified, saith the Lord God.

“And they shall sever out men of continual employment, passing through the land to bury with the passengers those that remain upon the face of the earth, to cleanse it: after the end of seven months shall they search. And the passengers that pass through the land, when any seeth a man’s bone, then shall he set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the valley of Hamon-gog. And also the name of the city shall be Hamonah. Thus shall they cleanse the land.”

**Following the repentance of Gog and Magog, the supper of the great God will commence (Ezekiel 39:17-22)**

“And, thou son of man, thus saith the Lord God; Speak unto every feathered fowl, and to every beast of the field, Assemble yourselves, and come; gather yourselves on every side to my sacrifice that I do sacrifice for you, even a great sacrifice upon the mountains of Israel, that ye may eat flesh, and drink blood. Ye shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth, of rams, of lambs, and of goats, of bullocks, all of them fatlings of Bashan.

“And ye shall eat fat till ye be full, and drink blood till ye be drunken, of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you. Thus ye shall be filled at my table with horses and chariots, with mighty men, and with all men of war, saith the Lord God. And I will set my glory among the heathen, and all the heathen shall see my judgment that I have executed, and my hand that I have laid upon them. So the house of Israel shall know that I am the Lord their God from that day and forward.”

**The remnant of the House of Israel will be the Lord’s (Zech 13:7-9)**

[And Zechariah prophesied, saying,]

“Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones. And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the Lord, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein. And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The Lord is my God.”

**Israel will be gathered as a nation (Isaiah 66:1-18)**

Thus saith the Lord,

“The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool: where is the house that ye build unto me? and where is the place of my rest? For all those things hath mine hand made, and all those things have been, but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at my word. He that killeth an ox is as if he slew a man; he that sacrificeth a lamb, as if he cut off a dog’s neck; he that offereth an oblation, as if he offered swine’s blood; he that burneth incense, as if he blessed an idol. Yea, they have chosen their own ways, and their soul delighteth in their abominations.

“I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not. Hear the word of the Lord, ye that tremble at his word; Your brethren that hated you, that cast you out for my name’s sake, said, Let the Lord be glorified: but he shall appear to your joy, and they shall be ashamed. A voice of noise from the city, a voice from the temple, a voice of the Lord that rendereth recompence to his enemies.

“Before she travailed, she brought forth; before her pain came, she was delivered of a man child.

Who hath heard such a thing? Who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? Or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.

Shall I bring to the birth, and not cause to bring forth? Shall I cause to bring forth, and shut the womb? Saith thy God. Rejoice ye with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, all ye that love her: rejoice for joy with her, all ye that mourn for her: That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory.

“Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river, and the glory of the Gentiles like a flowing stream: then shall ye suck, ye shall be borne upon her sides, and be dandled upon her knees. As one whom his mother comforteth, so will I comfort you; and ye shall be comforted in Jerusalem. And when ye see this, your heart shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like an herb: and the hand of the Lord shall be known toward his servants, and his indignation toward his enemies.

“For, behold, the Lord will come with fire, and with his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with fury, and his rebuke with flames of fire. For by fire and by his sword will the Lord plead with all flesh: and the slain of the Lord shall be many. They that sanctify themselves, and purify themselves in the gardens behind one tree in the midst, eating swine’s flesh, and the abomination, and the mouse, shall be consumed together, saith the Lord. For I know their works and their thoughts: it shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.”

***11.8***

***LIFE DURING THE MILLENNIUM***

**Moroni quotes Isaiah 11 to Joseph Smith, concerning the Millennium (JSH 1:40;)**

In addition to these, he quoted the eleventh chapter of [Isaiah](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/ot/isa/11?lang=eng), saying that it was about to be fulfilled. He quoted also the [third chapter of Acts, twenty-second and twenty-third verses](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/scriptures/nt/acts/3.22-23?lang=eng#p22), precisely as they stand in our New Testament. He said that that prophet was Christ; but the day had not yet come when “they who would not hear his voice should be cut off from among the people,” but soon would come.

**Isaiah 11:1-9**

“And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord; And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

“But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins. The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

“And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’ den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

**Christ will soon return to the earth and reign during the Millennium (D&C 43:30)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“For the great Millennium, of which I have spoken by the mouth of my servants, shall come.”

**The earth will one day be transfigured (D&C 63:20-21)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Nevertheless, he that endureth in faith and doeth my will, the same shall overcome, and shall receive an inheritance upon the earth when the day of transfiguration shall come; When the earth shall be transfigured, even according to the pattern which was shown unto mine apostles upon the mount; of which account the fulness ye have not yet received.”

**How Anyone May Live to See the Millennial Day: Repent (1 Ne 22:28)**

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

**When Christ comes again, He will usher in the Millennium: 1000 years of peace. The original 12 Apostles will accompany Him**

**(D&C 29:10-13)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“For the hour is nigh, and that which was spoken by mine apostles must be fulfilled; for as they spoke so shall it come to pass; For I will reveal myself from heaven with power and great glory, with all the hosts thereof, and dwell in righteousness with men on earth a thousand years, and the wicked shall not stand. And again, verily, verily, I say unto you, and it hath gone forth in a firm decree, by the will of the Father, that mine apostles, the Twelve which were with me in my ministry at Jerusalem, shall stand at my right hand at the day of my coming in a pillar of fire, being clothed with robes of righteousness, with crowns upon their heads, in glory even as I am, to judge the whole house of Israel, even as many as have loved me and kept my commandments, and none else.

“For a trump shall sound both long and loud, even as upon Mount Sinai, and all the earth shall quake, and they shall come forth—yea, even the dead which died in me, to receive a crown of righteousness, and to be clothed upon, even as I am, to be with me, that we may be one.”

**The Millennium Is Soon Upon Us when satan will be bound (1 Ne 22:15, 26)**

For behold, saith the prophet,

“the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

**satan will be bound for 1,000 years (Rev 20:1-3, 7)**

[And John spake, saying,]

“And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison.”

**During the Millennium, every creature upon the earth will have the knowledge of Jesus Christ (D&C 84:98-102)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Until all shall know me, who remain, even from the least unto the greatest, and shall be filled with the knowledge of the Lord, and shall see eye to eye, and shall lift up their voice, and with the voice together sing this new song, saying:

‘The Lord hath brought again Zion; The Lord hath redeemed his people, Israel, According to the election of grace, which was brought to pass by the faith and covenant of their fathers.

The Lord hath redeemed his people; And Satan is bound and time is no longer. The Lord hath gathered all things in one. The Lord hath brought down Zion from above. The Lord hath brought up Zion from beneath.

“The earth hath travailed and brought forth her strength; And truth is established in her bowels; And the heavens have smiled upon her; And she is clothed with the glory of her God; For he stands in the midst of his people. Glory, and honor, and power, and might, be ascribed to our God; for he is full of mercy, justice, grace and truth, and peace, forever and ever, Amen.”

**The Gathering of Israel will take place before and after the Millennium (2 Ne 24:1-2)**

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob. And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

**The remnants of Israel will return to the Holy One of Israel after the Savior comes (Isaiah 10:20-23)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth. The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God. For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness. For the Lord God of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land.”

**Israel will be totally gathered in the Millennium (Isaiah 14:1-3)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach. In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel. And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem.”

**Israel will inherit her lands after the resurrection (Ezekiel 37:1-13, 25-28)**

[And Ezekiel spake, saying,]

“The hand of the Lord was upon me, and carried me out in the spirit of the Lord, and set me down in the midst of the valley which was full of bones, And caused me to pass by them round about: and, behold, there were very many in the open valley; and, lo, they were very dry. And he said unto me,

‘Son of man, can these bones live?’

“And I answered,

‘O Lord God, thou knowest.’

“Again he said unto me,

‘Prophesy upon these bones, and say unto them,

‘O ye dry bones, hear the word of the Lord. Thus saith the Lord God unto these bones;

‘Behold, I will cause breath to enter into you, and ye shall live: And I will lay sinews upon you, and will bring up flesh upon you, and cover you with skin, and put breath in you, and ye shall live; and ye shall know that I am the Lord.’

“So I prophesied as I was commanded: and as I prophesied, there was a noise, and behold a shaking, and the bones came together, bone to his bone. And when I beheld, lo, the sinews and the flesh came up upon them, and the skin covered them above: but there was no breath in them. Then said he unto me,

‘Prophesy unto the wind, prophesy, son of man, and say to the wind,

‘Thus saith the Lord God; Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe upon these slain, that they may live.’

“So I prophesied as he commanded me, and the breath came into them, and they lived, and stood up upon their feet, an exceeding great army. Then he said unto me,

‘Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel: behold, they say,

‘Our bones are dried, and our hope is lost: we are cut off for our parts.’

‘Therefore prophesy and say unto them,

Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, O my people, I will open your graves, and cause you to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel. And ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I have opened your graves, O my people, and brought you up out of your graves,’

‘And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children’s children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever. Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore. My tabernacle

also shall be with them: yea, I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And the heathen shall know that I the Lord do sanctify Israel, when my sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for evermore.”

**Israel will continue to be gathered (Ezekiel 39:23-29)**

‘And the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed against me, therefore hid I my face from them, and gave them into the hand of their enemies: so fell they all by the sword. According to their uncleanness and according to their transgressions have I done unto them, and hid my face from them. Therefore thus saith the Lord God;

‘Now will I bring again the captivity of Jacob, and have mercy upon the whole house of Israel, and will be jealous for my holy name; After that they have borne their shame, and all their trespasses whereby they have trespassed against me, when they dwelt safely in their land, and none made them afraid.

‘When I have brought them again from the people, and gathered them out of their enemies’ lands, and am sanctified in them in the sight of many nations; Then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them anymore there. Neither will I hide my face any more from them: for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord God.”

**Israel’s physical lands of inheritance are named**

**(See Ezekiel 48:1-35)**

**The Millennium will be a time of worldwide peace (Isaiah 2:4-5; Isaiah 11:1-9; Isaiah 33:15-24)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.

“And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord; And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

“But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins. The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

“And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’ den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

“He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil; He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure.

“Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty: they shall behold the land that is very far off. Thine heart shall meditate terror. Where is the scribe? where is the receiver? where is he that counted the towers? Thou shalt not see a fierce people, a people of a deeper speech than thou canst perceive; of a stammering tongue, that thou canst not understand. Look upon Zion, the city of our solemnities: thine eyes shall see Jerusalem a quiet habitation, a tabernacle that shall not be taken down; not one of the stakes thereof shall ever be removed, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken.

“But there the glorious Lord will be unto us a place of broad rivers and streams; wherein shall go no galley with oars, neither shall gallant ship pass thereby. For the Lord is our judge, the Lord is our lawgiver, the Lord is our king; he will save us. Thy tacklings are loosed; they could not well strengthen their mast, they could not spread the sail: then is the prey of a great spoil divided; the lame take the prey. And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity.”

**Zion and her daughters will be redeemed and cleansed in the millennial day (Isaiah 4:3-6/2 Ne 14:3-6)**

[And Isaiah spake, saying,]

“And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem: When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory shall be a defence. And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert from storm and from rain.”

**Life during the Millennium (Isaiah 11:1-16; Isaiah 12:1-6; Isaiah 14:3-11; 2 Ne 30:11-18; D&C 101:27-35)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots. And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord; And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears. But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

“And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins. The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’s den.

“They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea. And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious. And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

“The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim. But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them. And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod. And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

“And in that day thou shalt say, O Lord, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me. Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation. Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation. And in that day shall ye say, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted. Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things: this is known in all the earth. Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion: for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

“And it shall come to pass in the day that the Lord shall give thee rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve, That thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say, How hath the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased! The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, and the sceptre of the rulers. He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

“The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet: they break forth into singing. Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and the cedars of Lebanon, saying, Since thou art laid down, no feller is come up against us. Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations. All they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? art thou become like unto us? Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, and the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.”

[And Nephi prophesied, saying,]

“And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins. And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’s den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

“Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men. There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed. Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.”

[And the Lord spake, saying]

“And in that day whatsoever any man shall ask, it shall be given unto him. And in that day Satan shall not have power to tempt any man. And there shall be no sorrow because there is no death. In that day an infant shall not die until he is old; and his life shall be as the age of a tree; And when he dies he shall not sleep, that is to say in the earth, but shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye, and shall be caught up, and his rest shall be glorious.

“Yea, verily I say unto you, in that day when the Lord shall come, he shall reveal all things— Things which have passed, and hidden things which no man knew, things of the earth, by which it was made, and the purpose and the end thereof— Things most precious, things that are above, and things that are beneath, things that are in the earth, and upon the earth, and in heaven. And all they who suffer persecution for my name, and endure in faith, though they are called to lay down their lives for my sake yet shall they partake of all this glory.”

**Those who have died for the sake of God will return to the earth during the Millennium to partake of the blessings promised to his faithful people (D&C 101:36-37)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“Wherefore, fear not even unto death; for in this world your joy is not full, but in me your joy is full. Therefore, care not for the body, neither the life of the body; but care for the soul, and for the life of the soul.”

**The sun and the moon will hide before the Lord who reigns in Zion and Jerusalem (Isaiah 24:23; Isaiah 60:19-22)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the Lord of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously. The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the Lord shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory. Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the Lord shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended. Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified. A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation: I the Lord will hasten it in his time.”

**The Lord will reign in righteousness (Isaiah 32:1-8)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment. And a man shall be as an hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest; as rivers of water in a dry place, as the shadow of a great rock in a weary land. And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken. The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly.

“The vile person shall be no more called liberal, nor the churl said to be bountiful. For the vile person will speak villany, and his heart will work iniquity, to practise hypocrisy, and to utter error against the Lord, to make empty the soul of the hungry, and he will cause the drink of the thirsty to fail. The instruments also of the churl are evil: he deviseth wicked devices to destroy the poor with lying words, even when the needy speaketh right. But the liberal deviseth liberal things; and by liberal things shall he stand.”

**The people of Israel will acknowledge the Lord as our Father (Isaiah 63:15-16)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“Look down from heaven, and behold from the habitation of thy holiness and of thy glory: where is thy zeal and thy strength, the sounding of thy bowels and of thy mercies toward me? Are they restrained? Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O Lord, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.”

**The Millennium will be a day of peace (Isaiah 65:17-25)**

[And Isaiah prophesied, saying,]

“For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind. But be ye glad and rejoice forever in that which I create: for, behold, I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and her people a joy. And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying. There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days: for the child shall die an hundred years old; but the sinner being an hundred years old shall be accursed.

“And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them.

They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree are the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands. They shall not labour in vain, nor bring forth for trouble; for they are the seed of the blessed of the Lord, and their offspring with them. And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear. The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the Lord.”

**Jesus Christ will rule over all of Israel and the entire earth (Ezekiel 37:22-24)**

[And the Lord spake, saying,]

“And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all: Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwelling places, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God. And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.”

**The name of Jerusalem will be called “The Lord is there.” (Ezekiel 48:35)**

[And Ezekiel prophesied, saying,]

“[The city] was round about eighteen thousand measures: and the name of the city from that day shall be,

‘The Lord is there.”

**All men will speak the same language, a pure language; the Lord will reign in their midst (Zeph 3:9-20)**

[And Zephaniah prophesied in the name of the Lord, saying,]

“For then will I turn to the people a pure language, that they may all call upon the name of the Lord, to serve him with one consent. From beyond the rivers of Ethiopia my suppliants, even the daughter of my dispersed, shall bring mine offering. In that day shalt thou not be ashamed for all thy doings, wherein thou hast transgressed against me: for then I will take away out of the midst of thee them that rejoice in thy pride, and thou shalt no more be haughty because of my holy mountain. I will also leave in the midst of thee an afflicted and poor people, and they shall trust in the name of the Lord.

“The remnant of Israel shall not do iniquity, nor speak lies; neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth: for they shall feed and lie down, and none shall make them afraid. Sing, O daughter of Zion; shout, O Israel; be glad and rejoice with all the heart, O daughter of Jerusalem. The Lord hath taken away thy judgments, he hath cast out thine enemy: the king of Israel, even the Lord, is in the midst of thee: thou shalt not see evil any more. In that day it shall be said to Jerusalem, Fear thou not: and to Zion, Let not thine hands be slack.

“The Lord thy God in the midst of thee is mighty; he will save, he will rejoice over thee with joy; he will rest in his love, he will joy over thee with singing. I will gather them that are sorrowful for the solemn assembly, who are of thee, to whom the reproach of it was a burden. Behold, at that time I will undo all that afflict thee: and I will save her that halteth, and gather her that was driven out; and I will get them praise and fame in every land where they have been put to shame. At that time will I bring you again, even in the time that I gather you: for I will make you a name and a praise among all people of the earth, when I turn back your captivity before your eyes, saith the Lord.”

**There will be a new heaven and a new earth (2 Peter 3:13)**

[And Peter spake, saying,]

“Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.”

**The Saints be crowned priests of God and will live with Christ for 1000 years(Rev 20:4-6)**

[And John spake, saying,]

“And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.”

**RECAP OF ISRAEL’S HISTORY**

-God chose Abraham to be the Father of Nations:

-Simply because God chose him as such

-He was an extremely valiant spirit in both the Pre-mortal world and during mortality

-His son and grandson, Isaac and Jacob were co-inheritors of the promises made by God to Abraham.

-God changed Jacob’s name to Israel

-The 12 sons of Jacob became known as the 12 Tribes of Israel

-Those born into the House of Israel or adopted into it through baptism are equal heirs with the promises made to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

-God promised phenomenal blessings to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, as well as their descendants, contingent on obedience, repentance, and continued faith in Jesus Christ.

-Blessings of physical wealth and prosperity via Divine Favor

-Spiritual blessings and manifestations not given to other people

-God was anciently referred to as “The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,” because He revealed himself to them

-The most important thing that God revealed to the Israelites was the Priesthood and Temple ordinances: ordinances of salvation

-Over thousands of years, the Israelites continued to reject God, reject the prophets, and blasphemed the Sabbath in favor of idol worship, which led to their being scattered the first time, lasting for 70 years.

-Once scattered, some were taken into Babylon, never to be heard from again

-Lehi and Ishmael’s family migrated to the America’s to be “planted” in a new vineyard

-The greatest gift that God gave to the House of Israel, including all of mankind was that of His son, Jesus Christ, the Savior and Redeemer of the world.

-Ultimately, the Jews not only rejected the Savior, but killed him through crucifixion.

-As a result, the House of Israel has been scattered for thousands of years all throughout the world.

-God has promised through ancient and modern prophets that He would gather the descendants of Israel in the latter-days, prior to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

-The Restoration of the Gospel through the Prophet Joseph Smith started the last dispensation of time, known as the Dispensation of the Fullness of Time.

-3 main tools help to find and gather Israel, by teaching and revealing the Divinity of Jesus Christ:

-The Book of Mormon

-The Priesthood

-The Temple

-Many blessings are promised to those who:

-Help gather Israel in the latter-days

-Look, and prepare for, the Second Coming of Jesus Christ

-Many destructions are decreed upon the wicked who fight against the Lamb of God and Zion

-The gathering of Israel will take place both before and after the Second Coming

-The Second Coming of Jesus Christ will be the most glorious event in all of history, as He returns in all of His glory

-The Savior will reign upon the earth for 1000 years during the Millennium, an era of complete harmony and worldwide peace.

***APPENDIX: HOW THE SCATTERING OF ISRAEL AFFECTS US TODAY***

The following is a detailed discussion concerning the scattering of Israel as a result of her sins, in approximately 600 B.C., and how it has direct relation to our day in preparation for the Second Coming. This is a total reprint from chapter 4 of the book, **That Moment: A Doctrinal Approach to Studying the Signs of the Times**, published by myself, CJ Crawshaw.

**CHAPTER 4:**

**DESTRUCTION FOLLOWS THOSE WHO**

**DO NOT KEEP THE SABBATH DAY HOLY,**

**WORSHIP FALSE GODS, &/OR**

**REJECT THE LORD’S PROPHET(S)**

***2 SIDES OF THE SAME COIN***

When Moses was on Mt. Sinai receiving the Ten Commandments, the very first commandment he received was that Israel was to have and worship no other Gods except the God of Israel:

**Exodus 20:2-5**

2 I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

3 Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

4 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:

5 Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

Furthermore, we’re given this direction from the Lord, through the Prophet Joseph Smith:

**D&C 59:5**

5 Wherefore, I give unto them a commandment, saying thus: Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, with all thy might, mind, and strength; and in the name of Jesus Christ thou shalt serve him.

God is serious in His command for us to worship and serve Him only. To Him do we offer our thanks, gratitude, prayers, and sacrifices...all in the name of His Beloved Son, Jesus Christ. If we’re not worshipping God, then by default, we’re worshipping satan. This either comes about by laziness in not following God and keeping our covenants, or it can come through blatant rebellion in the active worship of false gods. Hence, the worship of God and the worship of satan are on two different sides of the same coin. The “coin” for example purposes, is our worship. On one side is our Father in Heaven and His Son Jesus Christ and on the other, is satan. And as coins are always sitting facing with either heads or tails showing, so, too, is our worship. And as the Savior put it so eloquently:

**Matthew 6:24**

24 No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.

**RECAP:**

-God’s first and great commandment was that Israel worship no other gods but Him.

- “Worship”, is a two-sided coin: we are worshipping either God the Eternal Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, or we’re worshipping satan.

***THE SABBATH AND THE SECOND COMING***

To help us in our worship of God, He has given us the Sabbath. As God rested on the Seventh Day after creating the world, so too, does God ask us to rest on the Seventh Day, to remember, serve, and worship Him.

That being said, one could very easily ask “Why is a study of the Sabbath and the worship of false gods included in a study on the Signs of the Times?” That’s actually a very easy question to answer... God is jealous of our worship, and if His people worship other Gods, or simply fail to remember Him, as history shows us, destructions have always followed. Additionally, as will be shown hereafter, major destructions such as natural disasters, plagues, and wars, etc, are important events preparatory to the Savior’s Second Coming. Because of this, a closer look at Israel failing to keep the Sabbath Day holy or their active worship of false gods shows that many such events always seemed to follow. Thus using the events of their day, we begin to see a possible, albeit unfortunate, parallel to our day.

There’s also the following scriptures that show us, indirectly however, that correct observance of the Sabbath has a direct connection to the Signs of the Times:

**D&C 64:23-25**

23 Behold, now it is called today until the coming of the Son of Man, and verily it is a day of sacrifice, and a day for the tithing of my people; for he that is tithed shall not be burned at his coming.

24 For after today cometh the burning—this is speaking after the manner of the Lord—for verily I say, tomorrow all the proud and they that do wickedly shall be as stubble; and I will burn them up, for I am the Lord of Hosts; and I will not spare any that remain in Babylon.

25 Wherefore, if ye believe me, ye will labor while it is called today.

The word “today” in both verses 23 and 25 bring about 3 thoughts: 1- “Today” is a general term meaning the day before Christ’s return, which comprises from the time of The Restoration until His glorious return. 2-It also connotes the Sabbath in that it refers to tithing and sacrifice, for it is on the Lord’s Day that we offer our sacrifices, tithing, and offerings. And lastly, 3- both “today’s” have reference to D&C 45:6, with verse 16 included, to show its relation to the Signs of the Times:

**D&C 45:6,16**

 6 Hearken, O ye people of my church, and ye elders listen together, and hear my voice while it is called today, and harden not your hearts;

16 And I will show it plainly as I showed it unto my disciples as I stood before them in the flesh, and spake unto them, saying: As ye have asked of me concerning the signs of my coming, in the day when I shall come in my glory in the clouds of heaven, to fulfil the promises that I have made unto your fathers,

Section 45 details events connected to the Second Coming, and will be addressed in a later chapter. The next scripture, also from the Doctrine & Covenants, is a little more cryptic, however:

**D&C 77:12**

12 Q. What are we to understand by the sounding of the trumpets, mentioned in the 8th chapter of Revelation?

A. We are to understand that as God made the world in six days, and on the seventh day he finished his work, and sanctified it, and also formed man out of the dust of the earth, even so, in the beginning of the seventh thousand years will the Lord God sanctify the earth, and complete the salvation of man, and judge all things, and shall redeem all things, except that which he hath not put into his power, when he shall have sealed all things, unto the end of all things; and the sounding of the trumpets of the seven angels are the preparing and finishing of his work, in the beginning of the seventh thousand years—the preparing of the way before the time of his coming.

It seems, according to the above scriptures, that as God rested on the last day, so too, will He finish the work of this earth on the last day. Ever since the days of the Restoration, God’s prophets have always emphasized the importance of Sabbath adherence, and it’s something found all throughout the scriptures. However, in late Spring/early Summer 2015, the Brethren started to put a very heavy emphasis on improving our Sabbath worship (<https://www.lds.org/church/news/church-leaders-call-for-better-observance-of-sabbath-day?lang=eng>) and stated that it came directly as revelation from God on what He would have the Church focus on at this time.

It almost goes without saying that one of the many reasons the Brethren have heavily counseled and advised members of the Church to improve our Sunday/Sabbath worship is because we’re being reminded, subtly, that “today” is the last day. That we are literally on the last day, or at least very close to it. It’s essentially one of the brethren’s ways of announcing over the pulpit how close we are to the Second Coming, without officially announcing it.

**RECAP:**

-God has given us the Sabbath as a day of rest to focus on and worship Him and His Son, Jesus Christ.

-A study of the Sabbath will show that it has direct connection to the events foretold of in the Last Days.

-When the Brethren teach us of, and remind us to keep, the Sabbath day holy, they are subtly reminding us that we are in the last days, because as God rested on the last day of creation, so, too, will He finish his work of this earth on the last day.

***A LOOK AT THE SABBATH***

The Book of Mormon gives us these snippets concerning Sabbath worship among the Nephites:

**Jarom 1:5**

5 And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And from Abinadi, while reciting the commandments before King Noah and his wicked priests:

**Mosiah 13:16-19**

16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

17 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

From Alma, teaching at the Waters of Mormon:

**Mosiah 18:23**

23 And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

Although these scriptures don’t give us a great insight into *how* the Sabbath was observed and the details attending it, they do, however, let us know that it was in fact recognized and observed among the people, when they were being righteous. A look into the Bible and the people of ancient Israel, however, give us a much greater insight into the details of sabbath worship. Whereas Abinadi was quoting from the Ten Commandments, we have the words of the Lord himself, when giving the Ten Commandments to Moses on the mount:

**Exodus 20:8-11**

8 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

  9 Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work:

10 But the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates:

11 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

From there on, worship of the Sabbath was to be strictly observed. So much so, that it wasn’t just one day in seven that was commanded of the people. But the Lord also put aside every seventh year, as well as every seventh seventh year, to be sabbatical years of worship and jubilee:

**Leviticus 25:1-17**

And the Lord spake unto Moses in mount Sinai, saying,

2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye come into the land which I give you, then shall the land keep a sabbath unto the Lord.

3 Six years thou shalt sow thy field, and six years thou shalt prune thy vineyard, and gather in the fruit thereof;

4 But in the seventh year shall be a sabbath of rest unto the land, a sabbath for the Lord: thou shalt neither sow thy field, nor prune thy vineyard.

5 That which groweth of its own accord of thy harvest thou shalt not reap, neither gather the grapes of thy vine undressed: *for* it is a year of rest unto the land.

6 And the sabbath of the land shall be meat for you; for thee, and for thy servant, and for thy maid, and for thy hired servant, and for thy stranger that sojourneth with thee,

7 And for thy cattle, and for the beast that *are* in thy land, shall all the increase thereof be meat.

8 And thou shalt number seven sabbaths of years unto thee, seven times seven years; and the space of the seven sabbaths of years shall be unto thee forty and nine years.

9 Then shalt thou cause the trumpet of the jubilee to sound on the tenth *day* of the seventh month, in the day of atonement shall ye make the trumpet sound throughout all your land.

10 And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout *all* the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubilee unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession, and ye shall return every man unto his family.

11 A jubilee shall that fiftieth year be unto you: ye shall not sow, neither reap that which groweth of itself in it, nor gather *the grapes* in it of thy vine undressed.

12 For it *is* the jubilee; it shall be holy unto you: ye shall eat the increase thereof out of the field.

13 In the year of this jubilee ye shall return every man unto his possession.

14 And if thou sell ought unto thy neighbour, or buyest *ought* of thy neighbour’s hand, ye shall not oppress one another:

15 According to the number of years after the jubilee thou shalt buy of thy neighbour, *and* according unto the number of years of the fruits he shall sell unto thee:

16 According to the multitude of years thou shalt increase the price thereof, and according to the fewness of years thou shalt diminish the price of it: for *according* to the number *of the years* of the fruits doth he sell unto thee.

17 Ye shall not therefore oppress one another; but thou shalt fear thy God: for I *am* the Lord your God.

From the Bible Dictionary, we have this information concerning the Sabbatical Year:

**Bible Dictionary, Sabbatical Year**

As was the seventh day in every week and the seventh month in every year, so also was every seventh year consecrated to the Lord. The land, inasmuch as it was the Lord’s, was to keep a Sabbath unto Him ([Lev. 25:2–7](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/lev/25.2-7?lang=eng#1)). In this year the self-sown produce of the arable lands was to be left for the poor and the beasts of the field; and the fruit of the unpruned vineyards (and oliveyards) was not to be harvested but to be left to the owner, his family and servants, the stranger sojourning with him, his cattle, and the wild beasts. A release of debts owed by Israelite to Israelite was made. The year was intended to be not simply a year of leisure but also one of religious instruction and exercises. To mark this, at the Feast of Tabernacles (at the commencement of the sabbatical year, which began with the seventh month) the whole law was read in the hearing of the people. The law of the sabbatical year was habitually broken by the Jews for a long period before the Babylonian exile. *The 70 years of exile and the land’s desolation were regarded as making up for the unobserved Sabbaths of the land (*[*2 Chr. 36:21*](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/2-chr/36.21?lang=eng#20)*).*

As can be seen, living the “Law of the Sabbath” was much more than simple worship on the Seventh Day, but was quite literally a way of life. Debts were released, vineyards were left unharvested, The Day of Atonement and the Feast of Tabernacles was observed and celebrated, etc.

In the very next chapter of Leviticus, the Lord gives the people the following commandment in connection to idol worship, followed by numerous blessings attending correct Sabbath observance:

**Leviticus 26:1-13**

1 Ye shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall ye set up *any* image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it: for I *am* the Lord your God.

2 Ye shall keep my sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I *am* the Lord.

3 If ye walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, and do them;

4 Then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit.

5 And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely.

6 And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make *you* afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land.

7 And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword.

8 And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword.

9 For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish my covenant with you.

10 And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new.

11 And I will set my tabernacle among you: and my soul shall not abhor you.

12 And I will walk among you, and will be your God, and ye shall be my people.

13 I *am* the Lord your God, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bands of your yoke, and made you go upright.

(emphasis added)

Blessing upon blessing seem to flow from the Lord to His people as they observed and kept the Sabbath. Many of those blessings promised seem very similar to those of paying ones tithing, wherewith the windows of heaven are promised to be opened:

**Malachi 3:10-11**

10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that *there shall* not *be room* enough *to receive it.*

 11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts.

It should be no surprise that the blessings of Sabbath worship and tithing go hand in hand, as alluded to earlier in D&C 64:23. A comparison of the blessings of proper Sabbath Worship and the paying of tithes is shown forthwith:

Blessings of Sabbath Worship Blessings of Tithing

-Rain in due season -God will open you the windows of heaven, and pour out a

-The land shall yield her increase blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

-The trees of the field shall yield their fruit. -God will not destroy the fruits of your ground.

-Your threshing shall reach unto the vintage. -Your vine won’t cast her fruit before the time in the field.

-The vintage shall reach unto the sowing time.

-Shall eat your bread to the full, and

-Dwell in your land safely. -God will rebuke the devourer for your sakes.

-Peace in the land

-Shall lie down, and none shall make *you* afraid

-God will rid evil beasts out of the land

-The sword will not go through their land.

-Chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you

-Five of you shall chase an hundred

However, as is attendant with all blessings promised, so too are punishments and cursings equally attendant for those who are disobedient to the commandments of the Lord, something we would be keen to pay attention to in our day. Continuing on in Leviticus:

**Leviticus 26:14-33**

**1stSet of Punishments:**

14 But if ye will not hearken unto me, and will not do all these commandments;

15 And if ye shall despise my statutes, or if your soul abhor my judgments, so that ye will not do all my commandments, *but* that ye break my covenant:

16 I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning [pl]ague, that shall consume the eyes, and cause sorrow of heart: and ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it.

17 And I will set my face against you, and ye shall be slain before your enemies: they that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you.

**2nd Set of Punishments:**

18 And if ye will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.

19 And I will break the pride of your power; and I will make your heaven as iron, and your earth as brass:

20 And your strength shall be spent in vain: for your land shall not yield her increase, neither shall the trees of the land yield their fruits.

**3rd Set of Punishments:**

21 And if ye walk contrary unto me, and will not hearken unto me; I will bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins.

22 I will also send wild beasts among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your *high* ways shall be desolate.

**4th Set of Punishments:**

23 And if ye will not be reformed by me by these things, but will walk contrary unto me;

24 Then will I also walk contrary unto you, and will punish you yet seven times for your sins.

25 And I will bring a sword upon you, that shall avenge the quarrel of *my* covenant: and when ye are gathered together within your cities, I will send the pestilence among you; and ye shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy.

26 *And* when I have broken the staff of your bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver *you* your bread again by weight: and ye shall eat, and not be satisfied.

**5th Set of Punishments:**

27 And if ye will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me;

28 Then I will walk contrary unto you also in fury; and I, even I, will chastise you seven times for your sins.

29 And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat.

30 And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your images, and cast your carcases upon the carcases of your idols, and my soul shall abhor you.

31 And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours.

32 And I will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it.

33 And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste.

(emphasis added)

Five separate times the people would be given chances to repent! But God told them that IF after each scourging, they continued to defy Him, then their sorrows would only increase, usually seven fold (showing that it was symbolic of the Seventh Day, the Sabbath), until they were completely scattered, and their lands lay desolate.

Which now leads us into the crux of the discussion! Many of these cursings seem identical to many things prophesied in connection with the dire and coming events of the last days... this particular time in Moses’ day came as a direct result of not keeping their Sabbaths and the worship of false gods. Let’s look at it again, with just the punishments listed:

- Terror.

-Consumption.

-The burning ague (plague) that shall consume the eyes.

-Sorrow of heart.

-Sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it.

-God will set his face against you.

-Slain before your enemies.

-They that hate you shall reign over you.

-Shall flee when none pursueth you.

- Break the pride of your power.

-Your strength shall be spent in vain.

-Your land shall not yield her increase.

-The trees of the land will not yield their fruits.

-God to bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins.

-Wild beasts shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number.

-Highways shall be desolate.

-God will walk contrary unto you.

-Punish you seven times for your sins.

-God will bring a sword upon you, for not keeping ones covenants.

-When ye are gathered together within your cities, God will send the pestilence among the young.

-Shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy.

*-*Eat your bread and not be satisfied.

-God will walk contrary unto you in fury.

 -Shall eat the flesh of your sons and daughters.

-Destroy your high places, and cut down your images.

-God will cast your carcases upon the carcases of your idol.

-God will make your cities waste.

-God will bring your sanctuaries unto desolation.

-God will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it.

-God will scatter you among the heathen.

-God will draw out a sword after you.

-Your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste.

The above list is given in our discussion for demonstrative purposes, to show that many of the prophesied events of the Last Days seem very similar to those cursings pronounced upon Israel for failing to keep her Sabbaths, as well as the worship of idols and false gods, and a greater examination will be given in a later chapter.

God is so serious about having His people keep the Sabbath holy that He then makes this statement in connection to the above cursings promised, showing that the Sabbath will be observed, one way or another:

**Leviticus 26:34-43**

34 Then shall the land enjoy her sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate, and ye *be* in your enemies’ land; *even* then shall the land rest, and enjoy her sabbaths.

35 As long as it lieth desolate it shall rest; because it did not rest in your sabbaths, when ye dwelt upon it.

36 And upon them that are left *alive* of you I will send a faintness into their hearts in the lands of their enemies; and the sound of a shaken leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee, as fleeing from a sword; and they shall fall when none pursueth.

37 And they shall fall one upon another, as it were before a sword, when none pursueth: and ye shall have no power to stand before your enemies.

38 And ye shall perish among the heathen, and the land of your enemies shall eat you up.

39 And they that are left of you shall pine away in their iniquity in your enemies’ lands; and also in the iniquities of their fathers shall they pine away with them.

40 If they shall confess their iniquity, and the iniquity of their fathers, with their trespass which they trespassed against me, and that also they have walked contrary unto me;

41 And *that* I also have walked contrary unto them, and have brought them into the land of their enemies; if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity:

42 Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land.

43 The land also shall be left of them, and shall enjoy her sabbaths, while she lieth desolate without them: and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity: because, even because they despised my judgments, and because their soul abhorred my statutes.

(emphasis added)

God then leaves this cautionary promise of hope to Israel, before ending this sermon, showing that a remnant will live on still, amidst the desolation and destruction, something that will also be addressed in a later chapter:

**Leviticus 26:1-46**

44 And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly, and to break my covenant with them: for I am the Lord their God.

45 But I will for their sakes remember the covenant of their ancestors, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the heathen, that I might be their God: I am the Lord.

46 These *are* the statutes and judgments and laws, which the Lord made between him and the children of Israel in mount Sinai by the hand of Moses.

**RECAP:**

-The people of the Book of Mormon kept and observed the Sabbath.

-The “Sabbath” is not restricted to just one day a week, but comprises various years as well, all dealing with the number seven.

-Keeping the Sabbath holy is a way of life.

-Great blessings, similar to that of paying tithing, are promised to those who keep the Sabbath day holy and do not worship false gods.

-Adversely, many great cursings are promised to those who fail to keep their Sabbaths and worship false gods, also in connection to the number seven.

-God will give us multiple opportunities to repent before total destruction is pronounced.

-Many of these destructions are identical to those promised to come in the Last Days.

-God will have the Sabbath observed, one way or another.

-Despite the destructions promised, God will not utterly destroy His people, but will leave a remnant alive.

***DESTRUCTION FOLLOWED WHEN ISRAEL WORSHIPPED BAAL OR OTHER FALSE GODS***

The unfortunate reality among the people of Israel, particularly throughout Old Testament times, was that repeatedly, they would forsake the Lord and serve false gods, one of which was the heathen god, Baal.

It is not for present purposes to discuss in great detail as to *why* they did so, only that they did. Maybe it was out of anger at the Lord; possibly they were enticed by the doctrines & ordinances that came from worshipping other gods (such as the sexual aspect), maybe it was a result of many times in slavery, being forced to worship the gods of their captors, knowing nothing else in their degenerate state; or maybe they simply lost their testimony. But despite the reason, the Old Testament is full of one rebuking after another from the Prophets of the Lord condemning the worship of false gods and prophesying their destruction as a direct result.

There are many “false gods” aside from Baal that Israel was found worshipping, such as Moloch, where parents would cause their children to be burned in sacrifice to him, or Ashtoreth, whose gross sexual worship through the use of groves, saw the downfall of many Israelites. Also, there were many Gods of the Egyptians, Assyrians, Philistines, etc. But none seemed so prevalent, as to be mentioned by name, as Baal was. It is not for our discussion to focus too much on Baal, only to acknowledge that he was the most popular god that Israel too often forsook Jehovah for. A brief description is in order:

**Bible Dictionary, “Baal”**

A male sun-god worshiped principally in Phoenicia ([1 Kgs. 16:31](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/1-kgs/16.31?lang=eng#30)) but also worshiped in different ways in various places: by the Moabites as Baal-peor ([Num. 25:1–3](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/num/25.1-3?lang=eng#0)), at Shechem as Baal-berith ([Judg. 8:33](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/judg/8.33?lang=eng#32); [9:4](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/judg/9.4?lang=eng#3)), at Ekron as Baal-zebub ([2 Kgs. 1:2](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/2-kgs/1.2?lang=eng#1)). Baal may be the same as Bel of Babylon and Zeus of Greece. The word Baal expresses the relationship between a lord and his slave. The usual symbol for Baal was a bull. Ashtoreth was the goddess generally worshiped along with Baal.vBaal was sometimes combined with another name or word to indicate a connection with Baal, such as a place where he was worshiped or a person with attributes like those of Baal. Later, because Baal came to have very evil meanings, the word Bosheth replaced it in those combined names. Bosheth means “shame.”

As seen above, “Baal” has reference to “Beelzebub,” another name for satan. The worship of Baal, or any false god for that matter, was simply the worship of satan, and the penalty for such a serious offense was immediate death for anyone found so worshipping among the camp of Israel:

**Numbers 25:1-5**

1 And Israel abode in Shittim, and the people began to commit whoredom with the daughters of Moab.

2 And they called the people unto the sacrifices of their gods: and the people did eat, and bowed down to their gods.

3 And Israel joined himself unto Baal: and the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel.

4 And the Lord said unto Moses, Take all the heads, and hang them up before the Lord against the sun, that the fierce anger of the Lord may be turned away from Israel.

5 And Moses said unto the judges of Israel, slay ye everyone his men that were joined unto [Baal-peor](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/num/25?lang=eng#5b).

**Deuteronomy 13:6-11**

6 If thy brother, the son of thy mother, or thy son, or thy daughter, or the wife of thy bosom, or thy friend, which is as thine own soul, entice thee secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which thou hast not known, thou, nor thy fathers;

7 Namely, of the gods of the people which are round about you, nigh unto thee, or far off from thee, from the one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth;

8 Thou shalt not consent unto him, nor hearken unto him; neither shall thine eye pity him, neither shalt thou spare, neither shalt thou conceal him:

9 But thou shalt surely kill him; thine hand shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people.

10 And thou shalt stone him with stones, that he die; because he hath sought to thrust thee away from the Lord thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

11 And all Israel shall hear, and fear, and shall do no more any such wickedness as this is among you.

**Deuteronomy 17:2-5**

2 If there be found among you, within any of thy gates which the Lord thy God giveth thee, man or woman, that hath wrought wickedness in the sight of the Lord thy God, in transgressing his covenant,

3 And hath gone and served other gods, and worshipped them, either the sun, or moon, or any of the host of heaven, which I have not commanded;

4 And it be told thee, and thou hast heard of it, and inquired diligently, and, behold, it be true, and the thing certain, that such abomination is wrought in Israel:

5 Then shalt thou bring forth that man or that woman, which have committed that wicked thing, unto thy gates, even that man or that woman, and shalt stone them with stones, till they die.

**Joshua 23:15-16**

15 Therefore it shall come to pass, *that* as all good things are come upon you, which the Lord your God promised you; so shall the Lord bring upon you all evil things, until he have destroyed you from off this good land which the Lord your God hath given you.

16 When ye have transgressed the covenant of the Lord your God, which he commanded you, and have gone and served other gods, and bowed yourselves to them; then shall the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and ye shall perish quickly from off the good land which he hath given unto you.

The great prophet, Joshua, who helped lead Israel into the Promised Land after the death of Moses, seeing the worship of false gods continuing to creep into the lives of the people, made this famous declaration, as a result:

**Joshua 24:14-15**

14 Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve ye the Lord.

15 And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.

To now go backwards in time when Moses was still the Prophet, the Lord gave this grave promise of destruction for the worship of false gods, along with a promise of hope for those of us in the latter days:

**Deuteronomy 4:25-31**

25 When thou shalt beget children, and children’s children, and ye shall have remained long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image, or the likeness of anything, and shall do [evil](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/deut/4?lang=eng#25a) in the sight of the Lord thy God, to provoke him to [anger](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/deut/4?lang=eng#25b):

26 I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto ye go over Jordan to possess it; ye shall not prolong your days upon it, but shall utterly be destroyed.

27 And the Lord shall scatter you among the nations, and ye shall be left few in number among, whither the Lord shall lead you.

28 And there ye shall serve gods, the work of men’s hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell.

29 But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul.

30 When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the [latter days](https://www.lds.org/scriptures/ot/deut/4?lang=eng#30b), if thou turn to the Lord thy God, and shalt be obedient unto his voice;

31 (For the Lord thy God is a merciful God;) he will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which he sware unto them.

This remark by the Lord concerning the latter days is unique in that thousands of years before our day, God knew that many of His people, both Jews without the Priesthood and members of the Church with the Priesthood, would be found worshipping false gods and warned as such...although the face of these false gods is very different today than it was in Moses’ day.

He also gave the promise that repentance would be the means whereby His destroying hand would be stayed. But it begs the question: Just how entrenched is the worship of Baal and other false gods within our society? And could this be one of the many reasons that the earth seems ready to explode, so far as supernatural weather patterns and events are concerned? How long will God’s hand be stayed? As long as we repent, obviously. But when will the point in time come that God declares that the time for repentance is passed?

Concerning something as simple as the phrase “in God we trust” on our currency, there’s been a very huge push in recent years to remove the worship and acknowledgement of God from both money and the Pledge of Allegiance. When the leaders of our nation succeed in removing God from our nation, and further begin to attempt to enforce it within the walls of our home, then will we find ourselves in a very dire situation, on the cusp of the promised destructions.

The effects of worshipping false gods start with merely turning away from God and ends with a person hating God. When that happens, people become degenerate in all facets of their life, seeking one gross sin after another until it’s no longer even the worship of a false God, but the love of all things evil. When that happens, people find themselves utterly ripe for destruction...a destruction they brought upon themselves, something we see every day getting worse in our nation, just like the people in the days of the prophet Ether:

**Ether 15:19**

19 But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

**RECAP:**

-The people of Israel, in both the days of Moses and Joshua, continued to forsake God and worship false gods.

-Baal was the most prevalent of the false gods to be worshipped.

-Baal is simply satan in disguise.

-God commanded the death of anyone found worshipping false gods.

-God promised destruction to be poured out upon his people if found worshipping false gods.

-Despite the promised destructions, we are given the agency to worship whomever and however we will.

-God has promised that He will not completely forsake His people in the latter days, on condition of repentance.

-As our nation continues to erase God from our worship and history, the promised destructions of the Last Days seem eminent.

-When people have completely left god and turned themselves over to satan, they are ripe for destruction.

***THE DESTRUCTION OF JERUSALEM: A CAUTIONARY TALE FOR OUR DAY***

To use an example from the present, we live in a day and age where movies see one sequel or prequel after another. Many people, having started the Book of Mormon, know of the basic details of its beginning: Jerusalem is in a state of chaos, condemning the prophets, with The Prophet, Jeremiah in jail. It was in this state of pandemonium that Lehi received the famous dream to take his family and leave Jerusalem immediately. And he did just that. But the story leading up to the beginning of the Book of Mormon, could easily be viewed as the prequel to end all prequels.

The people living in Jerusalem, had by this time, migrated out of the plains and tents that they lived in during the days of Moses or Joshua. Under the command of the great King David, they had moved into what became one of the greatest cities in all the land. Under his son, King Solomon, a magnificent temple had been erected to the God of Israel, where the Ark of the Covenant was to lay for all time. Jerusalem had become a veritable metropolis, with a booming economy that saw travelers from all around visit to make trade with the people and see the grand temple. It was the religious center of all of Israel. Its fame was known throughout the world. But, as does happen at the height of power and blessings from the Lord, the people got foolish, cocky, & arrogant; and in this state, they began to again indulge in the worship of false gods, forgetting the Lord their God, and not keeping the Sabbath day holy.

America, like Jerusalem of old, has become a political and military stronghold, with capital, commerce, and trade booming in abundance. However, as we have watched America grow in her cockiness, forsaking the Lord in all things from gay marriage to abortion, seeing one corrupt leader after another, decrying Christianity to promote atheism, communism and socialism; and everything in between, we now find ourselves in a state very similar to those of ancient Jerusalem.

To continue on, their forsaking of the Lord had been going on for years, going from bad to worse, and had finally reached the breaking point.... where repentance would no longer stay the hand of the Lord:

**Jeremiah 16:1-21 (Penalties for the worship of false gods)**

1 The word of the Lord came also unto me, saying,

2 Thou shalt not take thee a wife, neither shalt thou have sons or daughters in this place.

3 For thus saith the Lord concerning the sons and concerning the daughters that are born in this place, and concerning their mothers that bare them, and concerning their fathers that begat them in this land;

4 They shall die of grievous deaths; they shall not be lamented; neither shall they be buried; but they shall be as dung upon the face of the earth: and they shall be consumed by the sword, and by famine; and their carcases shall be meat for the fowls of heaven, and for the beasts of the earth.

5 For thus saith the Lord, Enter not into the house of mourning, neither go to lament nor bemoan them: for I have taken away my peace from this people, saith the Lord, even loving kindness and mercies.

6 Both the great and the small shall die in this land: they shall not be buried, neither shall men lament for them, nor cut themselves, nor make themselves bald for them:

7 Neither shall men tear themselves for them in mourning, to comfort them for the dead; neither shall men give them the cup of consolation to drink for their father or for their mother.

8 Thou shalt not also go into the house of feasting, to sit with them to eat and to drink.

9 For thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold, I will cause to cease out of this place in your eyes, and in your days, the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride.

10 And it shall come to pass, when thou shalt shew this people all these words, and they shall say unto thee, Wherefore hath the Lord pronounced all this great evil against us? or what is our iniquity? or what is our sin that we have committed against the Lord our God?

11 Then shalt thou say unto them, Because your fathers have forsaken me, saith the Lord, and have walked after other gods, and have served them, and have worshipped them, and have forsaken me, and have not kept my law;

12 And ye have done worse than your fathers; for, behold, ye walk every one after the imagination of his evil heart, that they may not hearken unto me:

13 Therefore will I cast you out of this land into a land that ye know not, neither ye nor your fathers; and there shall ye serve other gods day and night; where I will not shew you favour.

14 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that it shall no more be said, The Lord liveth, that brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt;

15 But, The Lord liveth, that brought up the children of Israel from the land of the north, and from all the lands whither he had driven them: and I will bring them again into their land that I gave unto their fathers.

16 ¶Behold, I will send for many fishers, saith the Lord, and they shall fish them; and after will I send for many hunters, and they shall hunt them from every mountain, and from every hill, and out of the holes of the rocks.

17 For mine eyes are upon all their ways: they are not hid from my face, neither is their iniquity hid from mine eyes.

 18 And first I will recompense their iniquity and their sin double; because they have defiled my land, they have filled mine inheritance with the carcases of their detestable and abominable things.

19 O Lord, my strength, and my fortress, and my refuge in the day of affliction, the Gentiles shall come unto thee from the ends of the earth, and shall say, Surely our fathers have inherited lies, vanity, and things wherein there is no profit.

20 Shall a man make gods unto himself, and they are no gods?

21 Therefore, behold, I will this once cause them to know, I will cause them to know mine hand and my might; and they shall know that my name is The Lord.

(emphasis added)

**Jeremiah 17:1-2, 19-27 (Penalties for idol worship and not keeping and honoring the Sabbath)**

1 The sin of Judah is written with the pen of iron, and with the point of a diamond: it is graven upon the table of their heart, and upon the horns of your altars;

2 Whilst their children remember their altars and their groves by the green trees upon the high hills.

19 Thus said the Lord unto me; Go and stand in the gate of the children of the people, whereby the kings of Judah come in, and by the which they go out, and in all the gates of Jerusalem;

20 And say unto them, Hear ye the word of the Lord, ye kings of Judah, and all Judah, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, that enter in by these gates:

21 Thus saith the Lord; Take heed to yourselves, and bear no burden on the sabbath day, nor bring *it* in by the gates of Jerusalem;

22 Neither carry forth a burden out of your houses on the sabbath day, neither do ye any work, but hallow ye the sabbath day, as I commanded your fathers.

23 But they obeyed not, neither inclined their ear, but made their neck stiff, that they might not hear, nor receive instruction.

24 And it shall come to pass, if ye diligently hearken unto me, saith the Lord, to bring in no burden through the gates of this city on the sabbath day, but hallow the sabbath day, to do no work therein;

25 Then shall there enter into the gates of this city kings and princes sitting upon the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses, they, and their princes, the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: and this city shall remain for ever.

26 And they shall come from the cities of Judah, and from the places about Jerusalem, and from the land of Benjamin, and from the plain, and from the mountains, and from the south, bringing burnt offerings, and sacrifices, and meat offerings, and incense, and bringing sacrifices of praise, unto the house of the Lord.

27 But if ye will not hearken unto me to hallow the sabbath day, and not to bear a burden, even entering in at the gates of Jerusalem on the sabbath day; then will I kindle a fire in the gates thereof, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem, and it shall not be quenched.

(emphasis added)

**Jeremiah 18:11-23 (Penalties for worship of false gods and rejecting The Prophet)**

11 Now therefore go to, speak to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the Lord; Behold, I frame evil against you, and devise a device against you: return ye now every one from his evil way, and make your ways and your doings good.

12 And they said, There is no hope: but we will walk after our own devices, and we will every one do the imagination of his evil heart.

13 Therefore thus saith the Lord; Ask ye now among the heathen, who hath heard such things: the virgin of Israel hath done a very horrible thing.

14 Will *a man* leave the snow of Lebanon *which cometh* from the rock of the field? *or* shall the cold flowing waters that come from another place be forsaken?

15 Because my people hath forgotten me, they have burned incense to vanity, and they have caused them to stumble in their ways *from* the ancient paths, to walk in paths, *in* a way not cast up;

16 To make their land desolate, *and* a perpetual hissing; every one that passeth thereby shall be astonished, and wag his head.

17 I will scatter them as with an east wind before the enemy; I will shew them the back, and not the face, in the day of their calamity.

18 Then said they, Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words.

19 Give heed to me, O Lord, and hearken to the voice of them that contend with me.

20 Shall evil be recompensed for good? for they have digged a pit for my soul. Remember that I stood before thee to speak good for them, *and* to turn away thy wrath from them.

21 Therefore deliver up their children to the famine, and pour out their *blood* by the force of the sword; and let their wives be bereaved of their children, and *be* widows; and let their men be put to death; *let* their young men *be* slain by the sword in battle.

22 Let a cry be heard from their houses, when thou shalt bring a troop suddenly upon them: for they have digged a pit to take me, and hid snares for my feet.

23 Yet, Lord, thou knowest all their counsel against me to slay *me:* forgive not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before thee; deal *thus* with them in the time of thine anger.

(emphasis added)

**Jeremiah 19: 4-6, 13-15 (Penalties for idol/Baal worship)**

4 Because they have forsaken me, and have estranged this place, and have burned incense in it unto other gods, whom neither they nor their fathers have known, nor the kings of Judah, and have filled this place with the blood of innocents;

5 They have built also the high places of Baal, to burn their sons with fire *for* burnt offerings unto Baal, which I commanded not, nor spake *it,* neither came *it* into my mind:

6 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that this place shall no more be called Tophet, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of slaughter.

13 And the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses of the kings of Judah, shall be defiled as the place of Tophet, because of all the houses upon whose roofs they have burned incense unto all the host of heaven, and have poured out drink offerings unto other gods.

14 Then came Jeremiah from Tophet, whither the Lord had sent him to prophesy; and he stood in the court of the Lord’s house; and said to all the people,

15 Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold, I will bring upon this city and upon all her towns all the evil that I have pronounced against it, because they have hardened their necks, that they might not hear my words.

(emphasis added)

**Jeremiah 20:1-6 (Prophecy of destruction by The Prophet)**

1 Now Pashur the son of Immer the priest, who was also chief governor in the house of the Lord, heard that Jeremiah prophesied these things.

2 Then Pashur smote Jeremiah the prophet, and put him in the stocks that were in the high gate of Benjamin, which was by the house of the Lord.

3 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Pashur brought forth Jeremiah out of the stocks. Then said Jeremiah unto him, The Lord hath not called thy name Pashur, but Magor-missabib.

4 For thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will make thee a terror to thyself, and to all thy friends: and they shall fall by the sword of their enemies, and thine eyes shall behold it: and I will give all Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall carry them captive into Babylon, and shall slay them with the sword.

5 Moreover I will deliver all the strength of this city, and all the labours thereof, and all the precious things thereof, and all the treasures of the kings of Judah will I give into the hand of their enemies, which shall spoil them, and take them, and carry them to Babylon.

6 And thou, Pashur, and all that dwell in thine house shall go into captivity: and thou shalt come to Babylon, and there thou shalt die, and shalt be buried there, thou, and all thy friends, to whom thou hast prophesied lies.

Looking at these scriptures as a whole, we can see the utter state of apostasy and degeneracy the people had become entrenched in. What’s worse is that many of these sins were coming from the members of the church, not just their kings and political leaders. In fact, this was active members...not just formerly active members. One verse that is of crucial importance for us in our day to reexamine comes from Jeremiah 18:18:

“Then said they, Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words.”

These people were looking to completely discredit The Prophet and to use the scriptures as they had them, to create their own sort of false religion, according to their liking and understanding. How many times do we hear active members of the church proclaim such things in connection with the prophet today?

This, then, was the state of the affairs of the people when we first hear from Nephi telling us of the visions and prophecies of his father, Lehi, shortly before the command of God to leave Jerusalem and escape the impending destruction to quickly come.

God had declared an irrevocable destruction upon the people because of their forsaking him in virtually every way, but saw fit to protect and lead out a remnant of righteous people, including the families of Lehi, and later Ishmael, so that God might still have a people that would serve Him in truth and righteousness.

Let’s take a quick second look at the above scriptures and the many destructions prophesied and promised. Many of the prophesied destructions came as a result of three particular sins:

-Forsaking God by worshipping and serving Baal and other false gods.

-Defiling the land with their detestable and abominable things.

-Burning and sacrificing of their children to these false gods.

-Gross sexual worship of false gods in the groves and trees.

-Burning incense and offering prayers to false gods.

(The active rebellion against God.)

-Not honoring the Sabbath and ignoring the Lord.

(The laziness that came in simply ignoring God.).

-The rejection and imprisonment of The Prophet, Jeremiah.

When these things became too much and the people had hardened their hearts to the point where repentance was no longer an option, the previous prophesies of destruction were decreed, and later took place:

-Massive, grievous deaths to be brought upon man, woman, and child alike...where no one will even receive a burial.

-A complete and utter scattering of the people wherein they will be scattered from the lands the Lord has given them so that they can “worship those other gods there.”

-Will be hunted down.

-The city to be completely burned, devouring the palaces within.

-The land surrounding the city to be completely left desolate, causing future people to pass by exclaiming “What happened here!?”

-As a result of not only ignoring the Prophet, but seeking to imprison him, children to be given over to famine, blood of the people to be spilled by the sword, children taken from their mothers, women left as widows, and the young men murdered and slain in battle.

-All the riches and beautiful things of Jerusalem to be taken from the city and carried into Babylon.

**RECAP:**

-The destruction of the great city Jerusalem is a symbolic warning for our day: America has attained great riches and treasures, is a place of great trade and commerce, and is a political and military stronghold; we must be cautious to not reject the Lord in our worship or acknowledgment of His blessings.

-As the people of Jerusalem continually ignored God and fought against him by worshipping false gods, ignoring the Sabbath, and rejecting the prophets of God, then massive destructions, including death and slavery, followed.

-These things came to Jerusalem, and will also come upon us, if we get to a point where repentance is no longer available to us.

-When destructions are sure to come, God will lead away a small number of people who are obedient to His commands, to protect them from the coming destructions.

***SLAVERY AND OPPRESSION FOLLOW WHEN KINGS AND LEADERS REJECT THE LORD***

Going back quite a few years before the annihilation of Jerusalem and her inhabitants, and shortly before Samson is born, we find the Israelites once again in a state of apostasy, worshipping false gods, and reaping the consequences:

**Judges 10:6-8, 10-14**

6 And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the Lord, and served Baalim, and Ashtaroth, and the gods of Syria, and the gods of Zidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the children of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines, and forsook the Lord, and served not him.

7 And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hands of the Philistines, and into the hands of the children of Ammon.

8 And that year they vexed and oppressed the children of Israel: eighteen years, all the children of Israel that *were* on the other side Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which *is* in Gilead.

10 And the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, saying, We have sinned against thee, both because we have forsaken our God, and also served Baalim.

11 And the Lord said unto the children of Israel, *Did* not *I deliver you* from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines?

12 The Zidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and ye cried to me, and I delivered you out of their hand.

13 Yet ye have forsaken me, and served other gods: wherefore I will deliver you no more.

14 Go and cry unto the gods which ye have chosen; let them deliver you in the time of your tribulation.

(emphasis added)

Luckily for Israel, for the present and immediate years to come, they were only being *oppressed* by their enemies insomuch that they could still live in their towns and cities and raise crops, herds, and their families, etc. But they were sorely taxed, limited in their worship, and in some unfortunate instances, some of their people raped, tortured, or killed. But as a whole, they still were not in total bondage. They were still given the opportunity, as a people, to repent.

Looking at our own day, the question we must ask ourselves is “Do our political leaders lead us to, or away from, God? Do they promote the worship of Jesus Christ or attempt to take away our rights of worship? We should very cautious of those leaders who seek to remove God and destroy our ways of worship.

However, to pick up shortly after the destruction of Jerusalem had taken place, the people were now in total bondage, living in slavery, and the Lord gave this severe rebuking to His people, as a reminder that they brought it upon themselves:

**2 Kings 17:6-23**

6 In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor *by* the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

7 For *so* it was, that the children of Israel had sinned against the Lord their God, which had brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and had feared other gods,

8 And walked in the statutes of the heathen, whom the Lord cast out from before the children of Israel, and of the kings of Israel, which they had made.

9 And the children of Israel did secretly *those* things that *were* not right against the Lord their God, and they built them high places in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city.

10 And they set them up images and groves in every high hill, and under every green tree:

11 And there they burnt incense in all the high places, as *did* the heathen whom the Lord carried away before them; and wrought wicked things to provoke the Lord to anger:

12 For they served idols, whereof the Lord had said unto them, Ye shall not do this thing.

13 Yet the Lord testified against Israel, and against Judah, by all the prophets, *and by* all the seers, saying, Turn ye from your evil ways, and keep my commandments *and* my statutes, according to all the law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by my servants the prophets.

14 Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers, that did not believe in the Lord their God

15 And they rejected his statutes, and his covenant that he made with their fathers, and his testimonies which he testified against them; and they followed vanity, and became vain, and went after the heathen that *were* round about them, *concerning* whom the Lord had charged them, that they should not do like them.

16 And they left all the commandments of the Lord their God, and made them molten images, *even* two calves, and made a grove, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served Baal.

17 And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the Lord, to provoke him to anger.

18 Therefore the Lord was very angry with Israel, and removed them out of his sight: there was none left but the tribe of Judah only.

19 Also Judah kept not the commandments of the Lord their God, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they made.

20 And the Lord rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until he had cast them out of his sight.

21 For he rent Israel from the house of David; and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king: and Jeroboam drave Israel from following the Lord, and made them sin a great sin.

22 For the children of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam which he did; they departed not from them;

23 Until the Lord removed Israel out of his sight, as he had said by all his servants the prophets. So was Israel carried away out of their own land to Assyria unto this day.

(emphasis added)

In Judges, we find the people worshipping the heathen god, Baal, and then in Kings, it’s the sexual worship of Ashtoreth had in groves. Is slavery something we as a nation can expect to happen if we, as a whole, reject the God who granted us this land and our rights to worship Him? Or what of members, who claim membership in the Lord’s kingdom, but reject the Prophet who leads and guides us? In today’s society, we may not sexually worship these false gods directly, but our society has become severely sexualized in virtually every facet, both public and private, promoted as good and right. Should we expect total annihilation of our lands, and many of us sold into slavery or worse, at the hands of foreign invaders as a result? It’s a question worth serious reflection.

Now we’ll look at 2 wicked kings who brought slavery upon their people as a consequence of their idolatry and other sins, starting first with the comparison and contrast between Zedekiah and Moroni:

**KING ZEDEKIAH**

The Book of Mormon starts off by telling us that

**1 Nephi 1:4**

4 For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Zedekiah, as king, was a major figure in the eyes of the people and as such, could’ve led them either toward God or away from God. Although he hadn’t been king very long, he had been king long enough to lead the people further away from God through the worship of false gods and not keeping their Sabbaths, as the sacred record tells us:

**2 Chronicles 36:10-21**

And when the year was expired, king Nebuchadnezzar sent, and brought him to Babylon, with the goodly vessels of the house of the Lord, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem.

11 Zedekiah *was* one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem.

12 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the Lord his God, *an d*humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet *speaking* from the mouth of the Lord.

13 And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God: but he stiffened his neck, and hardened his heart from turning unto the Lord God of Israel.

14 Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the Lord which he had hallowed in Jerusalem.

15 And the Lord God of their fathers sent to them by his messengers, rising up betimes, and sending; because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling place:

16 But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the Lord arose against his people, till *there was* no remedy.

17 Therefore he brought upon them the king of the Chaldees, who slew their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or maiden, old man, or him that stooped for age: he gave *them* all into his hand.

18 And all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes; all *these* he brought to Babylon.

19 And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.

20 And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia:

21 To fulfil the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed her sabbaths: for as long as she lay desolate she kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.

(emphasis added)

So angry was God at Zedekiah and the people, that He even allowed the temple treasures and artifacts to be stolen and the temple itself to be burned. As the people rejected God, so too, then, did He reject the temple. Additionally in the last verse we find that God is so serious about having the Sabbath be kept that he’s willing to have the people besieged and the land lay desolate for seventy years, just so the land can have her Sabbaths. That’s how serious God is about having us keep the sabbath day holy, and keeping it holy is one sure way to keep the destructions of God at bay.

Continuing on with Zedekiah, to later add insult to injury, when the threat of war and invasion was imminent, he then sought for Jeremiah, now loosely, and almost in a measure of last resort, recognized him to be a prophet, in hopes that he would prophesy blessings of the Lord upon the people...something that was not to come:

**Jeremiah 21: 1-14**

1 The word which came unto Jeremiah from the Lord, when king Zedekiah sent unto him Pashur the son of Melchiah, and Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest, saying,

2 Inquire, I pray thee, of the Lord for us; for Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon maketh war against us; if so be that the Lord will deal with us according to all his wondrous works, that he may go up from us.

3 Then said Jeremiah unto them, Thus shall ye say to Zedekiah:

4 Thus saith the Lord God of Israel; Behold, I will turn back the weapons of war that are in your hands, wherewith ye fight against the king of Babylon, and against the Chaldeans, which besiege you without the walls, and I will assemble them into the midst of this city.

5 And I myself will fight against you with an outstretched hand and with a strong arm, even in anger, and in fury, and in great wrath.

6 And I will smite the inhabitants of this city, both man and beast: they shall die of a great pestilence.

7 And afterward, saith the Lord, I will deliver Zedekiah king of Judah, and his servants, and the people, and such as are left in this city from the pestilence, from the sword, and from the famine, into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those that seek their life: and he shall smite them with the edge of the sword; he shall not spare them, neither have pity, nor have mercy.

8 And unto this people thou shalt say, Thus saith the Lord; Behold, I set before you the way of life, and the way of death.

9 He that abideth in this city shall die by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence: but he that goeth out, and falleth to the Chaldeans that besiege you, he shall live, and his life shall be unto him for a prey.

10 For I have set my face against this city for evil, and not for good, saith the Lord: it shall be given into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall burn it with fire.

11 And touching the house of the king of Judah, say, Hear ye the word of the Lord;

12 O house of David, thus saith the Lord; Execute judgment in the morning, and deliver him that is spoiled out of the hand of the oppressor, lest my fury go out like fire, and burn that none can quench it, because of the evil of your doings.

13 Behold, I am against thee, O inhabitant of the valley, and rock of the plain, saith the Lord; which say, Who shall come down against us? or who shall enter into our habitations?

14 But I will punish you according to the fruit of your doings, saith the Lord: and I will kindle a fire in the forest thereof, and it shall devour all things round about it.

Zedekiah was not looking to repent of his wicked ways, but was just looking for a simple prophecy of good tidings. His mere token acknowledgment of Jeremiah as prophet, by seeking out prophecy from him, was not from a repentant soul seeking out a Prophet of the Most High, but was done out of sheer desperation with the fear of loss of power and life hanging in the balance.

Compare this stark difference between Zedekiah, a wicked man acting out of fear, in contrast to the righteous Captain Moroni, desiring to keep and protect his people, by seeking out advice and prophecy from a Prophet of the Lord:

**Alma 43:16,23-24, 29-30**

16 Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

23 But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

24 And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

29 And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

**KING NOAH**

Returning to the Book of Mormon, let’s not forget what happened to the people of King Noah, and the enslavement that resulted, who followed their wicked king in committing numerous whoredoms, one of which was idolatry, followed by murder:

**Mosiah 11: 1-29**

1 And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

2 For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

3 And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

4 And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

5 For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

6 Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

7 Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

8 And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

9 And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

10 And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

12 And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

13 And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

14 And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

15 And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

16 And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

17 And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

18 And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

19 And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

20 And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

21 And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

22 And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

23 And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

24 Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

25 And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

26 Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

27 Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

28 I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

29 Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

The “riotous living” which King Noah lived, including removing the priests of the temple and replacing them with false priests and altering the ornaments and design of the Temple, show us that he obviously didn’t keep the Sabbath day holy, which is only furthered by the fact that he practiced idolatry and worshipped false gods...probably within the walls of the temple no less.

After being given two years to repent of their sins, the kingdom was still in array, with their leader, King Noah unrepentant of his sins, growing even more wicked, while incurring the wrath of a just God in the process:

**Mosiah 12:1-9**

1 And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

2 Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

3 And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

4 And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

5 Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

6 And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

8 And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

9 And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

After a magnificent sermon wherein Abinadi recounted the Ten Commandments and bore powerful testimony of God the Father and in His Son, Jesus Christ; King Noah and his priests still refusing to repent, Alma being the exception, would now have Abinadi killed:

**Mosiah 17:1-20**

1 And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

2 But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

3 But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

4 But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

5 And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

6 And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

7 And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

8 For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

9 Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

11 And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

12 But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

13 And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

14 And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

15 Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

16 And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

17 Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

18 And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

19 Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

20 And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

After the murder of God’s Prophet and after years of refusing to repent, the people were then turned over, by God, to the Lamanites who would sorely afflict and oppress them, fulfilling the words prophesied to them by The Prophet:

**Mosiah 19:2-20, 27-28**

2 And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

3 And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

4 And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

5 And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

6 And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

7 And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

8 And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

9 And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

10 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

11 Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

12 Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

13 And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

14 And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

15 Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

16 And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

17 And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

18 And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

19 Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

20 And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

27 And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

28 And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

What followed for both the peoples of Alma and Limhi were years of intense oppression and slavery, and in the case of Limhi’s people, several casualties of war, all of which came about by refusing to repent when first offered, before finally escaping the hands of their captors, to join the righteous people of King Mosiah (Mosiah 22-24).

The prophecies of Abinadi were not sugar coated at all. He spoke in a very straightforward manner, indicating the direness of the situation and was firm, describing in graphic nature, the destruction and calamities that were to follow if the people would not repent and additionally once they had passed their proverbial “point of no return.”

There is, however, a very stark contrast on what happens when the king adheres to the warnings of the Lord’s Prophet, and commands his people to repent and to seek the Lord, as in the days of King Shule:

**Ether 7:23-27**

23 And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

24 And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

25 And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

26 And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

27 And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

This, then, shows the pattern of the Lord. Destructions are prophesied and promised, but only IF the people DO NOT repent. Repentance, then, is the key that can protect us, as a people, and nation, from the prophesied destructions...but only when repentance is still an option and the point of no return has not been reached, as shown previously. For when the people are pure before the Lord, worshipping him in truth and righteousness, then the Lord has no need to force humility or repentance upon us. Unfortunately, however, as scripture and history have shown, far too often people get to the point of no return where even repentance will no longer protect us from the prophesied calamities and judgments of God.

**RECAP:**

-The worship of false gods many times led to the people being enslaved for long periods of time.

-The political leaders of our day can either lead us to, or away from, God.

-Zedekiah, one of the kings of the day, led the people away from God through the worship of false gods and false priests, ignored the counsel of The Prophet, and did not keep the Sabbath day holy.

-As a result of Zedekiah leading the people in wickedness, destructions were decreed, prophesied by The Prophet.

-In times of war, The Prophet will only prophesy good tidings to the righteous leaders of the day.

-King Noah led the people in numerous gross sins, not keeping the Sabbath day holy and committing idolatry, of which were just a few.

-After years of opportunity to repent, and refusing to do so, the Lord’s Prophet declared immediate destruction to follow, resulting in the loss of life and severe slavery for all people involved.

-When people repent, before they reach the point of no return, God will stay his hand, and not destroy or enslave the people.

***BLESSINGS OF WORSHIPPING THE LORD***

Our Father in Heaven is not only our God, but He is also our Father. Literally, our *Heavenly* Father. He desires to have that parental relationship between any father and his child. As we love our Father, He too, will love us. It’s not out of jealously that He commands that we honor and worship Him, but it’s also for our well being. Our Father in Heaven is a loving a God, a God of blessings. With every commandment, an equal, if not greater, blessing is attached, to our obedience to said commandment. Let’s look now at some of the grand promises given to faithful members who worship God, honor His son, Jesus Christ, and keep their Sabbaths:

**D&C 59:7-24**

7 Thou shalt thank the Lord thy God in all things.

8 Thou shalt offer a sacrifice unto the Lord thy God in righteousness, even that of a broken heart and a contrite spirit.

9 And that thou mayest more fully keep thyself unspotted from the world, thou shalt go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments upon my holy day;

10 For verily this is a day appointed unto you to rest from your labors, and to pay thy devotions unto the Most High;

11 Nevertheless thy vows shall be offered up in righteousness on all days and at all times;

12 But remember that on this, the Lord’s day, thou shalt offer thine oblations and thy sacraments unto the Most High, confessing thy sins unto thy brethren, and before the Lord.

13 And on this day thou shalt do none other thing, only let thy food be prepared with singleness of heart that thy fasting may be perfect, or, in other words, that thy joy may be full.

14 Verily, this is fasting and prayer, or in other words, rejoicing and prayer.

15 And inasmuch as ye do these things with thanksgiving, with cheerful hearts and countenances, not with much laughter, for this is sin, but with a glad heart and a cheerful countenance—

16 Verily I say, that inasmuch as ye do this, the fulness of the earth is yours, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and that which climbeth upon the trees and walketh upon the earth;

17 Yea, and the herb, and the good things which come of the earth, whether for food or for raiment, or for houses, or for barns, or for orchards, or for gardens, or for vineyards;

18 Yea, all things which come of the earth, in the season thereof, are made for the benefit and the use of man, both to please the eye and to gladden the heart;

19 Yea, for food and for raiment, for taste and for smell, to strengthen the body and to enliven the soul.

20 And it pleaseth God that he hath given all these things unto man; for unto this end were they made to be used, with judgment, not to excess, neither by extortion.

21 And in nothing doth man offend God, or against none is his wrath kindled, save those who confess not his hand in all things, and obey not his commandments.

22 Behold, this is according to the law and the prophets; wherefore, trouble me no more concerning this matter.

23 But learn that he who doeth the works of righteousness shall receive his reward, even peace in this world, and eternal life in the world to come.

24 I, the Lord, have spoken it, and the Spirit beareth record. Amen.

Verse 9 is of particular import because herein we find that it is through keeping the Sabbath day holy that we also can keep ourselves unspotted from the world. It is a veritable Passover for modern Israel. When we partake of the Sacrament worthily, we are allowing the destroying angel to pass us by. And not only are we promised protection from the world, we are promised blessings of great magnitude: The fulness of the earth shall be ours, including food and medicine in abundance. Think of it! “The *fulness* of the earth!” All that this world can offer us, of import, necessity, and yes, even luxury (although caution is to be had, v 20-21). This is extremely important for us to be able to fall back on in times of need or emergency, because it is here that we can petition the heavens to bless us according to the abundance promised, as a result of our obedience.

Hence in times of need or emergency, we can fall back on the promises of the Lord to deliver and protect us from not only evil, but judgment and cursings to soon be poured out... all as a result of correctly and properly worshipping God, Our Father in Heaven, and in His Son Jesus Christ. And as the Lord tells us “in nothing doth man offend God, or against none is his wrath kindled, save those who confess not his hand in all things, and obey not his commandments.”

**RECAP:**

-The Sabbath day is a day to offer our sacrifices and oblations unto the Lord.

-We are to offer, as sacrifice, a broken heart and a contrite spirit.

-The Sabbath is a day to also offer rejoicings and prayer, along with fasting.

-We are promised, in abundance, all the good things of the earth, if we keep the Sabbath day holy.

-We only offend God and kindle His wrath when we fail to acknowledge Him in all things and do not obey His commandments.

***HOW DOES THIS CHAPTER APPLY TO THE LAST DAYS DISCUSSION?***

While giving the 10 Commandments to Moses, the Lord declared, in part, that

2 I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

3 Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

4 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:

5 Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

6 And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments.

7 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

8 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

9 Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work:

10 But the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates:

11 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

From very early on, the Lord has given us the importance of worshipping Him only, both directly and indirectly. However, the unfortunate tale of Israel is one of constant disobedience, returning to the heathen worship of false Gods. What has followed when the people, the collective majority that is, reject God in their worship of Him is terrible destruction. This destruction has included, but is not limited to: oppression by enemies, invasion by foreigners, slavery, and rape and murder of loved ones. Much of this destruction has come in the worship of false gods and in not keeping the sabbath day holy. Much of this comes by first rejecting the Lord’s Prophet.

Concerning the Sabbath, in recent years the Brethren have put a very heavy emphasis on keeping it holy, as a means to not only strengthen our relationship with deity, but to also protect us from the coming destructions. For those of us who honor the Sabbath day, much like our temple recommend, it is the blood above the door that causes the destroying angel to pass us by. It protects and sanctifies us against the wicked things of the world and draws us closer to our Father in Heaven and His Son, Jesus Christ.

However, as society collectively, as well as some members of the Church, continues to prostitute themselves with all manner of wickedness, then it should come as no surprise to see terrorist attacks, both domestic and foreign, increase in abundance. We should not be surprised when hurricanes, volcanoes, and earthquakes, occur in much greater abundance as our appointed leaders promote sin instead of repentance. We should not be surprised when our enemies on our left and our right become allies in their hatred against us when we reject the Lord and His Sabbath in favor of movies, dining, and recreational activities. If anything, it should spark something in us to have a greater and deeper commitment to the gospel of Jesus Christ and our covenants. We should seek repentance before it is too late, as in the sad tale of Jerusalem and her inhabitants after years of worshipping false gods, blaspheming the Sabbath, and the rejection of the Lord’s prophet.

***CHAPTER RECAP:***

-God’s first and great commandment was that Israel worship no other gods but Him.

- “Worship”, is a two-sided coin: we are worshipping either God the Eternal Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, or we’re worshipping satan.

-God has given us the command to keep the Sabbath day holy.

-A study of the Sabbath will show that it has direct connection to the events foretold of in the Last Days.

-God will have the Sabbath observed, one way or another.

-Great blessings, similar to that of paying tithing, are promised to those who keep the Sabbath day holy and do not worship false gods. Cursings are also promised to those who keep not the Sabbath Day holy and/or worship false gods.

-God gives us multiple opportunities to repent, so that we may be spared destruction and/or slavery.

-God spares the righteous, while destructions are being poured out.

-As Israel continually forsook the Lord and worshipped false gods, Baal being the most prevalent, God continually rebuked them by having individuals killed, enslaving them as a people, or destroying their cities.

-Baal is simply satan in disguise.

-God has promised that He will not completely forsake His people in the latter days, on condition of repentance.

-As our nation continues to erase God from our worship and history, both past and present, the promised destructions of the Last Days seem eminent.

-The destruction of the great city Jerusalem is symbolic of our day in that America has attained great riches and treasures, is a

place of great trade and commerce, and is a political and military stronghold.

-As the people continually to ignore God and fight against him by worshipping false gods, ignoring the Sabbath, and rejecting the prophets of God, then massive destructions, including death and slavery, are sure to follow, if we get to a point where repentance is no longer available to us.

-When people repent, before they reach the point of no return, God will stay his hand, and not destroy or enslave the people.

-The political leaders of our day can either lead us to, or away from, God.

-The Sabbath day is a day to offer our sacrifices and oblations unto the Lord.

-We are promised, in abundance, all the good things of the earth, if we keep the Sabbath day holy.

-We only offend God and kindle His wrath when we fail to acknowledge Him in all things and do not obey His commandments.